ORACLE
PeopleSoft

PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58 Deployment Packages Installation

July 2022

ORACLE

PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58 Deployment Packages Installation

Documentation Accessibility
For information about Oracle's commitment to accessibility, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program website at http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=docacc.
Access to Oracle Support
Oracle customers that have purchased support have access to electronic support through My Oracle Support. For information, visit http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=info or visit http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=trs if you are hearing impaired.

Contents

About this Documentation

This preface discusses:

- Understanding This Documentation
- Audience
- Typographical Conventions
- Products
- Related Information
- Comments and Suggestions

Understanding This Documentation

This documentation is designed to guide you through the deployment of the Oracle's PeopleSoft Deployment Packages. It is not a substitute for the documentation provided for PeopleSoft PeopleTools or PeopleSoft applications.

Audience

This documentation is written for the individuals responsible for installing and administering the PeopleSoft environment. This documentation assumes that you have a basic understanding of the PeopleSoft system. One of the most important components in the installation and maintenance of your PeopleSoft system is your on-site expertise.

You should be familiar with your operating environment and RDBMS and have the necessary skills to support that environment. You should also have a working knowledge of:

- SQL and SQL command syntax.
- PeopleSoft system navigation.
- PeopleSoft windows, menus, and pages, and how to modify them.
- Microsoft Windows.

Oracle recommends that you complete training, particularly a PeopleSoft Server Administration and Installation course, before performing an installation.

See Oracle University, http://education.oracle.com.

Typographical Conventions

To help you locate and understand information easily, the following conventions are used in this documentation:

Convention	Description
`Monospace`	Indicates a PeopleCode program or other code, such as scripts that you run during the install. Monospace is also used for messages that you may receive during the install process.
Italics	Indicates field values, emphasis, and book-length publication titles. Italics is also used to refer to words as words or letters as letters, as in the following example: Enter the letter *O*. Italics are also used to indicate user-supplied information. For example, the term *domain* is used as a placeholder for the actual domain name in the user's environment. When two such placeholders are used together, they may be set apart with angle brackets. For example, the path <*PS_CFG_HOME*>/appserv/<*domain*> includes two placeholders that require user-supplied information.
Initial Caps	Field names, commands, and processes are represented as they appear on the window, menu, or page.
lower case	File or directory names are represented in lower case, unless they appear otherwise on the interface.
Menu, Page	A comma (,) between menu and page references indicates that the page exists on the menu. For example, "Select Use, Process Definitions" indicates that you can select the Process Definitions page from the Use menu.
Cross-references	Cross-references that begin with *See* refer you to additional documentation that will help you implement the task at hand. We highly recommend that you reference this documentation. Cross-references under the heading *See Also* refer you to additional documentation that has more information regarding the subject.
⇒ (line-continuation arrow)	A line-continuation arrow inserted at the end of a line of code indicates that the line of code has been wrapped at the page margin. The code should be viewed or entered as a continuous line of code, without the line-continuation arrow.
" " (quotation marks)	Indicate chapter titles in cross-references and words that are used differently from their intended meaning.

Convention	Description
Note. Note text.	Text that begins with *Note.* indicates information that you should pay particular attention to as you work with your PeopleSoft system.
Important! Important note text.	A note that begins with *Important!* is crucial and includes information about what you need to do for the system to function properly.
Warning! Warning text.	A note that begins with *Warning!* contains critical configuration information or implementation considerations; for example, if there is a chance of losing or corrupting data. Pay close attention to warning messages.

Products

This documentation may refer to these products and product families:

- Oracle® BPEL Process Manager
- Oracle® Enterprise Manager
- Oracle® Tuxedo
- Oracle® WebLogic Server
- Oracle's PeopleSoft Application Designer
- Oracle's PeopleSoft Change Assistant
- Oracle's PeopleSoft Change Impact Analyzer
- Oracle's PeopleSoft Data Mover
- Oracle's PeopleSoft Process Scheduler
- Oracle's PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture
- Oracle's PeopleSoft Customer Relationship Management
- Oracle's PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management
- Oracle's PeopleSoft Enterprise Performance Management
- Oracle's PeopleSoft Financial Management
- Oracle's PeopleSoft Human Capital Management
- Oracle's PeopleSoft Interaction Hub
- Oracle's PeopleSoft Pay/Bill Management
- Oracle's PeopleSoft PeopleTools
- Oracle's PeopleSoft Staffing Front Office
- Oracle's PeopleSoft Supply Chain Management

See the Products area on the Oracle web site, http://www.oracle.com/us/products/product-list/products-a-z/index.html.

Related Information

Oracle provides reference information about PeopleSoft PeopleTools and your particular PeopleSoft Application. You can access documentation for recent releases of PeopleSoft PeopleTools and PeopleSoft Applications at the PeopleSoft page in the Oracle Help Center. You can also find documentation by searching for the product name on My Oracle Support.

- PeopleSoft on the Oracle Help Center

  You can access PeopleSoft Online Help, or download the PeopleBooks PDFs, from the PeopleSoft page in the Oracle Help Center. Select PeopleTools or your PeopleSoft application from the navigation list on the left. On the page for the selected product application, select the PeopleTools release or image number at the top and go to the Online Help and PeopleBooks section.

  See Oracle Help Center, https://docs.oracle.com/en/applications/peoplesoft/index.html.

- *PeopleTools: Getting Started with PeopleTools* for your release.

  This documentation provides a high-level introduction to PeopleTools technology and usage.

  See PeopleTools on the Oracle Help Center, https://docs.oracle.com/en/applications/peoplesoft/peopletools/index.html.

- PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals for your PeopleSoft Application and release

  This documentation provides essential information about the setup, design, and implementation of your PeopleSoft Application.

  See Oracle Help Center, https://docs.oracle.com/en/applications/peoplesoft/index.html.

- Installation guides

  You can find the installation guides for PeopleSoft PeopleTools and your PeopleSoft application on the appropriate Oracle Help Center page. Select your release or update image at the top and then go to the Install and Upgrade section.

- My Oracle Support

  This support platform requires a user account to log in. Contact your PeopleSoft representative for information.

  See My Oracle Support, https://support.oracle.com.

  You can find several pages which compile documentation, links, and known issues for various PeopleSoft product areas. For a list of many of the PeopleSoft pages, select the PeopleSoft tab on the Oracle Information Center Catalog.

  See Oracle Information Center Catalog, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 50.2.

To install additional component software products for use with PeopleSoft products, including those products that are packaged with your PeopleSoft products as well as products from other vendors, you should refer to the documentation provided with those products, as well as this documentation. For those additional components that are offered by Oracle, such as Oracle Middleware products, see the documentation on the Oracle Help Center.

See Oracle Help Center, https://docs.oracle.com/en/.

Comments and Suggestions

Your comments are important to us. We encourage you to tell us what you like, or what you would like changed about PeopleSoft documentation and other Oracle reference and training materials. Please send your suggestions to:

PSOFT-Infodev_US@oracle.com

While we cannot guarantee to answer every email message, we will pay careful attention to your comments and suggestions. We are always improving our product communications for you.

Chapter 1

Prerequisites

This chapter discusses:

- Understanding the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Deployment Packages
- Reviewing Hardware Requirements
- Reviewing Software Requirements
- Cataloging the Database for DB2 z/OS
- Reviewing the System Parameters on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris

Understanding the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Deployment Packages

The PeopleSoft PeopleTools deployment packages (DPKs) enable you to install the PeopleSoft PeopleTools server and client software, application server, Process Scheduler, and PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture (PIA) domains, as well as required supporting software, for use with an existing PeopleSoft database. For details about the PeopleTools DPKs, see the following sections in this documentation:

For information about this topic:	See this section:
How to obtain the DPKs from My Oracle Support or Oracle Software Delivery Cloud	"Deploying the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Deployment Packages," Obtaining the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs
Using the DPKs to install PeopleSoft application server, Process Scheduler, and PIA domains (referred to as a mid-tier environment)	"Deploying the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Deployment Packages," Running the DPK Setup Script for Mid-Tier Deployment
Using the DPKs to install only the installation directory for the PeopleSoft PeopleTools server software *(PS_HOME)*	"Deploying the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Deployment Packages," Running the DPK Setup Script to Install PS_HOME Only
Using the DPK to install PeopleTools Client software	"Deploying the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Deployment Packages," Deploying the PeopleTools Client DPK
How to customize the DPK installation for your environment **Note.** If you are connecting to a database platform other than Oracle, you must use customizations.	"Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations"
Install updated supporting software, such as Oracle WebLogic and others, using the PT-INFRA DPK.	"Deploying the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Deployment Packages," Using the PT-INFRA DPK for Additional Component Software

For information about this topic:	See this section:
Methods for using the DPKs for patching a PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58 release	"Applying PeopleTools Patches Using DPKs"
How to perform a PeopleTools-only upgrade to PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.xx, using the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs.	"Performing a PeopleTools-Only Upgrade Using the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs"
Using the DPKs for other selective installations, such as an application server domain alone.	"Deploying the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Deployment Packages," Reviewing the DPK Setup Script Options
The terminology used with DPK deployment, and the contents of the DPKs	"Learning About the PeopleSoft Deployment Process," Reviewing the Deployment Packages
The PeopleSoft components installed by the DPK deployment	"Learning About the PeopleSoft Deployment Process," Understanding PeopleSoft Components
The Puppet open-source software used in DPK development	"Learning About the PeopleSoft Deployment Process," Understanding Puppet and the PeopleSoft Puppet Modules

Note. Beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.20, only the PeopleSoft Relocatable Puppet is used for deployment on all the supported operating systems and the option `--use_alternate_puppet_install` is no longer needed. See the information in the software requirements sections.

Task 1-1: Reviewing Hardware Requirements

This section discusses:

- Reviewing Hardware Requirements for Microsoft Windows
- Reviewing Hardware Requirements on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, or Solaris

Task 1-1-1: Reviewing Hardware Requirements for Microsoft Windows

You can install the PeopleSoft Application Image deployment packages (DPKs) or PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs directly on a system running a Microsoft Windows operating system. The PeopleSoft Application Images and PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs are certified to run on those Microsoft Windows operating systems that are certified for the current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release. The Microsoft Windows system can be a physical computer (sometimes called "bare-metal") or a virtual machine.

Oracle strongly recommends that you dedicate a Microsoft Windows machine for the PeopleTools client. This should be a machine that is not used for other PeopleSoft purposes.

See "Deploying the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Deployment Packages," Deploying the PeopleTools Client DPK in Standalone Mode, for information on installing the PeopleTools client utilities.

- *Host computer*: The PeopleSoft DPKs can be deployed directly on any supported Microsoft Windows host, bare-metal or virtual.

  If you deploy on a virtual host computer, you are responsible for provisioning the virtual machine before beginning the deployment.

- *Host operating system*: The host operating system (OS) must be a 64-bit platform that is certified by Oracle for PeopleSoft systems.

  Note. My Oracle Support Certification notes include information about the PeopleSoft PeopleTools components that are certified for each operating system. Some OSs are certified only for browsers and clients. If you want to deploy a full PeopleSoft environment, verify that the OS you want to use is certified for server installation.

  See My Oracle Support, Certifications.

  See PeopleSoft PeopleTools Certifications, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 747587.1, for help searching PeopleSoft Certifications.
- *RAM (Memory)*: A minimum of 8 GB RAM is required to run a PeopleSoft environment.
- *Disk space*: The disk space requirements vary depending upon the type of environment you set up.

  See "Preparing to Deploy," Understanding PeopleSoft Components.

  - 25–35 GB free disk space for the downloaded zip files

    You may remove these files after you have successfully initialized your virtual machine.
  - 150 GB free disk space is required to deploy and set up a full tier PeopleSoft environment.
  - 25 GB free disk space is required to deploy and set up a mid-tier PeopleSoft environment.

See Also

Tech Update - Main Page, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 764222.1

Task 1-1-2: Reviewing Hardware Requirements on AIX, HP-UX, Linux, or Solaris

You can install the PeopleSoft Application Image deployment packages (DPKs) directly on a system running an Oracle Linux operating system. You can install the PeopleSoft PeopleTools deployment packages (DPKs) directly on a system running an IBM AIX, HP-UX, Linux, or Solaris operating system. The PeopleSoft Application Images and PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs are certified to run on those operating systems that are certified for the current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release. The AIX, HP-UX, Linux, or Solaris system can be a physical computer (sometimes called "bare-metal") or a virtual machine.

- *Host computer*: The PeopleSoft DPKs can be deployed on any supported AIX, HP-UX, Linux, or Solaris host, either a physical computer or virtual machine. The PeopleSoft DPKs can also be deployed on Oracle Exalogic Elastic Cloud.

  If you deploy on a virtual host computer, you are responsible for provisioning the virtual machine before beginning the deployment.
- *Host operating system*: The host operating system must be a 64-bit platform that is certified by Oracle for PeopleSoft systems.

  For full-tier installations on Linux, the minimum version is Oracle Linux 7.6.

  See My Oracle Support, Certifications.

  See PeopleSoft PeopleTools Certifications, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 747587.1, for help searching PeopleSoft Certifications.
- *RAM (Memory)*: A minimum of 8 GB RAM is required to run a PeopleSoft environment.
- *Disk space*: The disk space requirements vary depending upon the type of environment you set up.

See "Preparing to Deploy," Understanding PeopleSoft Components.

- 25–35 GB free disk space for the downloaded zip files

  You may remove these files after you have successfully initialized your virtual machine.
- 150 GB free disk space is required to deploy and set up a full tier PeopleSoft environment.
- 25 GB free disk space is required to deploy and set up a mid-tier PeopleSoft environment.

See Also

My Oracle Support, Certifications.

Tech Update - Main Page, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 764222.1

Task 1-2: Reviewing Software Requirements

This section discusses:

- Reviewing Software Requirements on Microsoft Windows
- Reviewing Software Requirements on Linux
- Reviewing Software Requirements on AIX
- Reviewing Software Requirements on HP-UX
- Reviewing Software Requirements on Solaris
- Reviewing Requirements for the Puppet Software on Microsoft Windows
- Reviewing Requirements for the Puppet Software on Linux
- Reviewing Requirements for the Puppet Software on AIX
- Reviewing Requirements for the Puppet Software on HP-UX
- Reviewing Requirements for the Puppet Software on Solaris

Task 1-2-1: Reviewing Software Requirements on Microsoft Windows

Here are the software requirements for using the PeopleSoft Deployment Packages on a Microsoft Windows machine:

- Administrative permission
- Read, write, and execute permission on the default temporary folder.

  The deployment of a PeopleSoft environment by the DPKs installs required supporting software, such as Oracle WebLogic and Oracle Tuxedo. The DPK process to install this software uses the default temporary folders, as specified by the environment variable for the operating system. The user running the DPK setup script must have read/write/execute permission to these default temporary folders for successful DPK installation, or the deployment steps that install these components will fail.
- The DPK setup script can be run from any drive, regardless of the drive where the Windows operating system is installed.
- Web Browser

  You need a version certified for the current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release for end-users.

  See PeopleSoft Update Manager (PUM) Home Page, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 1641843.2.

See My Oracle Support, Certifications.

- Zip utility

  You need a utility that is able to extract (unzip) the DPK zip files for your operating system.

- Verify that the PATHEXT environment variable includes the extension .bat.

  This is a requirement for running Puppet. For example:

  ```
  PATHEXT=.COM;.EXE;.BAT;.CMD;.VBS;.VBE;.JS;.JSE;.WSF;.WSH;.MSC
  ```

- Python 3.7.4 is included with the DPKs.
- Microsoft Visual C++ Redistributable files

  The current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release was developed using Microsoft Visual Studio 2017. PeopleSoft PeopleTools programs require Microsoft Visual C++ Redistributable for Visual Studio 2017 files to be present or the programs will not run. The required Visual C++ Redistributable for Visual Studio 2017 packages are installed by the DPK setup script. After you have completed the PeopleSoft installation, if necessary, you can install the files from *PS_HOME*\setup\psvccrt.

- Specifying PS_APP_HOME

  The DPK setup script creates the installation location for the PeopleSoft application files, *PS_APP_HOME*, in a default location. If you want to use an existing *PS_APP_HOME*, or specify a non-default location, follow the instructions to perform the deployment using the DPK customizations.

  See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations," Preparing the Customization File for the PeopleSoft Homes.

- Specifying PS_CUST_HOME

  If you wish to use a *PS_CUST_HOME* location to store your site's custom files, you must perform the deployment using the DPK customizations, and specify the *PS_CUST_HOME* location.

  See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations," Preparing the Customization File for the PeopleSoft Homes.

Task 1-2-2: Reviewing Software Requirements on Linux

Here are the software requirements for using the PeopleSoft Deployment Packages on a Linux machine:

- You must have root access to deploy the PeopleSoft DPKs.

  See "Deploying the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Deployment Packages," Deploying as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.

- Read, write, and execute permission on the default temporary folder.

  The deployment of a PeopleSoft environment by the DPKs installs required supporting software, such as Oracle WebLogic and Oracle Tuxedo. The DPK process to install this software uses the default temporary folders, as specified by the environment variable for the operating system. The user running the DPK setup script must have read, write, and execute permission to these default temporary folders for successful DPK installation, or the deployment steps that install these components will fail.

- Verify the umask value.

  For a default deployment (that is, with no customizations) run by the root user, the DPK setup script uses the system umask value when it creates users (for example, psadm1, psadm2, and psadm3) and user home directories. Be sure that the umask value allows the DPK-created users the necessary access to the user home directories and other directories they need to use.

  See Using the PeopleSoft Installation.

- If you are installing the PeopleSoft DPKs on a supported version of Oracle Linux with Unbreakable

Enterprise Kernel (UEK), apply the latest UEK kernel from the Oracle YUM repository at http://public-yum.oracle.com/index.html.

- Zip utility

  You need a utility that is able to extract (unzip) the DPK zip files for your operating system; for example, tar or unzip.

- Specifying PS_APP_HOME

  The DPK setup script creates the installation location for the PeopleSoft application files, *PS_APP_HOME*, in a default location. If you want to use an existing *PS_APP_HOME*, or specify a non-default location, follow the instructions to perform the deployment using the DPK customizations.

  See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations," Preparing the Customization File for the PeopleSoft Homes.

- Specifying PS_CUST_HOME

  If you wish to use a *PS_CUST_HOME* location to store your site's custom files, you must perform the deployment using the DPK customizations, and specify the *PS_CUST_HOME* location.

  See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations," Preparing the Customization File for the PeopleSoft Homes.

- Python 3.7.4 is included with the DPKs.

Task 1-2-3: Reviewing Software Requirements on AIX

Here are the software requirements for using the PeopleSoft Deployment Packages on an IBM AIX machine:

- You must have root access to deploy the PeopleSoft DPKs.

  See "Deploying the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Deployment Packages," Deploying as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.

- Read, write, and execute permission on the default temporary folder.

  The deployment of a PeopleSoft environment by the DPKs installs required supporting software, such as Oracle WebLogic and Oracle Tuxedo. The DPK process to install this software uses the default temporary folders, as specified by the environment variable for the operating system. The user running the DPK setup script must have read, write, and execute permission to these default temporary folders for successful DPK installation, or the deployment steps that install these components will fail.

- Verify the umask value.

  For a default deployment (that is, with no customizations) run by the root user, the DPK setup script uses the system umask value when it creates users (for example, psadm1, psadm2, and psadm3) and user home directories. Be sure that the umask value allows the DPK-created users the necessary access to the user home directories and other directories they need to use.

  See Using the PeopleSoft Installation.

- Utilities for extracting the DPK zip files

  You need both the gunzip and unzip utilities for your operating system in order to extract the DPK zip files, and the PATH for the root user must include the gunzip and unzip locations.

- OpenSSL

  Obtain the latest version of OpenSSL for your AIX operating system from your IBM support contact, and install it on the host.

Note. Beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.09, only the Relocatable Puppet is used for deployment on AIX, and it includes OpenSSL. You do not have to do the separate installation.

See the section Reviewing Requirements for the Puppet Software on AIX.

- JDK 8.0

  You must manually install JDK 8.0 from the IBM web site. To obtain 64-bit IBM JDK for IBM AIX:

  1. Go to the IBM JDK download and service site.

     http://www.ibm.com/developerworks/java/jdk/aix/service.html

     Note. You need a user name and password for downloading IBM JDK. If you don't have the required credentials, contact IBM AIX support.

  2. Select the link for Java 8 64-bit under Java SE Version 8.
  3. Provide the required information to sign in.
  4. Install the JDK on the AIX computer where you will install the PeopleSoft AIX DPK.
  5. Make a note of the installation location.

     For the AIX DPK installation, you must perform the deployment using the DPK customizations, and specify the AIX JDK installation location.

     See "Completing the DPK Initialization With Customizations," Preparing the Customization File for JDK on AIX.

- Specifying PS_APP_HOME

  The DPK setup script creates the installation location for the PeopleSoft application files, *PS_APP_HOME,* in a default location. If you want to use an existing *PS_APP_HOME,* or specify a non-default location, follow the instructions to perform the deployment using the DPK customizations.

  See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations," Preparing the Customization File for the PeopleSoft Homes.

- Specifying PS_CUST_HOME

  If you wish to use a *PS_CUST_HOME* location to store your site's custom files, you must perform the deployment using the DPK customizations, and specify the *PS_CUST_HOME* location.

  See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations," Preparing the Customization File for the PeopleSoft Homes.

- Python 3.7.4 is included with the DPKs.

Task 1-2-4: Reviewing Software Requirements on HP-UX

Here are the software requirement for using the PeopleSoft Deployment Packages on HP-UX Itanium.

- You must have root access to deploy the PeopleSoft DPKs.

  See "Deploying the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Deployment Packages," Deploying as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.

- Read, write, and execute permission on the default temporary folder.

  The deployment of a PeopleSoft environment by the DPKs installs required supporting software, such as Oracle WebLogic and Oracle Tuxedo. The DPK process to install this software uses the default temporary folders, as specified by the environment variable for the operating system. The user running the DPK setup script must have read, write, and execute permission to these default temporary folders for successful DPK

installation, or the deployment steps that install these components will fail.

- Verify the umask value.

  For a default deployment (that is, with no customizations) run by the root user, the DPK setup script uses the system umask value when it creates users (for example, psadm1, psadm2, and psadm3) and user home directories. Be sure that the umask value allows the DPK-created users the necessary access to the user home directories and other directories they need to use.

  See Using the PeopleSoft Installation.

- Utilities for extracting the DPK zip files

  Install tar and zip/unzip utilities from Hewlett Packard and add the locations to your PATH:

  1. Go to HP-UX Porting & Archiving Centre, at http://hpux.connect.org.uk.
  2. Follow the instructions on the HP-UX Porting & Archiving Centre to install tar and its runtime dependencies, gettext, libiconv, and libunistring.
  3. Install zip/unzip from the HP-UX Porting & Archiving Centre, at http://hpux.connect.org.uk.
  4. Add the installation locations for tar, zip, and unzip to PATH.

     Make sure that the installation location for tar is first in the PATH. For example, if you installed tar to /usr/local/bin:

     ```
     export PATH=/usr/local/bin:$PATH
     ```

  5. Set LD_LIBRARY_PATH. For example, if your installation location above was in /usr/local:

     ```
     export LD_LIBRARY_PATH=/usr/local/lib${LD_LIBRARY_PATH+:$LD_LIBRARY_⇒
     PATH}
     ```

- OpenSSL

  Install the latest version of OpenSSL on the host where you will run the DPK setup script.

  Note. Beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.20, only the Relocatable Puppet is used for deployment on HP-UX, and it includes OpenSSL. You do not have to do the separate installation.

  See the section Reviewing Requirements for the Puppet Software on HP-UX.

  ---

  1. Go to the HP-UX Porting and Archive Centre web site, at http://hpux.connect.org.uk/hppd/hpux/.
  2. Search for *openssl*, and locate the latest version of OpenSSL in the list of results.
  3. Select the link for the latest OpenSSL package, for example openssl-1.0.2p.
  4. Download the gzipped binary package for 64-bit Itanium; for this example, this is openssl-1.0.2p-ia64-11.31.depot.gz.
  5. Use the installation documentation on the same page to install the OpenSSL package.

- JDK 8.0

  You must manually install JDK 8.0 from the Hewlett Packard web site. To obtain 64-bit JDK for HP-UX Itanium:

  1. Go to the Hewlett Packard Software Depot.

     See Hewlett Packard Software Depot, https://h20392.www2.hpe.com/portal/swdepot/index.do?lc=EN_US.

  2. Locate the link for the latest JDK/JRE 8.0 for your HP-UX operating system.

     Note. Beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.06, you can use the latest JDK/JRE 8.0 for HP-UX.

     ---

3. Install the JDK on the HP-UX computer where you will install the PeopleSoft HP-UX DPK.
4. Make a note of the installation location.

   For the HP-UX DPK installation, you must perform the deployment using the DPK customizations, and specify the HP-UX JDK installation location.

   See "Completing the DPK Initialization With Customizations," Preparing the Customization File for JDK on HP-UX.

- Specifying PS_APP_HOME

  The DPK setup script creates the installation location for the PeopleSoft application files, *PS_APP_HOME,* in a default location. If you want to use an existing *PS_APP_HOME,* or specify a non-default location, follow the instructions to perform the deployment using the DPK customizations.

  See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations," Preparing the Customization File for the PeopleSoft Homes.

- Specifying PS_CUST_HOME

  If you wish to use a *PS_CUST_HOME* location to store your site's custom files, you must perform the deployment using the DPK customizations, and specify the *PS_CUST_HOME* location.

  See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations," Preparing the Customization File for the PeopleSoft Homes.

- Python 3.7.4 is included with the DPKs.

Task 1-2-5: Reviewing Software Requirements on Solaris

Here are the software requirements for using the PeopleSoft Deployment Packages on Solaris:

- You must have root access to deploy the PeopleSoft DPKs.

  See "Deploying the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Deployment Packages," Deploying as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.

- Read, write, and execute permission on the default temporary folder.

  The deployment of a PeopleSoft environment by the DPKs installs required supporting software, such as Oracle WebLogic and Oracle Tuxedo. The DPK process to install this software uses the default temporary folders, as specified by the environment variable for the operating system. The user running the DPK setup script must have read, write, and execute permission to these default temporary folders for successful DPK installation, or the deployment steps that install these components will fail.

- Verify the umask value.

  For a default deployment (that is, with no customizations) run by the root user, the DPK setup script uses the system umask value when it creates users (for example, psadm1, psadm2, and psadm3) and user home directories. Be sure that the umask value allows the DPK-created users the necessary access to the user home directories and other directories they need to use.

  See Using the PeopleSoft Installation.

- Zip utility

  You need a utility that is able to extract (unzip) the DPK zip files for your operating system; for example, tar or unzip.

- OpenSSL

  Obtain the latest version of OpenSSL for your operating system and install it on the host.

Note. Beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.20, only the Relocatable Puppet is used for deployment on Solaris, and it includes OpenSSL. You do not have to do the separate installation.

See the section Reviewing Requirements for the Puppet Software on Solaris.

- Specifying PS_APP_HOME

  The DPK setup script creates the installation location for the PeopleSoft application files, *PS_APP_HOME,* in a default location. If you want to use an existing *PS_APP_HOME,* or specify a non-default location, follow the instructions to perform the deployment using the DPK customizations.

  See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations," Preparing the Customization File for the PeopleSoft Homes.

- Specifying PS_CUST_HOME

  If you wish to use a *PS_CUST_HOME* location to store your site's custom files, you must perform the deployment using the DPK customizations, and specify the *PS_CUST_HOME* location.

  See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations," Preparing the Customization File for the PeopleSoft Homes.

- Python 3.7.4 is included with the DPKs.

Task 1-2-6: Reviewing Requirements for the Puppet Software on Microsoft Windows

The PeopleSoft DPKs are delivered with the PeopleSoft Puppet modules, which are initialization and management scripts based upon open-source Puppet software.

See "Learning About the PeopleSoft Deployment Process," Understanding Puppet and the PeopleSoft Puppet Modules.

- These are the minimum requirements for the software versions associated with using Puppet with the PeopleSoft DPKs on Microsoft Windows operating systems:
  - Puppet Agent 5.5.14 (open source, and stand-alone architecture)
  - Hiera 3.4.6
  - Facter 2.5.1
  - Ruby 2.4.6
- The Puppet installation location depends upon the patch level.

  Beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.20, the DPK setup script installs open-source Puppet software that has been modified for the PeopleSoft installation. This method, referred to as Relocatable Puppet, installs the Puppet software by default in the location specified by the DPK setup script, *BASE_DIR/* psft_puppet_agent.

  For PeopleTools 8.58.19 and previous patch releases, the DPK setup script installs Puppet software in C:\Program Files\Puppet Labs\Puppet by default. The previous patch releases install the open-source version that is packaged by Puppet.
- Puppet installation location
  - You have the option to use a command-line parameter to install to a non-default location, including drives other than the C: drive.

    You can install in any writable local drive, but you cannot install in a network drive.

Note. This command is not valid for Microsoft Windows installations on PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.20 and later, which install the Relocatable Puppet for the deployment.

See "Deploying the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Deployment Packages, "Reviewing the DPK Setup Script Options.

- You can only specify a non-default location by using the command-line location when running the script.
- Whether you accept the default installation location, or specify a different location on the command line, the Puppet installation location is set in the Microsoft Windows registry.

- Running the DPK setup script with an existing Puppet installation

Note. This does not apply to Microsoft Windows installations on PeopleTools 8.58.20 and later, which install the Relocatable Puppet for the deployment. The Relocatable Puppet is the only Puppet software shipped with the DPK.

  - If you run the DPK setup script on a host with an existing Puppet installation, the script gets the Puppet location from the Microsoft Windows registry.

    If the existing Puppet is a lower version than that packaged with the DPKs, the script asks whether to keep the existing Puppet or install the version packaged with the DPK.
  - If you respond that you want to install the version packaged with the DPK, it will install in the default location, C:\Program Files\Puppet Labs\Puppet.

    This is true whether or not you installed Puppet previously to a non-default location using the command-line option. That is, you cannot specify a different installation location after you start running the script.
  - If you answer that you do not want to install the version packaged with the DPK, the script continues without installing the Puppet that is provided with the DPKs.

    Note that Oracle recommends that you use the Puppet version that is packaged with the DPK.

See Also

"Learning About the PeopleSoft Deployment Process," Understanding Puppet and the PeopleSoft Puppet Modules

Task 1-2-7: Reviewing Requirements for the Puppet Software on Linux

The PeopleSoft DPKs are delivered with the PeopleSoft Puppet modules, which are initialization and management scripts based upon open-source Puppet software.

- You must have root access to deploy the PeopleSoft DPKs.

  See "Deploying the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Deployment Packages," Deploying as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.
- The Puppet directory and its scripts must have read and execute permissions for all users.

  Puppet must be installed by the root user, either by running the DPK setup for any env_type or by running the prereq step for non-root users. If the root user has a non-default umask, when Puppet is installed by the root user, the files in the Puppet directory will not have the correct permissions for other users, which would impact non-root users who subsequently try to run the DPK setup.

Note. Beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.19, it is not necessary for the root user to run a prereq step on Linux. The DPK setup script installs the Relocatable Puppet software in *BASE_DIR*/psft_puppet_agent by default.

For example, if root has umask of 027, the permissions would be set as in the following example:

```
-rwxr-x--- 1 root root 126 Feb 12  2018 /opt/puppetlabs/puppet/bin⇒
/wrapper.sh
```

In this case, the root user has read, write, and execute permissions for files in this Puppet installation. The group that root belongs to has read and execute permission, and all other users have no permissions. So a non-root user will not have read and execute permissions for running the scripts in the Puppet directory (wrapper.sh in this example). Without the necessary permissions for the Puppet files, when the non-root user runs the DPK setup, Puppet execution will fail, because that user will not be able to execute any script or binary from the Puppet directory.

- These are the minimum requirements for the software versions associated with using Puppet with the PeopleSoft DPKs on Linux operating systems:
  - Puppet Agent 5.5.14 (open source, and stand-alone architecture)
  - Hiera 3.4.6
  - Facter 2.5.1
  - Ruby 2.4.6
- The Puppet installation location depends upon the patch level.

  Beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.19, the DPK setup script installs open-source Puppet software that has been modified for the PeopleSoft installation. This method, referred to as Relocatable Puppet, installs the Puppet software by default in the location specified by the DPK setup script, *BASE_DIR*/psft_puppet_agent.

  For PeopleTools 8.58.18 and previous patch releases, the DPK setup script installs Puppet software in /opt/oracle/puppetlabs by default. The previous patch releases install the open-source version that is packaged by Puppet.
- Running the DPK setup script with an existing Puppet installation

---

Note. This does not apply to Linux installations on PeopleTools 8.58.19 and later, which install the Relocatable Puppet for the deployment. The Relocatable Puppet is the only Puppet software shipped with the DPK.

  - If you run the DPK setup script on a host with an existing Puppet installation, the script searches for Puppet in standard installation locations.

    If the existing Puppet is a lower version than that packaged with the DPKs, the script asks whether to keep the existing Puppet or install the version packaged with the DPK.
  - If you respond that you want to install the version packaged with the DPK, it will install in the default location, /opt/puppetlabs/puppet/bin.
  - If you answer that you do not want to install the version packaged with the DPK, the script continues without installing the Puppet that is provided with the DPKs.

    Note that Oracle recommends that you use the Puppet version that is packaged with the DPK.

See Also

"Learning About the PeopleSoft Deployment Process," Understanding Puppet and the PeopleSoft Puppet Modules

Task 1-2-8: Reviewing Requirements for the Puppet Software on AIX

The PeopleSoft DPKs are delivered with the PeopleSoft Puppet modules, which are initialization and management scripts based upon open-source Puppet software.

- You must have root access to deploy the PeopleSoft DPKs.

  See "Deploying the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Deployment Packages," Deploying as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.

- The Puppet directory and its scripts must have read and execute permissions for all users.

  Puppet must be installed by the root user, either by running the DPK setup for any env_type or by running the prereq step for non-root users. If the root user has a non-default umask, when Puppet is installed by the root user, the files in the Puppet directory will not have the correct permissions for other users, which would impact non-root users who subsequently try to run the DPK setup.

  Note. Beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.09, it is not necessary for the root user to run a prereq step on AIX. The DPK setup script installs the Relocatable Puppet software in *BASE_DIR/*psft_puppet_agent by default.

  For example, if root has umask of 027, the permissions would be set as in the following example:

  ```
  -rwxr-x--- 1 root root 126 Feb 12  2018 /opt/oracle/puppetlabs/wrapper.sh
  ```

  In this case, the root user has read, write, and execute permissions for files in this Puppet installation. The group that root belongs to has read and execute permission, and all other users have no permissions. So a non-root user will not have read and execute permissions for running the scripts in the Puppet directory (wrapper.sh in this example). Without the necessary permissions for the Puppet files, when the non-root user runs the DPK setup, Puppet execution will fail, because that user will not be able to execute any script or binary from the Puppet directory.

- If you are installing the PeopleSoft DPKs for IBM AIX, check the Puppet web site for Puppet dependencies or limitations for those operating systems.
- These are the minimum requirements for the software versions associated with using Puppet with the PeopleSoft DPKs on AIX operating systems:
  - Puppet Agent 5.5.14 (open source, and stand-alone architecture)
  - Hiera 3.4.6
  - Facter 2.5.1
  - Ruby 2.4.6
- The Puppet installation location on AIX depends upon the patch level.

  Beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.09, the DPK setup script installs open-source Puppet software that has been modified for the PeopleSoft installation. This method, referred to as Relocatable Puppet, installs the Puppet software by default in the location specified by the DPK setup script, *BASE_DIR/* psft_puppet_agent.

  For PeopleTools 8.58.08 and previous patch releases, the DPK setup script installs Puppet software in /opt/oracle/puppetlabs by default. The previous patch releases install the open-source version that is packaged by Puppet.

- Running the DPK setup script with an existing Puppet installation

  ---

  Note. This does not apply to AIX installations on PeopleTools 8.58.09 and later, which install the Relocatable Puppet for the deployment. The Relocatable Puppet is the only Puppet software shipped with the DPK.

- If you run the DPK setup script on a host with an existing Puppet installation, the script searches for Puppet in a standard installation locations.

  If the existing Puppet is a lower version than that packaged with the DPKs, the script asks whether to keep the existing Puppet or install the version packaged with the DPK.
- If you respond that you want to install the version packaged with the DPK, it will install in the default location, /opt/oracle/puppetlabs.
- If you answer that you do not want to install the version packaged with the DPK, the script continues without installing the Puppet that is provided with the DPKs.

  Note that Oracle recommends that you use the Puppet version that is packaged with the DPK.

See Also

"Learning About the PeopleSoft Deployment Process," Understanding Puppet and the PeopleSoft Puppet Modules

Task 1-2-9: Reviewing Requirements for the Puppet Software on HP-UX

The PeopleSoft DPKs are delivered with the PeopleSoft Puppet modules, which are initialization and management scripts based upon open-source Puppet software.

- You must have root access to deploy the PeopleSoft DPKs.

  See "Deploying the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Deployment Packages," Deploying as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.
- The Puppet directory and its scripts must have read and execute permissions for all users.

  Puppet must be installed by the root user, either by running the DPK setup for any env_type or by running the prereq step for non-root users. If the root user has a non-default umask, when Puppet is installed by the root user, the files in the Puppet directory will not have the correct permissions for other users, which would impact non-root users who subsequently try to run the DPK setup.

  Note. Beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.20, it is not necessary for the root user to run a prereq step on HP-UX.

  For example, if root has umask of 027, the permissions would be set as in the following example:

  ```
  -rwxr-x--- 1 root root 126 Feb 12  2018 /opt/oracle/puppetlabs/wrapper.sh
  ```

  In this case, the root user has read, write, and execute permissions for files in this Puppet installation. The group that root belongs to has read and execute permission, and all other users have no permissions. So a non-root user will not have read and execute permissions for running the scripts in the Puppet directory (wrapper.sh in this example). Without the necessary permissions for the Puppet files, when the non-root user runs the DPK setup, Puppet execution will fail, because that user will not be able to execute any script or binary from the Puppet directory.
- If you are installing the PeopleSoft DPKs for HP-UX, check the Puppet web site for Puppet dependencies or limitations for those operating systems.
- These are the minimum requirements for the software versions associated with using Puppet with the PeopleSoft DPKs on HP-UX operating systems:
  - Puppet Agent 5.5.14 (open source, and stand-alone architecture)
  - Hiera 3.4.6
  - Facter 2.5.1
  - Ruby 2.4.6

- The Puppet installation location depends upon the patch level.

  Beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.20, the DPK setup script installs open-source Puppet software that has been modified for the PeopleSoft installation. This method, referred to as Relocatable Puppet, installs the Puppet software by default in the location specified by the DPK setup script, *BASE_DIR*/psft_puppet_agent.

  For PeopleTools 8.58.19 and previous patch releases, the DPK setup script installs Puppet software in /opt/oracle/puppetlabs by default. The previous patch releases install the open-source version that is packaged by Puppet.

- Running the DPK setup script with an existing Puppet installation

  ---

  Note. This does not apply to HP-UX installations on PeopleTools 8.58.20 and later, which install the Relocatable Puppet for the deployment. The Relocatable Puppet is the only Puppet software shipped with the DPK.

  - If you run the DPK setup script on a host with an existing Puppet installation, the script searches for Puppet in a standard installation locations.

    If the existing Puppet is a lower version than that packaged with the DPKs, the script asks whether to keep the existing Puppet or install the version packaged with the DPK.
  - If you respond that you want to install the version packaged with the DPK, it will install in the default location, /opt/oracle/puppetlabs.
  - If you answer that you do not want to install the version packaged with the DPK, the script continues without installing the Puppet that is provided with the DPKs.

    Note that Oracle recommends that you use the Puppet version that is packaged with the DPK.

See Also

"Learning About the PeopleSoft Deployment Process," Understanding Puppet and the PeopleSoft Puppet Modules

Task 1-2-10: Reviewing Requirements for the Puppet Software on Solaris

The PeopleSoft DPKs are delivered with the PeopleSoft Puppet modules, which are initialization and management scripts based upon open-source Puppet software.

- You must have root access to deploy the PeopleSoft DPKs.

  See "Deploying the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Deployment Packages," Deploying as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.

- The Puppet directory and its scripts must have read and execute permissions for all users.

  Puppet must be installed by the root user, either by running the DPK setup for any env_type or by running the prereq step for non-root users. If the root user has a non-default umask, when Puppet is installed by the root user, the files in the Puppet directory will not have the correct permissions for other users, which would impact non-root users who subsequently try to run the DPK setup.

  Note. Beginning with PeopleTools 8.58.20, it is not necessary for the root user to run a prereq step on Solaris.

  For example, if root has umask of 027, the permissions would be set as in the following example:

  ```
  -rwxr-x--- 1 root root 126 Feb 12  2018 /opt/oracle/puppetlabs/wrapper.sh
  ```

  In this case, the root user has read, write, and execute permissions for files in this Puppet installation. The group that root belongs to has read and execute permission, and all other users have no permissions. So a non-

root user will not have read and execute permissions for running the scripts in the Puppet directory (wrapper.sh in this example). Without the necessary permissions for the Puppet files, when the non-root user runs the DPK setup, Puppet execution will fail, because that user will not be able to execute any script or binary from the Puppet directory.

- Before installing the PeopleSoft DPKs for Solaris, check the Puppet web site for Puppet dependencies or limitations for those operating systems.
- These are the minimum requirements for the software versions associated with using Puppet with the PeopleSoft DPKs on Oracle Solaris for SPARC operating systems:
  - Puppet Agent 5.5.14 (open source, and stand-alone architecture)
  - Hiera 3.4.6
  - Facter 2.5.1
  - Ruby 2.4.6
- The Puppet installation location on Solaris depends upon the patch level.

  Beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.20, the DPK setup script installs open-source Puppet software that has been modified for the PeopleSoft installation. This method, referred to as Relocatable Puppet, installs the Puppet software by default in the location specified by the DPK setup script, *BASE_DIR/* psft_puppet_agent.

  For PeopleTools 8.58.19 and previous patch releases, the DPK setup script installs Puppet software in /opt/oracle/puppetlabs by default. The previous patch releases install the open-source version that is packaged by Puppet.
- Running the DPK setup script with an existing Puppet installation

  ---

  Note. This does not apply to Solaris installations on PeopleTools 8.58.20 and later, which install the Relocatable Puppet for the deployment. The Relocatable Puppet is the only Puppet software shipped with the DPK.

  - If you run the DPK setup script on a host with an existing Puppet installation, the script searches for Puppet in a standard installation locations.

    If the existing Puppet is a lower version than that packaged with the DPKs, the script asks whether to keep the existing Puppet or install the version packaged with the DPK.
  - If you respond that you want to install the version packaged with the DPK, it will install in the default location, /opt/oracle/puppetlabs.
  - If you answer that you do not want to install the version packaged with the DPK, the script continues without installing the Puppet that is provided with the DPKs.

    Note that Oracle recommends that you use the Puppet version that is packaged with the DPK.

See Also

"Learning About the PeopleSoft Deployment Process," Understanding Puppet and the PeopleSoft Puppet Modules

Task 1-3: Cataloging the Database for DB2 z/OS

For all installations on DB2 z/OS, you must catalog the database before mid-tier deployment using DPKs. To catalog the database, see the documentation for DB2 z/OS for information.

Task 1-4: Reviewing the System Parameters on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris

This section discusses:

- Understanding the System Parameters on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris
- Reviewing the sysctl Parameters
- Reviewing the ulimit Parameters

Understanding the System Parameters on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris

The generated YAML file for UNIX operating systems includes settings for certain system parameters. When you run the DPK setup script on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, the script overwrites existing system-level parameters that are different from the values in *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data/psft_unix_system.yaml.

You can perform a customized deployment to make certain changes to the way that the DPK deployment handles these system parameters, but be aware that the values listed in the psft_unix_system.yaml file are the minimum requirements for the DPK deployment.

Task 1-4-1: Reviewing the sysctl Parameters

If you do not want the DPK setup script to overwrite the sysctl parameters, you can perform one of these customized deployments:

- If the existing sysctl settings on your system meet the DPK requirements, you can change the value of the parameter `setup_syscfg` from true to false.

  This change will prevent the DPK setup script from overwriting the parameters.

  See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations," Preparing the Customization File to Change the setup_sysctl Parameter.

- If you want to allow the DPK setup script to change the sysctl settings on your system, retain the parameter `setup_syscfg: true`, and specify values for the following sysctl parameters that are greater than those given in the generated psft_unix_system.yaml file.

```
sysctl:
    kernel.msgmnb:                65538
    kernel.msgmni:                1024
    kernel.msgmax:                65536
    kernel.shmmax:                68719476736
    kernel.shmall:                4294967296
    kernel.core_uses_pid:         1
    net.ipv4.tcp_keepalive_time:  90
    net.ipv4.tcp_timestamps:      1
    net.ipv4.tcp_window_scaling:  1
    net.ipv4.ip_local_port_range: '10000 65500'
```

  See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations," Preparing the Customization File to Overwrite the sysctl Parameters.

Task 1-4-2: Reviewing the ulimit Parameters

The psft_unix_system.yaml file includes the following ulimit parameters. These are the minimum requirements for the deployment. If you do not want the DPK setup script to overwrite the ulimit parameters, you can perform a customized deployment and specify values for the ulimit parameters that are greater than those given in the generated psft_unix_system.yaml file.

```
ulimit:
  group:
    hard.nofile:  65536
    soft.nofile:  65536
    hard.nproc:   65536
    soft.nproc:   65536
    hard.core:    unlimited
    soft.core:    unlimited
    hard.memlock: 500000
    soft.memlock: 500000
    hard.stack:   102400
    soft.stack:   102400

  user:
    hard.nofile:  131072
    soft.nofile:  131072
    hard.nproc:   131072
    soft.nproc:   131072
    hard.core:    unlimited
    soft.core:    unlimited
    hard.memlock: 500000
    soft.memlock: 500000
```

See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations," Preparing the Customization File to Overwrite the ulimit Parameters.

Chapter 2

Deploying the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Deployment Packages

This chapter discusses:

- Obtaining the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs
- Using the PT-INFRA DPK for Additional Component Software
- Reviewing the DPK Setup Script Options
- Deploying as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris
- Running the DPK Setup Script for Mid-Tier Deployment
- Running the DPK Setup Script to Install Mid-Tier Software Only
- Running the DPK Setup Script to Deploy an Application Server Domain
- Running the DPK Setup Script to Deploy a Process Scheduler Domain
- Running the DPK Setup Script to Deploy an Application Server and a Process Scheduler Domain
- Running the DPK Setup Script to Deploy a PIA Domain
- Running the DPK Setup Script to Install PS_HOME Only
- Deploying the PeopleTools Client DPK

Task 2-1: Obtaining the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs

This section discusses:

- Obtaining the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs from My Oracle Support
- Obtaining the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs from Oracle Software Delivery Cloud
- Reviewing the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs

Task 2-1-1: Obtaining the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs from My Oracle Support

The PeopleSoft PeopleTools patches are available on My Oracle Support. Contact Oracle if you need a user ID and password for My Oracle Support.

To locate and download the DPKs:

1. Go to the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Patches Home Page, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2062712.2, to find the information on locating and downloading the latest PeopleSoft PeopleTools patch.

   This page includes documentation and links to the most recent patches. To find earlier PeopleSoft

PeopleTools patches:

a. Sign in to My Oracle Support.

b. Select the Patches & Updates tab.

c. Select Product or Family (Advanced), and search for PeopleSoft PeopleTools.

2. Download the DPK zip files into a single directory, referred to in this documentation as *DPK_INSTALL*.

   Be sure that the *DPK_INSTALL* directory has adequate available space for all the zip files. When you download, there will probably be multiple zip files. The multiple files are needed due to size limitations.

   This documentation typically refers to the downloaded zip files as *FILENAME_#ofn.zip*. The filename syntax is described in following section.

Task 2-1-2: Obtaining the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs from Oracle Software Delivery Cloud

At the general availability date for PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58 for on premises installations, you can obtain the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs from Oracle Software Delivery Cloud. Later patches are available only on My Oracle Support. To obtain the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs from Oracle Software Delivery Cloud:

1. Sign in to Oracle Software Delivery Cloud.

   See Oracle Software Delivery Cloud, https://edelivery.oracle.com.

2. Search for the current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release.

3. In the search results, locate the PeopleSoft PeopleTools download package, and click the button to add it to your cart.

4. Select Checkout.

5. On the Selected Software page, select your operating system from the Platforms/Languages drop-down list.

   Select or clear the check boxes if you do not want all the items.

6. Click Continue.

7. Review and accept the terms and conditions.

8. Download the DPK zip files, for example V123456-0#.zip, into a single directory, referred to in this documentation as *DPK_INSTALL*.

   Be sure that the *DPK_INSTALL* directory has adequate available space for all the zip files. When you download, there will probably be multiple zip files. The multiple files are needed due to size limitations.

   This documentation typically refers to the downloaded zip files as *FILENAME_#ofn.zip*. The filename syntax is described in the next section.

Task 2-1-3: Reviewing the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs

The PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs are delivered for each PeopleTools patch on My Oracle Support. The files are double-zipped. This table describes the downloaded zip files and the embedded zip files. Be sure to review the instructions in this documentation before unzipping the files.

Downloaded Zip Files*	Embedded Zip Files	Description
PEOPLETOOLS-<*OS*>-<*Rel.Patch*>_1of4.zip	The setup folder, including the setup script and other files.	Setup DPK

Downloaded Zip Files*	Embedded Zip Files	Description
PEOPLETOOLS-<*OS*>-<*Rel.Patch*>_2of4.zip	PT-DPK-<*OS*>-<*Rel.Patch*>-1of2.zip	PeopleTools server, Part 1
PEOPLETOOLS-<*OS*>-<*Rel.Patch*>_3of4.zip	PT-DPK-<*OS*>-<*Rel.Patch*>-2of2.zip	PeopleTools server, Part 2
PEOPLETOOLS-<*OS*>-<*Rel.Patch*>_4of4.zip	PTC-DPK-<*OS*>-<*Rel.Patch*>-1of1.zip	PeopleTools Client for 8.58

* This refers to the name of the files downloaded from My Oracle Support.

The zip files have the following format:

PEOPLETOOLS-<*OS*>-<*Rel.Patch*>_#of*n*.zip

For example:

PEOPLETOOLS-WIN-8.58.04_1of4.zip

The files names are comprised of the following parts:

- <*OS*> is one of these operating systems:
  - AIX for IBM AIX
  - HPI for HP-UX
  - LNX for Linux
  - SOL for Oracle Solaris
  - WIN for Microsoft Windows
- <*Rel.Patch*> is the release and patch number for the product, such as 8.58.04.
- *n* represents the total number of zip files.

Task 2-2: Using the PT-INFRA DPK for Additional Component Software

The PT-INFRA DPK contains supporting (third-party) software that is required for a PeopleSoft installation. A separate PT-INFRA DPK is delivered as needed to provide security updates or other patches for one or more of the components. You can use this separate PT-INFRA DPK in a new installation to take advantage of up-to-date Critical Patch Updates (CPUs).

The PT-INFRA DPK includes the following:

- Oracle Tuxedo
- Oracle WebLogic
- Oracle Database Client
- JDK and JRE

See *PT-INFRA Deployment Package Installation (PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58),* Oracle's PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58 Home Page, Installation and Upgrade tab, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2602329.2.

Task 2-3: Reviewing the DPK Setup Script Options

This section discusses:

- Using the DPK Setup Script Options
- Using the DPK Setup Script Option use_alternate_puppet_install
- Preparing to Run the DPK Setup Script

Task 2-3-1: Using the DPK Setup Script Options

The PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPK setup script alleviates the installation process by automating most of the manual tasks on a virtual or bare-metal host running a supported operating system. By convention, the setup DPK is the first zip file (*FILENAME*_1ofn.zip) in the group of PeopleSoft DPK zip files you download from My Oracle Support.

The DPK setup zip file includes a script, psft-dpk-setup, that you use to set up a PeopleSoft environment. The DPK setup script offers a variety of options for setting up mid-tier components, *PS_HOME* folder, and PeopleSoft domains, depending upon the options you supply. The script is an interactive script that detects the downloaded DPKs and verifies that they are correct. It also prompts the user for input, and once that information is gathered, will set up a complete functional PeopleSoft mid-tier environment connecting to an existing PeopleSoft database.

Note. This document includes several examples of using the script. In some cases the examples have been formatted to make them easier to read. It is a good idea to type the script directly into your command or terminal window. If you copy from this document and paste it, the pasted text may not be correct.

Note. The DPK setup script does not provide any default passwords. It is a good idea to be prepared to supply passwords such as user ID, PeopleSoft Connect ID, Application Server Domain Connection, and so on.

The following table lists the options available for the DPK setup script, psft-dpk-setup.bat for Microsoft Windows and psft-dpk-setup.sh for Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris. The suffix <*ext*> in the table refers to the operating system specific extension.

Note that the command options require two dashes when running on Microsoft Windows, Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.

See the section Preparing to Run the DPK Setup Script as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris for additional script options.

Note. The commands in the table include line feeds to improve readability.

Deployment	DPK Setup Script Command

Perform the following:
• Install the software required for the mid-tier components, including Oracle Tuxedo, Oracle WebLogic, and Oracle database client.
• Deploy and set up the domains for the mid-tier components (Application Server, web server, Process Scheduler and Oracle database client).
The deployment sets up one each of Application Server, web server, and Process Scheduler domains.
• Install the *PS_HOME* directory.
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext>`
	`--env_type midtier`
	or
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext>`
	`--env_type midtier`
	`--domain_type all`

Perform the following:
• Install the software required for the mid-tier components, including Oracle Tuxedo, Oracle WebLogic and Oracle database client, without setting up the mid-tier domains.
• Install the *PS_HOME* directory.
*There is additional information following this table.
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext>`
	`--env_type midtier`
	`--deploy_only`
	or
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext>`
	`--env_type midtier`
	`--deploy_only`
	`--deploy_type all`

Deploy the *PS_HOME* directory only.
This option does not set up any domains.
*There is additional information following this table.
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext>`
	`--env_type midtier`
	`--deploy_only`
	`--deploy_type tools_home`

Deploy and set up the domain for the Application Server only.
Install the Oracle Tuxedo and Oracle WebLogic software.
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext>`
	`--env_type midtier`
	`--domain_type appserver`

Deploy and set up the domain for the Process Scheduler only.
Install the Oracle Tuxedo and Oracle WebLogic software.
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext>`
	`--env_type midtier`
	`--domain_type prcs`

Deploy and set up the domain for PIA only.
Install the Oracle Tuxedo and Oracle WebLogic software.
Note. Before beginning the PIA domain deployment, ensure that application server and Process Scheduler domains are available.
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext>`
	`--env_type midtier`
	`--domain_type pia`

Deploy and set up the domains for the Application Server and the Process Scheduler.
Install the Oracle Tuxedo and Oracle WebLogic software.
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext>`
	`--env_type midtier`
	`--domain_type appbatch`

Deployment	DPK Setup Script Command

Specify the full path of the downloaded DPKs.
The script assumes that the downloaded DPKs are in the parent directory of the DPK setup script. If the DPKs are located in a different directory, use this option.
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext>`
	`--env_type midtier`
	`--dpk_src_dir <full_DPK_path>`

Specify the installation location for Puppet software on Microsoft Windows.
The DPK setup script installs Puppet in C:\Program Files\Puppet Labs\Puppet by default. Use this option to install Puppet in a different location, including drives other than the C: drive. You can install in any writable local drive, but you cannot install in a network drive. Specify the full path to the installation location. Use this option with the desired deployment command.
Note. This command is not valid for Microsoft Windows installations on PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.20 and later, which install the Relocatable Puppet for the deployment.
	`psft-dpk-setup.bat`
	`--env_type midtier`
	`--puppet_win_install_dir <full_⇒ puppet_path>`

Use the option --use_alternate_puppet_install to install Puppet software under the *BASE_DIR* that is specified when running the DPK setup script.	See Using the DPK Setup Script Option use_alternate_puppet_install

Run the DPK setup script in silent mode for default initialization.
You perform the deployment in silent mode by providing all the required information in a response file.
See Running the DPK Setup Script in Silent Mode.
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext>`
	`--silent`
	`--response_file=<response_file>`

Run the DPK setup script in silent mode with a customization file.
Use this command to specify a customization YAML file.
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext>`
	`--silent`
	`--response_file=<response_file>`
	`--customization_file=<dpk_⇒ customization_file>`

Remove a deployed environment. See "Using and Maintaining the PeopleSoft Environment," Removing a Deployed PeopleSoft Environment.	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext>` `--cleanup`
List the DPK setup script usage.	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext> --help`

Deployment	DPK Setup Script Command

Reduce the size of the log file produced by the DPK setup script by adding the nodebug option to any of the other commands in this table.
This option turns off debug messages generated by Puppet. Be aware that if you contact Oracle support regarding a deployment problem, Oracle support will request the log file. If the log file does not include the debugging messages it may not be helpful in resolving the issue.
The log file produced when you use this option also does not record the underlying steps performed by the Puppet lookup with Hiera. This may also affect your debugging.
	Combine the option with the other DPK setup script commands listed in this table. Here are three examples:
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext>`
	`--env_type midtier`
	`--nodebug`
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext>`
	`--env_type midtier`
	`--deploy_only`
	`--nodebug`
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext>`
	`--env_type midtier`
	`--domain_type appserver`
	`--nodebug`

Specify the location for the installation log file by adding the log_file option to any of the other commands in this table.	Combine the option with the other DPK setup script commands listed in this table. Here are three examples:
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext>`
	`--env_type midtier`
	`--log_file <log file>`
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext>`
	`--env_type midtier`
	`--deploy_only`
	`--log_file <log file>`
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext>`
	`--env_type midtier`
	`--domain_type appserver`
	`--log_file <log file>`

The following options are also available for the PeopleSoft Application Images. These options require the presence of PeopleSoft application DPK zip files in the deployment folder. If *DPK_INSTALL* includes only the PeopleTools DPK zip files, you cannot use these options.

See PeopleSoft 9.2 Application Installation for your database platform.

Deployment with PeopleSoft Application DPKs Present	DPK Setup Script Command

Deploy the *PS_APP_HOME* directory only.
This option does not set up any domains.
*There is additional information following this table.
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext>`
	`--env_type midtier`
	`--deploy_only`
	`--deploy_type app_home`

Deploy the *PS_HOME* and *PS_APP_HOME* directories only.
This option does not set up any domains.
*There is additional information following this table.
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext>`
	`--env_type midtier`
	`--deploy_only`
	`--deploy_type app_and_tools_home`

* When you use the `--deploy_only` options on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris operating systems, the deployment does not set environment variables needed for subsequent tasks. After the deployment is complete, you can set the environment variables using one of these methods:

- Change directory to *BASE_DIR*/pt/ps_home8.58.xx and run `../psconfig.sh`.
- Run the following command.

  ```
  <PUPPET_DIR>/puppet apply --confdir=<BASE_DIR>/dpk/puppet
  -e "include ::pt_profile::pt_psft_environment"
  --logdest <DPK_INSTALL>/<log_file_name>
  ```

  For Linux, *PUPPET_DIR* is /opt/puppetlabs/bin. For AIX, HP-UX or Solaris, *PUPPET_DIR* is /opt/oracle/puppetlabs/bin.

  Note. The command text given here includes line feeds for readability.

Task 2-3-2: Using the DPK Setup Script Option use_alternate_puppet_install

Use the DPK setup script option `--use_alternate_puppet_install` to install Puppet software under the *BASE_DIR* that is specified when running the DPK setup script. Using this script option installs the default, open-source version that has been sufficiently modified to allow it to be installed in this non-default location.

This installation method is referred to as Relocatable Puppet. You can use this DPK setup script option for PeopleTools patch releases that do not install Relocatable Puppet by default. If the DPK setup script does not install Relocatable Puppet, the setup script installs the open-source version that is packaged by Puppet in operating system-specific locations. It also sets environment variables on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, and Solaris, and creates a registry entry on Microsoft Windows.

For AIX (beginning with PeopleTools 8.58.09), Linux (beginning with PeopleTools 8.58.19), Microsoft Windows, HP-UX, and Solaris (beginning with PeopleTools 8.58.20) the option `--use_alternate_puppet_install` is not needed, because the DPK setup script only uses the Relocatable Puppet for the deployment.

If you are on earlier PeopleTools patch releases, you can use the `--use_alternate_puppet_install` option on Linux and Microsoft Windows beginning with 8.58.01, and on AIX, HP-UX, and Solaris beginning with 8.58.05.

- Add this option to the command line for any supported deployment.

  For example, you cannot use it to install Puppet in a separate step, followed by running the DPK setup script for a mid-tier deployment.
- When you use the DPK setup script to remove an environment that you deployed using `--use_alternate_puppet_install`, you must include the same option in the command.

  ```
  psft-dpk-setup.<ext> --use_alternate_puppet_install --cleanup
  ```

  The cleanup will remove the Puppet that was installed under *BASE_DIR*.
- Puppet will be installed in *BASE_DIR*/psft_puppet_agent.
- You cannot specify a different installation location.
- The Puppet installation is deployment-specific; that is, each setup that is run with this command has its own Puppet installation.
- The installation does not modify environment variables or the Microsoft Windows registry.
- If you are running as a non-root user Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, and you include this option in the DPK script commands, the root user does not need to run the prerequisite step to install Puppet or install Puppet and system configuration first.

  See Deploying as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.

Note. Using the `--use_alternate_puppet_install` option has a different function from using the command:

`psft-dpk-setup.bat --puppet_win_install_dir <full_puppet_path>`

That command is only for Microsoft Windows, requires an installation directory as input, and it does modify the Windows registry. When you run a cleanup with the DPK setup script, the Puppet installation is not removed.

The following table lists the options available for the DPK setup script, psft-dpk-setup.bat for Microsoft Windows and psft-dpk-setup.sh for Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris. The suffix <*ext*> in the table refers to the operating system specific extension.

Note that the command options require two dashes when running on Microsoft Windows, Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.

Deployment	DPK Setup Script Command

Perform the following:
• Install Puppet software in *BASE_DIR*/psft_puppet_agent.
• Install the software required for the mid-tier components, including Oracle Tuxedo, Oracle WebLogic, and Oracle database client.
• Deploy and set up the domains for the mid-tier components (Application Server, web server, Process Scheduler and Oracle database client).
The deployment sets up one each of Application Server, web server, and Process Scheduler domains.
• Install the *PS_HOME* directory.
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext> --env_type midtier --use_alternate_puppet_install`
	or
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext> --env_type midtier --domain_type all --use_alternate_puppet_install`

Perform the following:
• Install Puppet software in *BASE_DIR*/psft_puppet_agent.
• Install the software required for the mid-tier components, including Oracle Tuxedo, Oracle WebLogic and Oracle database client, without setting up the mid-tier domains.
• Install the *PS_HOME* directory.
*There is additional information following this table.
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext> --env_type midtier --deploy_only --use_alternate_puppet_install`
	or
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext> --env_type midtier --deploy_only --deploy_type all --use_alternate_puppet_install`

Install Puppet software in *BASE_DIR*/psft_puppet_agent. Deploy the *PS_HOME* directory only. This option does not set up any domains. *There is additional information following this table.	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext> --env_type midtier --deploy_only --deploy_type tools_home --use_alternate_puppet_install`

Deployment	DPK Setup Script Command
• Install Puppet software in *BASE_DIR*/psft_puppet_agent. • Deploy and set up the domain for the Application Server only. • Install the Oracle Tuxedo and Oracle WebLogic software.	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext> --env_type midtier --domain_type appserver --use_alternate_puppet_install`
• Install Puppet software in *BASE_DIR*/psft_puppet_agent. • Deploy and set up the domain for the Process Scheduler only. • Install the Oracle Tuxedo and Oracle WebLogic software.	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext> --env_type midtier --domain_type prcs --use_alternate_puppet_install`
• Install Puppet software in *BASE_DIR*/psft_puppet_agent. • Deploy and set up the domain for PIA only. • Install the Oracle Tuxedo and Oracle WebLogic software. **Note.** Before beginning the PIA domain deployment, ensure that application server and Process Scheduler domains are available.	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext> --env_type midtier --domain_type pia --use_alternate_puppet_install`
• Install Puppet software in *BASE_DIR*/psft_puppet_agent. • Deploy and set up the domains for the Application Server and the Process Scheduler. • Install the Oracle Tuxedo and Oracle WebLogic software.	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext> --env_type midtier --domain_type appbatch --use_alternate_puppet_install`
Specify the full path of the downloaded DPKs. The script assumes that the downloaded DPKs are in the parent directory of the DPK setup script. If the DPKs are located in a different directory, use this option. Install Puppet software in *BASE_DIR*/psft_puppet_agent.	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext> --env_type midtier --dpk_src_dir <full_DPK_path> --use_alternate_puppet_install`
Run the DPK setup script in silent mode for default initialization. You perform the deployment in silent mode by providing all the required information in a response file. See Running the DPK Setup Script in Silent Mode.	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext> --silent --response_file=<response_file> --use_alternate_puppet_install`

Deployment	DPK Setup Script Command

Run the DPK setup script in silent mode with a customization file.
Use this command to specify a customization YAML file.
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext>`
	`--silent`
	`--response_file=<response_file>`
	`--customization_file=<dpk_customization_file>`
	`--use_alternate_puppet_install`

Remove a deployed environment that was created using the `--use_alternate_puppet_install` option.
See "Using and Maintaining the PeopleSoft Environment," Removing a Deployed PeopleSoft Environment.
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext>`
	`--cleanup`
	`--use_alternate_puppet_install`

Reduce the size of the log file produced by the DPK setup script by adding the nodebug option to any of the other commands in this table.
This option turns off debug messages generated by Puppet. Be aware that if you contact Oracle support regarding a deployment problem, Oracle support will request the log file. If the log file does not include the debugging messages it may not be helpful in resolving the issue.
The log file produced when you use this option also does not record the underlying steps performed by the Puppet lookup with Hiera. This may also affect your debugging.
	Combine the option with the other DPK setup script commands listed in this table. Here are three examples:
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext>`
	`--env_type midtier`
	`--nodebug`
	`--use_alternate_puppet_install`
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext>`
	`--env_type midtier`
	`--deploy_only`
	`--nodebug`
	`--use_alternate_puppet_install`
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext>`
	`--env_type midtier`
	`--domain_type appserver`
	`--nodebug`
	`--use_alternate_puppet_install`

* When you use the `--deploy_only` options on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris operating systems, the deployment does not set environment variables needed for subsequent tasks. After the deployment is complete, you can set the environment variables using one of these methods:

- Change directory to *BASE_DIR*/pt/ps_home8.58.xx and run `../psconfig.sh`.
- Run the following command.

  ```
  <PUPPET_DIR>/puppet apply --confdir=<BASE_DIR>/dpk/puppet
  -e "include ::pt_profile::pt_psft_environment"
  --logdest <DPK_INSTALL>/<log_file_name>
  ```

  For Linux, *PUPPET_DIR* is /opt/puppetlabs/bin. For AIX, HP-UX or Solaris, *PUPPET_DIR* is /opt/oracle/puppetlabs/bin.

  Note. The command text given here includes line feeds for readability.

Task 2-3-3: Preparing to Run the DPK Setup Script

Include the following decisions in preparing to install with the DPK setup script:

- Non-root deployment

On Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, you have the option to deploy the PeopleSoft environment as a non-root user.

See Preparing to Run the DPK Setup Script as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris

- Default or manual configuration

  After extracting the DPKs, you are given the option to exit the process, create a customization file, and complete the configuration manually using the psft_puppet_apply script with a user-written customization file. Use the manual configuration if you want to change installation locations and so on.

  See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations."

  The following installation scenarios require manual configuration using the customizations:

  - Installing on an AIX operating system

    See Reviewing the Software Requirements on AIX

    See Preparing the Customization File for JDK on AIX.
  - Installing on HP-UX operating system.

    See Reviewing the Software Requirements on HP-UX.

    See Preparing the Customization File for JDK on HP-UX.
  - Connecting to a non-Oracle RDBMS platform

    See Preparing the Customization File for Mid-Tier Connection to a Microsoft SQL Server Database

    See Preparing the Customization File for Mid-Tier Connection to a DB2 z/OS Database
- User IDs and password

  The DPK setup script does not provide any default passwords. It is a good idea to be prepared to supply passwords such as user ID, PeopleSoft Connect ID, Application Server Domain Connection, and so on.
- Unicode or non-Unicode

  While running the DPK setup script, you can choose to install a Unicode or non-Unicode environment.

  Alternatively, specify Unicode using the customizations and psft_puppet_apply script.

  See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations," Preparing the Customization File for Unicode.
- Specifying *PS_CUST_HOME*

  You may wish to set up a *PS_CUST_HOME* (PeopleSoft Customization Home) directory in your environment to store your site's customized files, separate from *PS_HOME* and *PS_APP_HOME*. If you wish to use a *PS_CUST_HOME* for your environment, you must perform the deployment using the DPK customizations, and specify the PS_CUST_HOME location.

  See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations," Preparing the Customization File for the PeopleSoft Homes.

Task 2-4: Deploying as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris

This section discusses:

- Preparing to Run the DPK Setup Script as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris
- Running the DPK Setup Prerequisite Step for Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris
- Running the DPK Setup Script as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris

Preparing to Run the DPK Setup Script as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris

Review the information in this section before deploying on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris. You have the option of downloading the DPK zip files and deploying the PeopleSoft environment as a non-root user.

To run the DPK setup script as a non-root user, fulfill the following requirements:

- You can use an existing non-root user account. It is not necessary to create a new user.
- The deployment supports only a single non-root user who deploys into a single *BASE_DIR*.
- The non-root user's home directory must be writable.
- The non-root user must be configured to use the Bash, Bourne, or Korn shell.
- The non-root user must have permission to read and execute the *DPK_INSTALL* folder and its contents, including the downloaded zip files, and *DPK_INSTALL/*setup.

  If the root user downloads the DPK zip files and saves them in *DPK_INSTALL*, the root user must ensure that the necessary permissions are granted to allow the non-root user to read and execute the files.
- Before a non-root user deploys the PeopleSoft environment, the root user must perform a prerequisite task.

After the non-root user completes the deployment:

- The non-root user owns all of the deployed environment, including *PS_HOME* and *PS_CFG_HOME*.
- The log files for the non-root deployment are saved in <*USER_HOME*>/psft_dpk_work/psft_dpk_setup_<*PID*>.log, where <*USER_HOME*> is the home directory for the user running the script, and <*PID*> is a process ID.

  For example, if the home directory for the root user is /root, when the root user runs the command `./psft-dpk-setup.sh --prereq`, the log file is /root/psft_dpk_work/psft_dpk_setup_1234.log.

  For example, if the home directory for the non-root user is /home/psft_user, when the non-root user runs `./psft-dpk-setup.sh --midtier`, or another deployment command, the log file is /home/psft_user/psft_dpk_work/psft_dpk_setup_5678.log.

The following table lists the high-level steps required to deploy a PeopleSoft environment by a non-root user, with a root user performing a prerequisite step. The table uses a mid-tier deployment as an example, but the process also applies to other deployments, such as deploying full-tier, or deploying PeopleSoft domains only, and so on.

Note. The commands in the table include line feeds to improve readability.

Step	Reference	Comment
1. Obtain DPKs and extract the first zip file.	Obtaining the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs	NA
2. Select and run one or more prerequisite commands.	Running the DPK Setup Prerequisite Step for Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris	**Important!** This step must be run by the root user. This action is required once for each host.

Step	Reference	Comment
3. Run the DPK setup script. For example, to deploy a mid-tier environment: `./psft-dpk-setup.sh --env_type midtier`	Running the DPK Setup Script as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris	For other deployment options, see the table in the section Using the DPK Setup Script Options.
4. If necessary, run the cleanup command. `./psft-dpk-setup.sh --cleanup`	"Using and Maintaining the PeopleSoft Environment," Using the DPK Setup Script to Remove the PeopleSoft Environment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as a Non-Root User	Run cleanup of the environment (optional).
5. Source the script to set environment variables: `source` *`BASE_DIR`*`/pt⇒ /psft_env.sh`	"Using and Maintaining the PeopleSoft Environment," Setting Environment Variables for the Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris	Before using PeopleSoft utilities and programs, source the script to set the required environment variables.

The following table lists the high-level steps required to deploy a PeopleSoft environment by a non-root user who uses the script option `--use_alternate_puppet_install`, with a root user performing a prerequisite step. The table uses a mid-tier deployment as an example, but the process also applies to other deployments, such as deploying full-tier, or deploying PeopleSoft domains only, and so on.

Note. The commands in the table include line feeds to improve readability.

Step	Reference	Comment
1. Obtain DPKs and extract the first zip file.	Obtaining the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs	NA
2. Run the prerequisite command. `./psft-dpk-setup.sh --prereq --create_⇒ central_orainv_only`	Running the DPK Setup Prerequisite Step for Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris	**Important!** This step must be run by the root user. This action is required once for each host.
3. Run the DPK setup script. For example, to deploy a mid-tier environment: `./psft-dpk-setup.sh --env_type midtier --use_alternate_puppet_⇒ install`	Running the DPK Setup Script as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris	For other deployment options, see the table in the section Using the DPK Setup Script Options.

Step	Reference	Comment

4. If necessary, run the cleanup command.
`./psft-dpk-setup.sh --cleanup`
`--use_alternate_puppet_⇒ install`
	"Using and Maintaining the PeopleSoft Environment," Using the DPK Setup Script to Remove the PeopleSoft Environment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as a Non-Root User	Run cleanup of the environment (optional).

5. Source the script to set environment variables: `source` *`BASE_DIR`*`/pt⇒ /psft_env.sh`	"Using and Maintaining the PeopleSoft Environment," Setting Environment Variables for the Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris	Before using PeopleSoft utilities and programs, source the script to set the required environment variables.

Task 2-4-1: Running the DPK Setup Prerequisite Step for Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris

This section discusses:

- Understanding the DPK Setup Prerequisite Step
- Running the DPK Setup Prerequisite Step to Install Puppet and Set the System Configuration on Linux
- Running the DPK Setup Prerequisite Step to Install Puppet

Understanding the DPK Setup Prerequisite Step

Before a non-root user can install the PeopleSoft environment, the root user should review this section and determine what prerequisite steps are needed.

Note. Beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.09 on AIX, 8.58.19 on Linux, and 8.58.20 on HP-UX or Solaris, the root user does not need to run the prerequisite step. The DPK setup script installs the Relocatable Puppet software in *BASE_DIR*/psft_puppet_agent by default.

This table lists the prerequisite commands:

Note. The commands include line feeds for readability.

Action	DPK Setup Script Command
Use this command only on Linux to install the Puppet software and update the system configuration on the host. This command installs the required Puppet software to the default location. It also sets system configuration variables such as kernel parameters, user and group ulimits.	`./psft-dpk-setup.sh --prereq --syscfg`
Install only the Puppet software. Use this command if you do not want to update the system configuration variables on your host.	`./psft-dpk-setup.sh --prereq`

Use these guidelines in deciding which command to use:

1. Determine whether the non-root user used the `--use_alternate_puppet_install` option for the deployment.

   Running the DPK setup script with `--use_alternate_puppet_install` installs the Puppet software under the *BASE_DIR*. In this case, the Puppet software is owned by the non-root user, and has the appropriate permissions for the *BASE_DIR* and all its subdirectories.

   See "Deploying the PeopleSoft Application Deployment Packages," Reviewing the DPK Setup Script Options.

2. If the non-root deployment did *not* use the `--use_alternate_puppet_install` option, the root user must run one of these prerequisite commands to install Puppet to the standard location:
   - `./psft-dpk-setup.sh --prereq`
   - `./psft-dpk-setup.sh --prereq --syscfg`
3. If the non-root deployment used the `--use_alternate_puppet_install` option, the root user does not have to run either of the prerequisite commands to install Puppet in step 2.
4. Whether or not the non-root deployment used the `--use_alternate_puppet_install` option, the root user should run the command to create a central inventory location for the Oracle 19c Database Server installation.

   ```
   ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --prereq --create_central_orainv_only
   ```

   See "Preparing for Installation," Reviewing the Oracle Central Inventory File Location and Permissions on Linux.

Running the DPK Setup Prerequisite Step to Install Puppet and Set the System Configuration on Linux

The option `--syscfg` is supported only for Linux. To run the DPK setup script prerequisite step to install Puppet and set the system configuration:

1. Open a terminal window as a user with root access, and extract the first zip file *(FILENAME*_1ofn.zip).

   The extraction creates the *DPK_INSTALL/*setup folder and other files.

   Note. It is a good idea to extract into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, *DPK_INSTALL.*

2. Change directory to *DPK_INSTALL/*setup.
3. Run the script as follows:

   ```
   ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --prereq --syscfg
   ```

4. After the script completes the Puppet software installation, log out and log in as a non-root user to deploy the PeopleSoft environment.

Running the DPK Setup Prerequisite Step to Install Puppet

To install Puppet without performing system configuration:

1. Open a terminal window as a user with root access, and extract the first zip file *(FILENAME*_1ofn.zip).

   The extraction creates the *DPK_INSTALL/*setup folder and other files.

   Note. It is a good idea to extract into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, *DPK_INSTALL.*

2. Change directory to *DPK_INSTALL*/setup.
3. Run the script as follows:

   ```
   ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --prereq
   ```

   The DPK setup log is written to the file <*ROOT_HOME*>/psft_dpk_work/psft_dpk_setup_<*PID*>.log, where <*ROOT_HOME*> is the home directory for the root user running the script, and <PID> is a process ID.
4. After the script completes the Puppet software installation, log out and log in as a non-root user to deploy the PeopleSoft environment.

Task 2-4-2: Running the DPK Setup Script as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris

After the root user completes the prerequisite, start a terminal session as a non-root user and run the DPK setup script with the appropriate options. The following items are specific to the process when run by a non-root user.

See Reviewing the DPK Setup Script Options.

- The DPK setup script includes a prompt for *PS_CFG_HOME*.

  The script validates whether the specified *PS_CFG_HOME* location is writable and has 10 GB free space.
- More than one non-root user can run the DPK setup script from the same *DPK_INSTALL*/setup.
- The non-root user must have permission to read and execute the *DPK_INSTALL* folder and its contents, including the downloaded zip files, and *DPK_INSTALL*/setup.

  If the root user downloads the DPK zip files and saves them in *DPK_INSTALL*, the root user must ensure that the necessary permissions are granted to allow the non-root user to read and execute the files.
- The DPK setup log is written to the file <*USER_HOME*>/psft_dpk_work/psft_dpk_setup_<*PID*>.log, where <*USER_HOME*> is the home directory for the user running the script, and <PID> is a process ID.

Task 2-5: Running the DPK Setup Script for Mid-Tier Deployment

This section discusses:

- Understanding the Mid-Tier Deployment
- Prerequisites
- Running with the Mid-Tier Option on Microsoft Windows
- Running with the Mid-Tier Option on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as the Root User
- Running with the Mid-Tier Option on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as a Non-Root User

Understanding the Mid-Tier Deployment

Use this procedure to install the PeopleSoft mid-tier components The deployment includes the following:

- *PS_HOME* installed to the default location under the DPK base directory
- Oracle Tuxedo installed to the default location under the DPK base directory
- Oracle WebLogic installed to the default location under the DPK base directory
- Oracle Database Client installed to the default location under the DPK base directory

Note. This is an Oracle 12c Database Client. The client can be used with the Oracle Database releases that are supported for the current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release. See the Certifications for PeopleSoft PeopleTools on My Oracle Support.

- Deployed and set up PeopleSoft domains. There is a single Application Server domain, single Process Scheduler domain, and single PIA domain.
- The Microsoft Windows DPKs include Microsoft Visual C++ Redistributable Packages for Visual Studio, which include required Microsoft C++ runtime libraries

Prerequisites

Before performing the mid-tier deployment, be sure that you have fulfilled the following requirements:

- You have downloaded all of the required PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs, and saved them in a location accessible to the Microsoft Windows, Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris host, referred to here as *DPK_INSTALL*.

  See Obtaining the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs.

  Note. After the DPK setup script extracts the downloaded zip files, it will delete the original zip files in *DPK_INSTALL.* If you want to save the original zip files, make a backup copy in a different folder.

- Remove any previous installations of the same version of Oracle Tuxedo.
- The user running the script *must have administrative permission* on Microsoft Windows.

  Note. Restarting services for the deployed PeopleSoft environment, such as those for Oracle Tuxedo, must be performed by the same user (with administrative permission) who carried out the installation.

- You must have *root access* to deploy the PeopleSoft DPKs on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.

  For information on non-root deployment, see the section Deploying as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.

- For deployment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, there is a writable directory available for the home for the users that own the PeopleSoft environment.

  If you install as a non-root user, the DPK setup script uses the home directory of the logged-in user as the default home directory for the user, and for the deployment log files. The non-root deployment includes a prompt for *PS_CFG_HOME*.

  If you do the entire installation as root, the DPK setup script creates default users, and includes a prompt for the home directory for these generated default users. The default is /home. In this case, *PS_CFG_HOME* is installed as a subdirectory of the psadm2 default user's home directory.

  See "Using and Maintaining the PeopleSoft Environment," Using the PeopleSoft Installation.

- There is enough space on the host for the PeopleSoft environment.

  See "Prerequisites," Reviewing Hardware Requirements on Microsoft Windows.

- For deployment with the AIX or HP-UX DPK, you have installed JDK required for the operating system.

  See Reviewing Software Requirements.

- You have installed database connectivity software for the database that you want to access on the machine on which you deploy the mid-tier components.

  See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations."

  When installing mid-tier components for environments on Microsoft SQL Server or DB2 z/OS, you must use

customizations to complete the installation. The delivered YAML files may not include the necessary RDBMS client information for your environment. Create a psft_customizations.yaml file, and include the correct client information.

See the chapter "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations" for information on setting up a mid-tier connection to Microsoft SQL Server, or DB2 z/OS databases.

- For all installations on DB2 z/OS, you must catalog the database before mid-tier deployment using DPKs. To catalog the database, see the documentation for DB2 z/OS for information.
- The mid-tier deployment constructs a tnsnames.ora entry for use by the PeopleSoft mid-tier components (that is, application server and Process Scheduler) to connect to a database using SERVICE_NAME. If you plan to connect to an Oracle database, ensure that your database can be accessed using SERVICE_NAME in the tnsnames.ora entry.
- You have the information for the database to connect to, including:
  - RDBMS platform
  - Database name, service name, host, and listening port
  - Unicode or non-Unicode database
  - For DB2 z/OS, database catalog information
- You have the information for the user IDs and passwords needed for the deployment, including the following:
  - PeopleSoft Connect ID and password
  - PeopleSoft operator ID (such as PS or VP1) and password
  - Application Server Domain Connection password (optional)
  - PTWEBSERVER web profile user password
  - Oracle WebLogic server administrator password
  - Integration Gateway administrator and password
  - Integration Gateway keystore password

When you run the DPK setup script, the prompts for some of the passwords do not explicitly specify the restrictions as they did in previous releases.

See E-DPK Password restrictions are not reflected in the DPK setup script prompts, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2639270.1.

Task 2-5-1: Running with the Mid-Tier Option on Microsoft Windows

To deploy mid-tier components on physical or virtual Microsoft Windows hosts:

1. Extract the first zip file, *FILENAME*_1of*n*.zip.

   It is recommended that you extract into the same directory where you downloaded the zip file, *DPK_INSTALL*. The extraction creates the *DPK_INSTALL/*setup folder and other files.
2. Open a command prompt window with Run as Administrator.
3. Change directory to the location where you extracted the first zip file, *DPK_INSTALL/*setup.
4. Run the script with the mid-tier option to set up the Application Server, PIA, and web server mid-tier components.

Note. If you see an error message similar to "The application has failed to start because its side-by-side configuration is incorrect," it indicates that your machine does not include the necessary Microsoft C++ runtime libraries. Go to the Microsoft Web site, locate the Microsoft Visual C++ redistributable package for your system, and install as directed.

- If you extracted the first zip file into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, use this command:

  ```
  psft-dpk-setup.bat --env_type midtier
  ```

- If you extracted the first zip file into a different directory, include the option `dpk_src_dir` to specify the location of the downloaded zip files, such as *DPK_INSTALL*.

  ```
  psft-dpk-setup.bat --dpk_src_dir DPK_INSTALL --env_type midtier
  ```

Note. Running the DPK setup script with the `--env_type midtier` option deploys all servers. If you want to deploy one of the servers (application server, Process Scheduler server, PIA, or application server and Process Scheduler server) see the command options in "Installing the PeopleSoft Homes," Reviewing the DPK Setup Script Options.

5. Wait while the script locates the valid PeopleSoft DPK zip files and extracts them.

   The system displays messages indicating the steps in the setup process. The success or failure of each step is indicated by [OK] or [FAILED].

   After the script completes the extraction, it deletes the original files. Make a backup copy if you want to keep them.

   See Obtaining the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs, for the filename syntax of the DPK zip files

   ```
   Starting the PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process:

   Validating User Arguments:                                [  OK  ]
   Validating PeopleSoft Supported Platform:                 [  OK  ]
   ```

6. Specify whether to install the Puppet software if necessary at the next prompt.

   The script verifies if Puppet software is installed in the default location specified by the DPKs. If not, answer *y* (yes) to install the Puppet software and *n* to abort the PeopleSoft environment setup process. The default action (if nothing is entered at the prompt) is to install the software.

   If there is any error during the Puppet software installation, the script aborts the setup process. Review the log file in *DPK_INSTALL/*setup.

   ```
   Verifying if Puppet Software is Installed:                [  OK  ]

   Puppet Software is not installed on the Host. If this Host is
   used to setup a PeopleSoft environment, Puppet Software should
   be Installed.

   Do you want to Install Puppet Software on this Host? [Y|n]: y

   Installing Puppet Software on the Host:                    [  OK  ]
   ```

   The script verifies the eYAML software.

   ```
   Verifying if eYAML Hiera Backend is Installed:            [  OK  ]
   ```

   The script verifies if the DPKs are available in *DPK_INSTALL*, and aborts with the message [FAILED] if they are not.

```
Checking if PeopleSoft DPKs are Present:                    [  OK  ]
```

7. At the following prompt, enter a location that is accessible to the host to be used as the PeopleSoft base directory.

   The base folder is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs as well as for deploying PeopleSoft components. The script creates the folder if it is not present.

   Note. When entering the path for the base folder, use forward slashes (/). For example, `C:/psft`. Enclose any names with special characters in double quotes. Do not use a name for the base folder that begins with a number.

   ```
   The base folder is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs. It is also
   used to deploy the PeopleSoft components. This folder should be
   accessible on the Windows VM, must have write permissions and should
   have enough free space.

   Enter the PeopleSoft Base Folder: C:/psft
   Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]:
   ```

   The script validates if there is enough free space available under the specified base directory for the PeopleSoft environment. The PeopleSoft environment setup is aborted if there is not enough free space.

   Note. A mid-tier setup of a PeopleSoft environment requires about 25 GB of disk space.

   ```
   Checking if the Base Folder has Enough Free Space:          [  OK  ]
   ```

   The script creates the following three sub-directories under the user provided base directory, *BASE_DIR*:

   - *BASE_DIR*\dpk

     The script uses this directory to extract the archives from the PeopleSoft DPKs, and contains the Puppet YAML files for the deployment.

   - *BASE_DIR*\pt

     The script uses this directory to deploy PeopleSoft components.

   - *BASE_DIR*\db

     This directory is not used for a mid-tier deployment.

8. Review the status messages as the script validates the files found in *DPK_INSTALL* and extracts the DPK archives.

   The script carries out validations for the mid-tier deployment. If any of the validations fail, the PeopleSoft environment setup is aborted.

   Note. The messages have been truncated for brevity.

   ```
   Validating the PeopleSoft DPKs in the Windows VM:
   [...]
   Extracting the PeopleSoft DPK Archives in the Windows VM:
   [...]
   ```

9. Review the status messages as the script sets up the Puppet file system.

   The script sets up Puppet on the host or VM. It then copies the PeopleSoft Puppet modules to the standard location under the base folder (*BASE_DIR*\dpk) and updates the YAML files to reflect the type of PeopleSoft environment setup.

```
Setting up Puppet on the Windows VM:
Generating eYAML Hiera Backend Encryption Keys:              [  OK  ]
Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files in the Windows VM:      [  OK  ]
Updating the Role in Puppet Site File for the Windows VM:    [  OK  ]
```

10. Specify the information for the database that you want to connect to.
    a. For the database platform, enter ORACLE, MSSQL (Microsoft SQL Server), or DB2ODBC (DB2 for z/OS).

       ```
       Enter the PeopleSoft database platform [ORACLE]:
       ```

    b. Enter *y* (yes) if the database you are connecting to is a Unicode database, or n (no) for a non-Unicode database.

       ```
       Is the PeopleSoft database unicode? [Y|n]:
       ```

    c. Enter the database name.

       ```
       Enter a new PeopleSoft database name. Ensure that the database
       name start with a letter and contains only uppercase letters and
       numbers and is no more than 8 characters in length [HCM92]:
       ```

    d. Enter the database service name.

       Note. The service name is required for Oracle RDBMS.

       For the service name, enter the full name, including the domain, if the database was installed with the domain. Use forward slashes if necessary. If the service name includes non-alphanumeric characters such as periods, enclose the name in double quotes. For example, "HCM.92.example.com". Do not enter an IP address.

       ```
       Enter the PeopleSoft database service name [HCM92]:
       ```

    e. Enter the name of the host where the database is installed, and the port number:

       Use forward slashes if necessary. If the host name includes non-alphanumeric characters such as periods, enclose the name in double quotes. For example, "host.example.com". Do not enter an IP address.

       ```
       Enter the PeopleSoft database host name:
       Enter the PeopleSoft database port [1521]: 1521
       ```

11. Enter the PeopleSoft Connect ID at the following prompt:

    The default is people.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people]:
    ```

12. Enter a password for the PeopleSoft Connect ID, and enter again on the next line, at the following prompt.

    See E-DPK Password restrictions are not reflected in the DPK setup script prompts, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2639270.1.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people] password.
    Ensure that the password meets the length and complexity requirements
    for your database platform:
    Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Connect ID password:
    ```

13. Enter the PeopleSoft Operator ID (user ID) at the next prompt:

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [PS]:
    ```

14. Enter the password twice for the PeopleSoft operator ID, such as PS or VP1.

```
Enter a new PeopleSoft database Operator ID [PS] password.
Ensure that the password is between 1 and 32 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Operator ID password:
```

15. Enter the Application Server Domain Connection password, following the guidelines in the prompt.

    The window does not display masking characters as you type. There is no default password.

    Note. This is an optional password. If no password is entered, the connection between Web Server and Application Server will not be password protected.

```
[Optional] Enter a new Application Server Domain connection password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length:
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the Application Server Domain connection password:
```

16. Enter the password for the PTWEBSERVER web profile user.

```
Enter a new PeopleSoft Web Profile user [PTWEBSERVER] password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 32 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Web Profile user password:
```

17. Enter the Oracle WebLogic Server Admin password, following the guidelines in the prompt.

    The default Oracle WebLogic server administrator is system. The window does not display masking characters as you type. There is no default password.

```
Enter a new WebLogic Server Admin user [system] password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length
with at least one lowercase letter and one uppercase letter.
It must also contain one number or
one of these special characters !@#$%^& :

Re-Enter the WebLogic Server Admin user password:
```

    Enter the Integration Gateway user ID and password at the following prompt.

    The default user ID is administrator.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway user [administrator]:
Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway user [administrator] password.
Ensure the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length:
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway user password:
```

18. Enter the Integration Gateway keystore password.

    You see this prompt beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.04.

    See the information on using the integrationGateway.properties file and configuring security in the Integration Broker product documentation.

    See *PeopleTools: Integration Broker Administration,* "Configuring Security and General Properties."

```
Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway Keystore password. Ensure
the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
```

```
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway Keystore password:
```

19. If you want to change any of the answers to the previous questions, enter *n* (no) at the following prompt, or enter *y* (yes) to continue:

    ```
    Are you happy with your answers? [y|n]:
    ```

20. Review the status messages as the script updates the Puppet YAML files with the user input.

    ```
    Encrypting the Passwords in the User Data:                  [  OK  ]
    Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files with User Data:        [  OK  ]
    ```

21. If you want to continue running the initialization script using the default configuration, answer *y* (yes) to the following prompt, and continue with the next step.

    Note. If you select the default initialization process, the PeopleSoft environment is created with one Application Server domain, one Process Scheduler domain, and one PIA domain.

    If you want to customize the PeopleSoft environment, answer *n* (no) to stop the script. You must use customizations to complete the mid-tier deployment.

    ```
    The bootstrap script is ready to deploy and configure the PeopleSoft
    environment using the default configuration defined in the Puppet
    Hiera YAML files. You can proceed by answering 'y' at the following
    prompt. And, if you want to customize the environment by overriding
    the default configuration, you can answer 'n'. If you answer 'n', you
    should follow the instructions in the PeopleSoft Installation Guide
    for creating the customization Hiera YAML file and running the Puppet
    'apply' command directly to continue with the setup of the PeopleSoft
    environment.

    Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]:
    ```

22. Review the status messages as the script runs Puppet profiles to set up the PeopleSoft environment.

    A message of [OK] indicates that the profile has been applied successfully while a message [FAILED] indicates that the profile application failed.

    The script stops and exits the first time a profile application fails, and displays an error message. This example shows the error message after the first step failed:

    ```
    Starting the Default Initialization of PeopleSoft Environment:

    Deploying PeopleTools Components:                           [FAILED]

    The initialization of PeopleSoft environment setup failed. Check the
    log file [C:\DPK_INSTALL\setup\psft_dpk_setup.log] for the errors.
    After correcting the errors, run the following commands to continue
    with the setup of PeopleSoft environment.

    Start a cmd window as Administrator and run C:\psft\psft_puppet_⇒
    apply.cmd

    Exiting the PeopleSoft environment setup process.
    ```

    Upon successful completion, the DPK setup script displays the following message:

    ```
    Starting the Default Initialization of PeopleSoft Environment:
    ```

```
Deploying PeopleTools Components:                          [  OK  ]
Setting up PeopleSoft OS Users Environment:                [  OK  ]
Setting up PeopleSoft Application Server Domain:           [  OK  ]
Setting up PeopleSoft Process Scheduler Domain:            [  OK  ]
Setting up PeopleSoft PIA Domain:                          [  OK  ]
Changing the Passwords for the Environment:                [  OK  ]
Configuring Pre-Boot PeopleSoft Environment:               [  OK  ]
Starting PeopleSoft Domains:                               [  OK  ]
Configuring Post-Boot PeopleSoft Environment:              [  OK  ]
Setting up Source Details for PeopleTools Client:          [  OK  ]
The PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process Ended.
```

The complete setup log is written to the file psft_dpk_setup.log in the same location as the DPK setup script.

Task 2-5-2: Running with the Mid-Tier Option on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as the Root User

If you are installing the PeopleSoft environment as a non-root user, see the following section, Running with the Mid-Tier Option on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as a Non-Root User.

To deploy mid-tier components on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris hosts as the root user:

1. Open a terminal window and change directory to *DPK_INSTALL/*setup.
2. Run the script as follows:
   - If you extracted the first zip file into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, use this command:

     ```
     ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --env_type midtier
     ```

   - If you extracted the first zip file into a different directory, include the option `dpk_src_dir` to specify the location of the downloaded zip files, such as *DPK_INSTALL*.

     ```
     ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --dpk_src_dir DPK_INSTALL --env_type midtier
     ```

Note. Running the DPK setup script with the `--env_type midtier` option deploys all servers. If you want to deploy one of the servers (application server, Process Scheduler server, PIA, or application server and Process Scheduler server) see the command options in the section Reviewing the DPK Setup Script Options.

---

3. Wait while the script locates the valid PeopleSoft DPK zip files and extracts them.

   The system displays messages indicating the steps in the setup process. The success or failure of each step is indicated by [OK] or [FAILED].

   After the script completes the extraction, it deletes the original files. Make a backup copy if you need to keep them.

   See Obtaining the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs, for the filename syntax of the DPK zip files.

   ```
   Starting the PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process:

   Validating User Arguments:                              [  OK  ]
   Validating PeopleSoft Supported Platform:               [  OK  ]
   ```

4. Specify whether to install the Puppet software if necessary at the next prompt.

   The script verifies if Puppet software is installed in the default location specified by the DPKs. If not, answer *y* (yes) to install the Puppet software and *n* to abort the PeopleSoft environment setup process. The default action (if nothing is entered at the prompt) is to install the software.

If there is any error during the Puppet software installation, the script aborts the setup process. Review the log file in *DPK_INSTALL/*setup.

```
Verifying if Puppet Software is Installed:                  [  OK  ]

Puppet Software is not installed on the Host. If this Host is
used to setup a PeopleSoft environment, Puppet Software should
be Installed.

Do you want to Install Puppet Software on this Host? [Y|n]:

Installing Puppet Software on the Host:                     [  OK  ]
```

The script verifies the eYAML software.

```
Verifying if eYAML Hiera Backend is Installed:              [  OK  ]
```

The script verifies if the DPKs are available in *DPK_INSTALL*, and aborts with the message [FAILED] if they are not.

```
Checking if PeopleSoft DPKs are Present:                    [  OK  ]
```

5. At the following prompt, enter a location that is accessible to the host to be used as the PeopleSoft base directory.

   The base directory is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs as well as for deploying PeopleSoft components. The directory /cs1/psft is used in this example:

Note. When entering the path for the base directory, use forward slashes (/). For example, `/cs1/psft`. If the name includes any non-alphanumeric characters such as periods, enclose the name in double quotes. Do not use a name for the base directory that begins with a number. Do not end the base directory name with a forward slash (for example, do not enter /ds1/psft/).

```
The base directory is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs. It is also
used to deploy the PeopleSoft components. This directory should be
accessible on the Linux VM, must have write permissions and should
have enough free space.

Enter the PeopleSoft Base Directory: /cs1/psft
Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]:
```

The script validates if there is enough free space available under the specified base directory for the PeopleSoft environment. The PeopleSoft environment setup is aborted if there is not enough free space.

Note. A mid-tier setup of a PeopleSoft environment takes about 25 GB of disk space.

```
Checking if the  Base Directory has Enough Free Space:   [  OK  ]
```

The script creates the following three sub-directories under the user provided base directory, *BASE_DIR*:

- *BASE_DIR/*dpk

  The script uses this directory to extract the archives from the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs, and contains the Puppet YAML files for the deployment.

- *BASE_DIR/*pt

  The script uses this directory to deploy PeopleSoft components.

- *BASE_DIR/*db

This directory is not used for this deployment.

6. Specify a writable directory for the user home directory at the following prompt.

   You see this prompt beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.04.

   The PeopleSoft environment setup using DPKs creates local users on the host. These users deploy the PeopleSoft components and own the PeopleSoft runtime domains. Enter a new location to be used for creating the home directories for these local users, or specify the default home directory, /home.

   ```
   Enter a directory on the Linux VM that is writable [/home]: /ds1
   Are you happy with your answer? [y|n|q]:
   ```

   If the script finds that the location you enter (either a new location or the default) is not writable, it exits with the following message.

   ```
   The User does not have write permission to create the user's home
   directory under [<user input>] on the Linux VM.
   Exiting the PeopleSoft environment setup process.
   ```

7. Review the status messages as the script validates the files found in *DPK_INSTALL* and extracts the DPK archives.

   The script carries out validations for the mid-tier deployment. If any of the validations fail, the PeopleSoft environment setup is aborted.

   Note. The messages have been truncated for brevity.

   ```
   Validating the PeopleSoft DPKs in the Linux VM:
   [...]
   Extracting the PeopleSoft DPK Archives in the Linux VM:
   [...]
   ```

8. Review the status messages as the script sets up the Puppet file system.

   The script sets up Puppet on the host or VM. As part of this setup, if the eYAML files are installed, it will generate the encryption keys. It then copies the PeopleSoft Puppet modules to the standard location (*BASE_DIR*/dpk) and updates the YAML files to reflect the type of PeopleSoft environment setup.

   ```
   Setting up Puppet on the Linux VM:
   Generating eYAML Hiera Backend Encryption Keys:              [  OK  ]
   Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files in the Linux VM:        [  OK  ]
   Updating the Role in Puppet Site File for the Linux VM:      [  OK  ]
   ```

9. Specify the information for the database that you want to connect to.

   a. For the database platform, enter ORACLE or DB2ODBC (DB2 for z/OS).

      ```
      Enter the PeopleSoft database platform [ORACLE]:
      ```

   b. Enter *y* (yes) if the database you are connecting to is a Unicode database, or *n* (no) for a non-Unicode database.

      ```
      Is the PeopleSoft database unicode? [Y|n]:
      ```

   c. Enter the database name.

      ```
      Enter the PeopleSoft database name:
      ```

   d. Enter the database service name.

Note. The service name is required for Oracle RDBMS.

For the service name, enter the full name, including the domain, if the database was installed with the domain. Use forward slashes if necessary. If the service name includes non-alphanumeric characters such as periods, enclose the name in double quotes. For example, "HCM.92.example.com". Do not enter an IP address.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database service name [HCM92]:
```

e. Enter the name of the host where the database is installed, and the port number:

Use forward slashes if necessary. If the host name includes non-alphanumeric characters such as periods, enclose the name in double quotes. For example, "host.example.com". Do not enter an IP address.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database host name:
Enter the PeopleSoft database port [1521]: 1521
```

10. Enter the PeopleSoft Connect ID at the following prompt:

The default is people.

```
Enter a new PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people]:
```

11. Enter a password for the PeopleSoft Connect ID, and enter again on the next line, at the following prompt.

See E-DPK - Password restrictions are not reflected in the DPK setup script prompts, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2639270.1

```
Enter a new PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people] password.
Ensure that the password meets the length and complexity requirements
for your database platform:
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Connect ID password:
```

12. Enter the PeopleSoft Operator ID (user ID):

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [PS]:
```

13. Enter the password twice for the PeopleSoft operator ID, such as PS or VP1.

```
Enter a new PeopleSoft database Operator ID [PS] password.
Ensure that the password is between 1 and 32 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Operator ID password:
```

14. Enter the Application Server Domain Connection password, following the guidelines in the prompt.

The window does not display masking characters as you type. There is no default password.

Note. This is an optional password. If no password is entered, the connection between Web Server and Application Server will not be password protected.

```
[Optional] Enter a new Application Server Domain connection password.
Ensure the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the Application Server Domain connection password.
```

15. Enter the password twice for the PTWEBSERVER web profile user.

```
Enter a new PeopleSoft Web Profile user [PTWEBSERVER] password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 32 characters in length.
```

```
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Web Profile user password:
```

16. Enter the Oracle WebLogic Server Admin password, following the guidelines in the prompt.

    The default Oracle WebLogic server administrator is system. The window does not display masking characters as you type. There is no default password.

```
Enter a new WebLogic Server Admin user [system] password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length
with  at least one lowercase letter and one uppercase letter.
It must also contain one number or
one of these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the WebLogic Server Admin user password:
```

17. Enter the Integration Gateway user ID and password.

    The default user ID is administrator.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway user [administrator]:
Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway user [administrator] password.
Ensure the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway user password:
```

18. Enter the Integration Gateway keystore password.

    You see this prompt beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.04.

    See the information on using the integrationGateway.properties file and configuring security in the Integration Broker product documentation.

    See *PeopleTools: Integration Broker Administration,* "Configuring Security and General Properties."

```
Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway Keystore password. Ensure
the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway Keystore password:
```

19. If you want to change any of the answers to the previous questions, enter *n* (no) at the following prompt, or enter *y* (yes) to continue:

```
Are you happy with your answers? [y|n]:
```

20. Review the status messages as the script updates the Puppet YAML files with the user input.

    If eYAML files are installed, the passwords are encrypted and updated in the YAML file.

```
Encrypting the Passwords in the User Data:                [  OK  ]
Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files with User Data:      [  OK  ]
```

21. If you want to continue running the initialization script using the default configuration, answer *y* (yes) to the following prompt, and continue with the next step.

    Note. If you select the default initialization process, the PeopleSoft environment is created with one Application Server domain, one Process Scheduler domain, and one PIA domain.

    If you want to customize the PeopleSoft environment, answer *n* (no) to stop the script. You must use customizations to complete the mid-tier deployment.

    See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations."

```
The bootstrap script is ready to deploy and configure the PeopleSoft
environment using the default configuration defined in the Puppet
Hiera YAML files. You can proceed by answering 'y' at the following
prompt. And, if you want to customize the environment by overriding
the default configuration, you can answer 'n'. If you answer 'n', you
should follow the instructions in the PeopleSoft Installation Guide
for creating the customization Hiera YAML file and running the Puppet
'apply' command directly to continue with the setup of the PeopleSoft
environment.

Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]:
```

22. Review the status messages as the script runs Puppet profiles to set up the PeopleSoft environment.

    A message of [OK] indicates that the profile has been applied successfully while a message [FAILED] indicates that the profile application failed.

    The script stops and exits the first time a profile application fails, and displays an error message. This example shows the error message after the first step failed:

```
Starting the Default Initialization of PeopleSoft Environment:

Setting Up System Settings:                              [FAILED]

The initialization of PeopleSoft environment setup failed. Check the
log file [/cs1/DPK_INSTALL/setup/psft_dpk_setup.log] for the errors.
After correcting the errors, run the following commands to continue
with the setup of PeopleSoft environment.

From the shell, run /cs1/psft/psft_puppet_apply.sh

Exiting the PeopleSoft environment setup process.
The PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process Ended.
```

    See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations."

    Upon successful completion, the DPK setup script displays the following message:

```
Starting the Default Initialization of PeopleSoft Environment:
Setting Up System Settings:                                [  OK  ]
Deploying PeopleTools Components:                          [  OK  ]
DSetting up PeopleSoft OS Users Environment:               [  OK  ]
Setting up PeopleSoft Application Server Domain:           [  OK  ]
Setting up PeopleSoft Process Scheduler Domain:            [  OK  ]
Setting up PeopleSoft PIA Domain:                          [  OK  ]
Changing the Passwords for the Environment:                [  OK  ]
Configuring Pre-Boot PeopleSoft Environment:               [  OK  ]
Starting PeopleSoft Domains:                               [  OK  ]
Configuring Post-Boot PeopleSoft Environment:              [  OK  ]
Setting up Source Details for PeopleTools Client:          [  OK  ]
The PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process Ended.
```

The complete setup log is written to the file psft_dpk_setup.log in the same location as the DPK setup script.

Task 2-5-3: Running with the Mid-Tier Option on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as a Non-Root User

If you are installing the PeopleSoft environment as a non-root user, ensure that you fulfill the prerequisites in the section Deploying as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.

To deploy mid-tier components on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris hosts as a non-root user

1. Open a terminal window and change directory to *DPK_INSTALL*/setup.
2. Run the script as follows:
   - If you extracted the first zip file into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, use this command:

     ```
     ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --env_type midtier
     ```

   - If you extracted the first zip file into a different directory, include the option `dpk_src_dir` to specify the location of the downloaded zip files, such as *DPK_INSTALL*.

     ```
     ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --dpk_src_dir DPK_INSTALL --env_type midtier
     ```

Note. Running the DPK setup script with the `--env_type midtier` option deploys all servers. If you want to deploy one of the servers (Application Server, Process Scheduler server, PIA, or application server and Process Scheduler server) see the command options in the section Reviewing the DPK Setup Script Options.

---

3. Answer y (yes) at the following prompt:

   ```
   You are running DPK setup without root/administrator access.
   This is fine as long as the system administrator has performed
   all necessary tasks and all prerequisites have been met.
   Please see the documentation to determine the prerequite tasks
   that need to be performed to successfully run DPK set up
   without root/administrator privilege.

   Would you like to proceed with the setup as a non-root user? [y/n]: y
   ```

4. Wait while the script verifies that the necessary PeopleSoft DPK zip files are available and that the Puppet software is installed.

   The system displays messages indicating the steps in the setup process. The success or failure of each step is indicated by [OK] or [FAILED].

   ```
   Validating User Arguments:                          [  OK  ]
   Validating PeopleSoft Supported Platform:           [  OK  ]

   Verifying if Puppet Software is installed:          [  OK  ]
   Verifying if eYAML Hiera Backend is Installed:      [  OK  ]

   Checking if PeopleSoft DPKs are Present:            [  OK  ]
   ```

5. At the following prompt, enter a location that is accessible to the host to be used as the PeopleSoft base directory.

   The base directory is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs as well as for deploying PeopleSoft components. The directory /cs1/psft is used in this example:

Note. When entering the path for the base directory, use forward slashes (/). For example, `/cs1/psft`. If the name includes any non-alphanumeric characters such as periods, enclose the name in double quotes. Do not use a name for the base directory that begins with a number. Do not end the base directory name with a forward slash (for example, do not enter /ds1/psft/).

```
The base directory is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs. It is also
used to deploy the PeopleSoft components. This directory should be
accessible on the Linux VM, must have write permissions and should
have enough free space.

Enter the PeopleSoft Base Directory: /cs1/psft
Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]:
```

The script validates if there is enough free space available under the specified base directory for the PeopleSoft environment. The PeopleSoft environment setup is aborted if there is not enough free space.

Note. A mid-tier setup of a PeopleSoft environment takes about 25 GB of disk space.

```
Checking if the  Base Directory has Enough Free Space:   [  OK  ]
```

The script creates the following three sub-directories under the user provided base directory, *BASE_DIR*:

- *BASE_DIR*/dpk

  The script uses this directory to extract the archives from the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs, and contains the Puppet YAML files for the deployment.

- *BASE_DIR*/pt

  The script uses this directory to deploy PeopleSoft components.

- *BASE_DIR*/db

  This directory is not used for this deployment.

6. Enter a writable directory with at least 10 GB available space for *PS_CFG_HOME*.

   The default is *USER_HOME*/psft/pt/8.58, where *USER_HOME* is the home directory for the logged-in user. The *PS_CFG_HOME* directory holds the configuration and log files for the PeopleSoft Application Server, Process Scheduler, and PIA domains.

   ```
   Enter a writable ps_config_home directory for PeopleSoft domains
   with at least 10.0GB space [/home/psftuser/psft/pt/8.58]:
   Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]: y
   ```

7. Review the status messages as the script validates the files found in *DPK_INSTALL* and extracts the DPK archives.

   The script carries out validations for the mid-tier deployment. If any of the validations fail, the PeopleSoft environment setup is aborted.

   Note. The messages have been truncated for brevity.

   ```
   Validating the PeopleSoft DPKs in the Linux VM:
   [...]
   Extracting the PeopleSoft DPK Archives in the Linux VM:
   [...]
   ```

8. Review the status messages as the script sets up the Puppet file system.

The script sets up Puppet on the host or VM. As part of this setup, if the eYAML files are installed, it will generate the encryption keys. It then copies the PeopleSoft Puppet modules to the standard location *(BASE_DIR*/dpk) and updates the YAML files to reflect the type of PeopleSoft environment setup.

```
Setting up Puppet on the Linux VM:
Generating eYAML Hiera Backend Encryption Keys:              [  OK  ]
Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files in the Linux VM:        [  OK  ]
Updating the Role in Puppet Site File for the Linux VM:      [  OK  ]
```

9. Specify the information for the database that you want to connect to.
   a. For the database platform, enter ORACLE or DB2ODBC (DB2 for z/OS).

      ```
      Enter the PeopleSoft database platform [ORACLE]:
      ```

   b. Enter *y* (yes) if the database you are connecting to is a Unicode database, or *n* (no) for a non-Unicode database.

      ```
      Is the PeopleSoft database unicode? [Y|n]:
      ```

   c. Enter the database name.

      ```
      Enter the PeopleSoft database name:
      ```

   d. Enter the database service name.

      Note. The service name is required for Oracle RDBMS.

      For the service name, enter the full name, including the domain, if the database was installed with the domain. Use forward slashes if necessary. If the service name includes non-alphanumeric characters such as periods, enclose the name in double quotes. For example, "HCM.92.example.com". Do not enter an IP address.

      ```
      Enter the PeopleSoft database service name [HCM92]:
      ```

   e. Enter the name of the host where the database is installed, and the port number:

      Use forward slashes if necessary. If the host name includes non-alphanumeric characters such as periods, enclose the name in double quotes. For example, "host.example.com". Do not enter an IP address.

      ```
      Enter the PeopleSoft database host name:
      Enter the PeopleSoft database port [1521]: 1521
      ```

10. Enter the PeopleSoft Connect ID at the following prompt:

    The default is people.

    ```
    Enter a new PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people]:
    ```

11. Enter a password for the PeopleSoft Connect ID, and enter again on the next line, at the following prompt.

    See E-DPK Password restrictions are not reflected in the DPK setup script prompts, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2639270.1.

    ```
    Enter a new PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people] password.
    Ensure that the password meets the length and complexity
    requirements for your database platform :
    Re-Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID password:
    ```

12. Enter the PeopleSoft Operator ID (user ID):

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [PS]:
    ```

13. Enter the password twice for the PeopleSoft operator ID, such as PS or VP1.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [PS] password.
Ensure that the password is between 1 and 32 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID password:
```

14. Enter the Application Server Domain Connection password, following the guidelines in the prompt.

    The window does not display masking characters as you type. There is no default password.

    Note. This is an optional password. If no password is entered, the connection between Web Server and Application Server will not be password protected.

```
[Optional] Enter a new Application Server Domain connection password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length:
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the Application Server Domain connection password.
```

15. Enter the password twice for the PTWEBSERVER web profile user.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft Web Profile user [PTWEBSERVER] password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 32 characters in length:
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Web Profile user password:
```

16. Enter the Oracle WebLogic Server Admin password, following the guidelines in the prompt.

    The default Oracle WebLogic server administrator is system. The window does not display masking characters as you type. There is no default password.

```
Enter a new WebLogic Server Admin user [system] password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length
with at least one lowercase letter and one uppercase letter.
It must also contain one number or
one of these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the WebLogic Server Admin user password:
```

17. Enter the Integration Gateway user ID and password.

    The default user ID is administrator.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway user [administrator]:
Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway user [administrator] password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length:
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway user password:
```

18. Enter the Integration Gateway keystore password.

    You see this prompt beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.04.

    See the information on using the integrationGateway.properties file and configuring security in the Integration Broker product documentation.

    See *PeopleTools: Integration Broker Administration,* "Configuring Security and General Properties."

```
Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway Keystore password. Ensure
the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway Keystore password:
```

19. If you want to change any of the answers to the previous questions, enter *n* (no) at the following prompt, or enter *y* (yes) to continue:

```
Are you happy with your answers? [y|n]:
```

20. Review the status messages as the script updates the Puppet YAML files with the user input.

    If eYAML files are installed, the passwords are encrypted and updated in the YAML file.

```
Encrypting the Passwords in the User Data:                [  OK  ]
Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files with User Data:      [  OK  ]
```

21. If you want to continue running the initialization script using the default configuration, answer *y* (yes) to the following prompt, and continue with the next step.

    Note. If you select the default initialization process, the PeopleSoft environment is created with one Application Server domain, one Process Scheduler domain, and one PIA domain.

    If you want to customize the PeopleSoft environment, answer *n* (no) to stop the script. You must use customizations to complete the mid-tier deployment.

    See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations."

```
The bootstrap script is ready to deploy and configure the PeopleSoft
environment using the default configuration defined in the Puppet
Hiera YAML files. You can proceed by answering 'y' at the following
prompt. And, if you want to customize the environment by overriding
the default configuration, you can answer 'n'. If you answer 'n', you
should follow the instructions in the PeopleSoft Installation Guide
for creating the customization Hiera YAML file and running the Puppet
'apply' command directly to continue with the setup of the PeopleSoft
environment.

Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]:
```

22. Review the status messages as the script runs Puppet profiles to set up the PeopleSoft environment.

    A message of [OK] indicates that the profile has been applied successfully while a message [FAILED] indicates that the profile application failed.

    The script stops and exits the first time a profile application fails, and displays an error message. This example shows the error message after the first step failed:

```
Starting the Default Initialization of PeopleSoft Environment:

Setting Up System Settings:                              [FAILED]

The initialization of PeopleSoft environment setup failed. Check the
log file [/cs1/DPK_INSTALL/setup/psft_dpk_setup.log] for the errors.
After correcting the errors, run the following script to continue
with the setup of PeopleSoft environment.


From the shell, run /cs1/psft/psft_puppet_apply.sh

Exiting the PeopleSoft environment setup process.
The PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process Ended.
```

    See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations."

Upon successful completion, the DPK setup script displays the following message:

```
Starting the Default Initialization of PeopleSoft Environment:
Setting Up System Settings:                                  [  OK  ]
Deploying PeopleTools Components:                            [  OK  ]
DSetting up PeopleSoft OS Users Environment:                 [  OK  ]
Setting up PeopleSoft Application Server Domain:             [  OK  ]
Setting up PeopleSoft Process Scheduler Domain:              [  OK  ]
Setting up PeopleSoft PIA Domain:                            [  OK  ]
Changing the Passwords for the Environment:                  [  OK  ]
Configuring Pre-Boot PeopleSoft Environment:                 [  OK  ]
Starting PeopleSoft Domains:                                 [  OK  ]
Configuring Post-Boot PeopleSoft Environment:                [  OK  ]
Setting up Source Details for PeopleTools Client:            [  OK  ]
The PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process Ended.
```

The setup.log is written to the file <*USER_HOME*>/psft_dpk_work/psft_dpk_setup_<*PID*>.log, where <*USER_HOME*> is the home directory for the user running the script, and <PID> is a process ID

Task 2-6: Running the DPK Setup Script to Install Mid-Tier Software Only

This section discusses:

- Understanding the Mid-Tier Software Installation
- Running the DPK Setup Script to Install Mid-Tier Software on Microsoft Windows
- Running the DPK Setup Script as the Root User to Install Mid-tier Software on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris
- Running the DPK Setup Script as a Non-Root User to Install Mid-Tier Software on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris

Understanding the Mid-Tier Software Installation

Use this option to install *PS_HOME* and the software required for mid-tier deployment, without deploying the PeopleSoft domains. The deployment includes the following:

- *PS_HOME* installed to the default location under the DPK base directory
- Oracle Tuxedo installed to the default location under the base directory
- Oracle WebLogic installed to the default location under the base directory
- Oracle Database Client installed to the default location under the base directory

  Note. This is an Oracle 12c Database Client. The client can be used with the Oracle Database releases that are supported for the current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release. See the Certifications for PeopleSoft PeopleTools on My Oracle Support.

- The Microsoft Windows DPKs include Microsoft Visual C++ Redistributable Packages for Visual Studio, which include required Microsoft C++ runtime libraries

The script requires the following information:

- Database platform type

- Unicode or non-Unicode

In addition, ensure that you fulfill the items in the Prerequisites section in the task Running the DPK Setup Script for Mid-Tier Deployment.

See Also

"Using and Maintaining the PeopleSoft Environment," Using the PeopleSoft Installation

Task 2-6-1: Running the DPK Setup Script to Install Mid-Tier Software on Microsoft Windows

This procedure assumes you have obtained the four PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPK zip files and saved them in *DPK_INSTALL.*

Note. Some of the informational script messages have been omitted for brevity.

1. Extract the first zip file *(FILENAME*_1of*n*.zip).

   Note. It is a good idea to extract into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, *DPK_INSTALL.*

   The extraction creates the *DPK_INSTALL/*setup folder and other files.
2. Open a command prompt with Run as Administrator.
3. Change directory to *DPK_INSTALL/*setup.
4. Run the script as follows:

   Note. On Microsoft Windows, if you see an error message similar to "The application has failed to start because its side-by-side configuration is incorrect," it indicates that your machine does not include the necessary Microsoft C++ runtime libraries. Go to the Microsoft Web site, locate the Microsoft Visual C++ redistributable package for your system, and install as directed.

   - If you extracted the first zip file into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, use this command:

     ```
     psft-dpk-setup.bat --env_type midtier --deploy_only
     ```

   - If you extracted the first zip file into a different directory, include the option `dpk_src_dir` to specify the location of the downloaded zip files, such as *DPK_INSTALL*, as follows:

     ```
     psft-dpk-setup.bat --dpk_src_dir DPK_INSTALL --env_type midtier ⇒
     --deploy_only
     ```
5. Specify whether to install the Puppet software if necessary at the next prompt.

   The script verifies if Puppet software is installed in the default location specified by the DPKs. If not, answer *y* (yes) to install the Puppet software and *n* to abort the PeopleSoft environment setup process. The default action (if nothing is entered at the prompt) is to install the software.

   If there is any error during the Puppet software installation, the script aborts the setup process.

   ```
   Verifying if Puppet Software is Installed:

   Puppet Software is not installed on the Windows Host. If PeopleSoft
   environment needs to be setup on this Host, Puppet software
   ```

```
should be Installed.

Do you want to proceed with the Puppet Installation? [Y|n]: y

Installing Puppet Software on the Windows Host:              [  OK  ]
```

6. At the following prompt, enter a location that is accessible to the host to be used as the PeopleSoft base directory, referred to here as *BASE_DIR*.

   The base directory is used to extract the DPKs as well as for deploying PeopleSoft components. The script creates the base directory if it does not exist.

   Use forward slashes only (/) when specifying the base directory; for example, C:/psft. Do not use a base directory name that begins with a number.

   ```
   The base folder is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs. It is also
   used to deploy the PeopleSoft components. This folder should be
   accessible on the Windows VM, must have write permissions and should
   have enough free space

   Enter the PeopleSoft Base Folder:
   Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]:
   ```

   The script validates if there is enough free space available under the specified base directory for the PeopleSoft environment. The PeopleSoft environment setup is aborted if there is not enough free space.

   Note. A mid-tier setup of a PeopleSoft environment requires about 25 GB of disk space.

   ```
   Checking if the Base Folder has Enough Free Space:          [  OK  ]
   ```

7. Specify the type of database platform.

   Enter MSSQL for Microsoft SQL Server, DB2ODBC for DB2 for z/OS, or ORACLE.

   ```
   Enter the PeopleSoft database platform [ORACLE]:
   ```

8. Specify whether you want support for a Unicode database.

   ```
   Is the PeopleSoft database unicode? [Y|n]:
   ```

9. Enter *y* to continue with the script.

   ```
   Are you happy with your answers? [y|n]: y
   Encrypting the Passwords in the User Data:                   [  OK  ]
   Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files with User Data:         [  OK  ]
   ```

10. If you want to continue running the initialization script using the default configuration, answer *y* (yes) to the following prompt, and continue with the next step.

    If you want to customize the PeopleSoft environment using the Puppet YAML files, answer *n* (no) to stop the script.

    ```
    The bootstrap script is ready to deploy and configure the PeopleSoft
    environment using the default configuration defined in the Puppet
    Hiera YAML files. You can proceed by answering 'y' at the following
    prompt. And, if you want to customize the environment by overriding
    the default configuration, you can answer 'n'. If you answer 'n', you
    should follow the instructions in the PeopleSoft Installation Guide
    for creating the customization Hiera YAML file and running the Puppet
    'apply' command directly to continue with the setup of the PeopleSoft
    ```

```
environment

Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]:
```

11. Review the status messages as the script runs Puppet profiles to set up the PeopleSoft environment.

    A message of [OK] indicates that the profile has been applied successfully while a message [FAILED] indicates that the profile application failed.

    Upon successful completion, the DPK setup script displays the following message:

    ```
    The PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process Ended.
    ```

    The complete setup log is written to the file psft_dpk_setup.log in the same location as the DPK setup script.

Task 2-6-2: Running the DPK Setup Script as the Root User to Install Mid-tier Software on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris

This procedure assumes you have obtained the four PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPK zip files and saved them in *DPK_INSTALL.*

Note. Some of the informational script messages have been omitted for brevity.

---

1. Extract the first zip file *(FILENAME*_1of*n*.zip).

   Note. It is a good idea to extract into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, *DPK_INSTALL.*

   The extraction creates the *DPK_INSTALL/*setup folder and other files.
2. Open a terminal windows as the root user.
3. Change directory to *DPK_INSTALL/*setup.
4. Run the script as follows:

   - If you extracted the first zip file into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, use this command:

     ```
     ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --env_type midtier --deploy_only
     ```

   - If you extracted the first zip file into a different directory, include the option `dpk_src_dir` to specify the location of the downloaded zip files, such as *DPK_INSTALL,* as follows:

     ```
     ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --dpk_src_dir DPK_INSTALL --env_type midtier ⇒
     --deploy_only
     ```

5. Specify whether to install the Puppet software if necessary at the next prompt.

   The script verifies if Puppet software is installed in the default location specified by the DPKs. If not, answer *y* (yes) to install the Puppet software and *n* to abort the PeopleSoft environment setup process. The default action (if nothing is entered at the prompt) is to install the software.

   If there is any error during the Puppet software installation, the script aborts the setup process.

   ```
   Verifying if Puppet Software is Installed:

   Puppet Software is not installed on the Windows Host. If PeopleSoft
   environment needs to be setup on this Host, Puppet software
   should be Installed.
   ```

```
Do you want to proceed with the Puppet Installation? [Y|n]: y

Installing Puppet Software on the Windows Host:              [  OK  ]
```

6. At the following prompt, enter a location that is accessible to the host to be used as the PeopleSoft base directory, referred to here as *BASE_DIR*.

   The base directory is used to extract the DPKs as well as for deploying PeopleSoft components. The script creates the base directory if it does not exist.

   Use forward slashes only (/) when specifying the base directory; for example, /home/psft. Do not use a base directory name that begins with a number. Do not end the base directory name with a forward slash (for example, do not enter /ds1/psft/).

   ```
   The base folder is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs. It is also
   used to deploy the PeopleSoft components. This folder should be
   accessible on the Windows VM, must have write permissions and should
   have enough free space

   Enter the PeopleSoft Base Folder:
   Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]:
   ```

   The script validates if there is enough free space available under the specified base directory for the PeopleSoft environment. The PeopleSoft environment setup is aborted if there is not enough free space.

   Note. A mid-tier setup of a PeopleSoft environment requires about 25 GB of disk space.

   ```
   Checking if the Base Folder has Enough Free Space:          [  OK  ]
   ```

7. Specify a writable directory for the user home directory at the following prompt.

   You see this prompt beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.04.

   The PeopleSoft environment setup using DPKs creates local users on the host. These users deploy the PeopleSoft components and own the PeopleSoft runtime domains. Enter a new location to be used for creating the home directories for these local users, or specify the default home directory, /home.

   ```
   Enter a directory on the Linux VM that is writable [/home]: /ds1
   Are you happy with your answer? [y|n|q]:
   ```

   If the script finds that the location you enter (either a new location or the default) is not writable, it exits with the following message.

   ```
   The User does not have write permission to create the user's home
   directory under [<user input>] on the Linux VM.
   Exiting the PeopleSoft environment setup process.
   ```

8. Specify the type of database platform.

   Enter MSSQL for Microsoft SQL Server, DB2ODBC for DB2 for z/OS, or ORACLE.

   ```
   Enter the PeopleSoft database platform [ORACLE]:
   ```

9. Specify whether you want support for a Unicode database.

   ```
   Is the PeopleSoft database unicode? [Y|n]:
   ```

10. Enter *y* to continue with the script.

    ```
    Are you happy with your answers? [y|n]: y
    Encrypting the Passwords in the User Data:                  [  OK  ]
    ```

```
Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files with User Data:        [  OK  ]
```

11. If you want to continue running the initialization script using the default configuration, answer *y* (yes) to the following prompt, and continue with the next step.

    If you want to customize the PeopleSoft environment using the Puppet YAML files, answer *n* (no) to stop the script.

    ```
    The bootstrap script is ready to deploy and configure the PeopleSoft
    environment using the default configuration defined in the Puppet
    Hiera YAML files. You can proceed by answering 'y' at the following
    prompt. And, if you want to customize the environment by overriding
    the default configuration, you can answer 'n'. If you answer 'n', you
    should follow the instructions in the PeopleSoft Installation Guide
    for creating the customization Hiera YAML file and running the Puppet
    'apply' command directly to continue with the setup of the PeopleSoft
    environment

    Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]:
    ```

12. Review the status messages as the script runs Puppet profiles to set up the PeopleSoft environment.

    A message of [OK] indicates that the profile has been applied successfully while a message [FAILED] indicates that the profile application failed.

    Upon successful completion, the DPK setup script displays the following message:

    ```
    The PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process Ended.
    ```

    The complete setup log is written to the file psft_dpk_setup.log in the same location as the DPK setup script.

Task 2-6-3: Running the DPK Setup Script as a Non-Root User to Install Mid-Tier Software on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris

To install the mid-tier software as a non-root user:

Note. Some of the informational script messages have been omitted for brevity.

---

1. Open a terminal window as a non-root user.
2. Change directory to *DPK_INSTALL*/setup.
3. Run the script as follows:
   - If you extracted the first zip file into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, use this command:

     ```
     ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --env_type midtier --deploy_only
     ```

   - If you extracted the first zip file into a different directory, include the option `dpk_src_dir` to specify the location of the downloaded zip files, such as *DPK_INSTALL*, as follows:

     ```
     ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --dpk_src_dir DPK_INSTALL --env_type midtier ⇒
     --deploy_only
     ```

4. At the following prompt, enter a location that is accessible to the host to be used as the PeopleSoft base directory, referred to here as *BASE_DIR*.

   The base directory is used to extract the DPKs as well as for deploying PeopleSoft components. The script creates the base directory if it does not exist.

Use forward slashes only (/) when specifying the base directory; for example, /home/psft. Do not use a base directory name that begins with a number. Do not end the base directory name with a forward slash (for example, do not enter /ds1/psft/).

```
The base folder is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs. It is also
used to deploy the PeopleSoft components. This folder should be
accessible on the Windows VM, must have write permissions and should
have enough free space

Enter the PeopleSoft Base Folder:
Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]:
```

The script validates if there is enough free space available under the specified base directory for the PeopleSoft environment. The PeopleSoft environment setup is aborted if there is not enough free space.

Note. A mid-tier setup of a PeopleSoft environment requires about 25 GB of disk space.

```
Checking if the Base Folder has Enough Free Space:          [  OK  ]
```

5. Specify the type of database platform.

   Enter MSSQL for Microsoft SQL Server, DB2ODBC for DB2 for z/OS, or ORACLE.

   ```
   Enter the PeopleSoft database platform [ORACLE]:
   ```

6. Specify whether you want support for a Unicode database.

   ```
   Is the PeopleSoft database unicode? [Y|n]:
   ```

7. Enter *y* to continue with the script.

   ```
   Are you happy with your answers? [y|n]: y
   Encrypting the Passwords in the User Data:                   [  OK  ]
   Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files with User Data:         [  OK  ]
   ```

8. If you want to continue running the initialization script using the default configuration, answer *y* (yes) to the following prompt, and continue with the next step.

   If you want to customize the PeopleSoft environment using the Puppet YAML files, answer *n* (no) to stop the script.

   ```
   The bootstrap script is ready to deploy and configure the PeopleSoft
   environment using the default configuration defined in the Puppet
   Hiera YAML files. You can proceed by answering 'y' at the following
   prompt. And, if you want to customize the environment by overriding
   the default configuration, you can answer 'n'. If you answer 'n', you
   should follow the instructions in the PeopleSoft Installation Guide
   for creating the customization Hiera YAML file and running the Puppet
   'apply' command directly to continue with the setup of the PeopleSoft
   environment

   Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]:
   ```

9. Review the status messages as the script runs Puppet profiles to set up the PeopleSoft environment.

   A message of [OK] indicates that the profile has been applied successfully while a message [FAILED] indicates that the profile application failed.

   Upon successful completion, the DPK setup script displays the following message:

```
The PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process Ended.
```

The complete setup log is written to the file psft_dpk_setup.log in the same location as the DPK setup script.

Task 2-7: Running the DPK Setup Script to Deploy an Application Server Domain

This section discusses:

- Understanding the Application Server Domain Deployment
- Running the DPK Setup Script for the Application Server Domain Deployment on Microsoft Windows
- Running the DPK Setup Script for the Application Server Domain Deployment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as the Root User
- Running the DPK Setup Script for the Application Server Domain Deployment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as a Non-Root User

Understanding the Application Server Domain Deployment

Use this option to set up an application server domain only, for example, on a host separate from the database. The deployment includes the following:

- *PS_HOME* installed to the default location under the DPK base directory.
- *PS_CFG_HOME* installed to the default location
- Oracle Tuxedo installed to the default location under the base directory
- Oracle WebLogic installed to the default location under the base directory
- PeopleSoft application server domain is installed and running.
- The Microsoft Windows DPKs include Microsoft Visual C++ Redistributable Packages for Visual Studio, which include required Microsoft C++ runtime libraries

The script requires the following information:

- Database platform type
- Database name
- Database host name
- Database port
- Unicode or non-Unicode
- PeopleSoft Connect ID and password
- PeopleSoft operator ID and password
- Application Server Domain Connection password (optional)

If you are installing on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, see the information about running as non-root in the section Reviewing the DPK Setup Script Options.

In addition, ensure that you fulfill the items in the Prerequisites section in the task Running the DPK Setup Script for Mid-Tier Deployment.

See Also

"Using and Maintaining the PeopleSoft Environment," Using the PeopleSoft Installation

Task 2-7-1: Running the DPK Setup Script for the Application Server Domain Deployment on Microsoft Windows

This procedure to deploy an application server domain assumes you have obtained the four PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPK zip files and saved them in *DPK_INSTALL.*

1. Extract the first zip file *(FILENAME*_1of*n*.zip).

   Note. It is a good idea to extract into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, *DPK_INSTALL.*

   The extraction creates the *DPK_INSTALL/*setup folder and other files.
2. Open a command prompt with Run as Administrator.
3. Change directory to *DPK_INSTALL/*setup.
4. Run the script as follows:

   Note. If you see an error message similar to "The application has failed to start because its side-by-side configuration is incorrect," it indicates that your machine does not include the necessary Microsoft C++ runtime libraries. Go to the Microsoft Web site, locate the Microsoft Visual C++ redistributable package for your system, and install as directed.

   - If you extracted the first zip file into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, use this command:

     ```
     psft-dpk-setup.bat --env_type midtier --domain_type appserver
     ```

   - If you extracted the first zip file into a different directory, include the option `dpk_src_dir` to specify the location of the downloaded zip files, such as *DPK_INSTALL,* as follows:

     ```
     psft-dpk-setup.bat --dpk_src_dir DPK_INSTALL --env_type midtier ⇒
     --domain_type appserver
     ```
5. Specify whether to install the Puppet software if necessary at the next prompt.

   The script verifies if Puppet software is installed in the default location specified by the DPKs. If not, answer *y* (yes) to install the Puppet software and *n* to abort the PeopleSoft environment setup process. The default action (if nothing is entered at the prompt) is to install the software.

   If there is any error during the Puppet software installation, the script aborts the setup process.

   ```
   Verifying if Puppet Software is Installed:

   Puppet Software is not installed on the Windows Host. If PeopleSoft
   environment needs to be setup on this Host, Puppet software
   should be Installed.

   Do you want to proceed with the Puppet Installation? [Y|n]: y

   Installing Puppet Software on the Windows Host:              [  OK  ]
   ```
6. At the following prompt, enter a location that is accessible to the host to be used as the PeopleSoft base

directory, referred to here as *BASE_DIR*.

The base directory is used to extract the DPKs as well as for deploying PeopleSoft components. The script creates the base directory if it does not exist.

Use forward slashes only (/) when specifying the base directory; for example, C:/psft. Do not use a base directory name that begins with a number.

```
The base folder is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs. It is also
used to deploy the PeopleSoft components. This folder should be
accessible on the Windows VM, must have write permissions and should
have enough free space

Enter the PeopleSoft Base Folder:
Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]:
```

The script validates if there is enough free space available under the specified base directory for the PeopleSoft environment. The PeopleSoft environment setup is aborted if there is not enough free space.

Note. A mid-tier setup of a PeopleSoft environment requires about 25 GB of disk space.

```
Checking if the Base Folder has Enough Free Space:          [  OK  ]
```

7. Specify the type of database platform.

   Enter MSSQL for Microsoft SQL Server, for DB2 for z/OS, or ORACLE.

   ```
   Enter the PeopleSoft database platform [ORACLE]:
   ```

8. Specify whether you want a Unicode database.

   ```
   Is the PeopleSoft database unicode? [Y|n]:
   ```

9. Enter the database name.

   ```
   Enter the PeopleSoft database name:
   ```

10. Enter the database service name.

    The default is the same as the database name. Do not enter an IP address.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database service name [PSFT92DB]:
    ```

11. Enter the name of the host where the database is installed.

    Do not enter an IP address.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database host name:
    ```

12. Enter the database listener port number:

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database port [1521]:
    ```

13. Enter the PeopleSoft Connect ID at the following prompt:

    The default is people.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people]:
    ```

14. Enter a password for the PeopleSoft Connect ID, and enter again on the next line, at the following prompt.

    See E-DPK - Password restrictions are not reflected in the DPK setup script prompts, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2639270.1.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people] password.
Ensure that the password meets the length and complexity requirements
for your database platform:
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID password:
```

15. Enter the PeopleSoft user ID (operator ID), such as PS or VP1.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [VP1]:
```

16. Enter the password twice for the PeopleSoft operator ID.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [VP1] password.
Ensure that the password is between 1 and 32 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID password:
```

17. Enter the Application Server Domain Connection password, following the guidelines in the prompt.

Note. This is an optional password. If no password is entered, the connection between Web Server and Application Server will not be password protected.

```
[Optional] Enter a new Application Server Domain connection password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the Application Server Domain connection password:
```

18. Enter *y* to continue with the script.

```
Are you happy with your answers? [y|n]: y
Encrypting the Passwords in the User Data:                  [  OK  ]
Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files with User Data:        [  OK  ]
```

19. If you want to continue running the initialization script using the default configuration, answer *y* (yes) to the following prompt, and continue with the next step.

    If you want to customize the PeopleSoft environment using the Puppet YAML files, answer *n* (no) to stop the script.

```
The bootstrap script is ready to deploy and configure the PeopleSoft
environment using the default configuration defined in the Puppet
Hiera YAML files. You can proceed by answering 'y' at the following
prompt. And, if you want to customize the environment by overriding
the default configuration, you can answer 'n'. If you answer 'n', you
should follow the instructions in the PeopleSoft Installation Guide
for creating the customization Hiera YAML file and running the Puppet
'apply' command directly to continue with the setup of the PeopleSoft
environment

Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]:
```

20. Review the status messages as the script runs Puppet profiles to set up the PeopleSoft environment.

    A message of [OK] indicates that the profile has been applied successfully while a message [FAILED] indicates that the profile application failed.

    Upon successful completion, the DPK setup script displays the following message:

```
The PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process Ended.
```

The complete setup log is written to the file psft_dpk_setup.log in the same location as the DPK setup script.

Task 2-7-2: Running the DPK Setup Script for the Application Server Domain Deployment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as the Root User

This procedure to deploy an application server domain assumes you have obtained the four PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPK zip files and saved them in *DPK_INSTALL.*

If you are installing the PeopleSoft environment as a non-root user, see the section Running the DPK Setup Script for the Application Server Domain Deployment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as a Non-Root User.

Note. Some of the informational script messages have been omitted for brevity.

To deploy the domain:

1. Extract the first zip file *(FILENAME*_1of*n.*zip).

   Note. It is a good idea to extract into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, *DPK_INSTALL.*

   The extraction creates the *DPK_INSTALL/*setup folder and other files.
2. Open a terminal window as root.
3. Change directory to *DPK_INSTALL/*setup.
4. Run the script as follows:
   - If you extracted the first zip file into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, use this command:

     ```
     ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --env_type midtier --domain_type appserver
     ```
   - If you extracted the first zip file into a different directory, include the option `dpk_src_dir` to specify the location of the downloaded zip files, such as *DPK_INSTALL,* as follows:

     ```
     ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --dpk_src_dir DPK_INSTALL --env_type midtier ⇒
     --domain_type appserver
     ```
5. Specify whether to install the Puppet software if necessary at the next prompt.

   The script verifies if Puppet software is installed in the default location specified by the DPKs. If not, answer *y* (yes) to install the Puppet software and *n* to abort the PeopleSoft environment setup process. The default action (if nothing is entered at the prompt) is to install the software.

   If there is any error during the Puppet software installation, the script aborts the setup process.

   ```
   Verifying if Puppet Software is Installed:

   Puppet Software is not installed on the Linux Host. If PeopleSoft
   environment needs to be setup on this Host, Puppet software
   should be Installed.

   Do you want to proceed with the Puppet Installation? [Y|n]: y

   Installing Puppet Software on the Linux Host:              [  OK  ]
   ```
6. At the following prompt, enter a location that is accessible to the host to be used as the PeopleSoft base directory, referred to here as *BASE_DIR.*

   The base directory is used to extract the DPKs as well as for deploying PeopleSoft components. The script

creates the base directory if it does not exist.

Use forward slashes only (/) when specifying the base directory; for example, /home/psft. Do not use a base directory name that begins with a number. Do not end the base directory name with a forward slash (for example, do not enter /ds1/psft/).

```
The base directory is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs. It is also
used to deploy the PeopleSoft components. This directory should be
accessible on the Linux VM, must have write permissions and should
have enough free space

Enter the PeopleSoft Base Directory:
Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]:
```

The script validates if there is enough free space available under the specified base directory for the PeopleSoft environment. The PeopleSoft environment setup is aborted if there is not enough free space.

Note. A mid-tier setup of a PeopleSoft environment requires about 25 GB of disk space.

```
Checking if the Base Folder has Enough Free Space:          [  OK  ]
```

7. Specify a writable directory for the user home directory at the following prompt.

   You see this prompt beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.04.

   The PeopleSoft environment setup using DPKs creates local users on the host. These users deploy the PeopleSoft components and own the PeopleSoft runtime domains. Enter a new location to be used for creating the home directories for these local users, or specify the default home directory, /home.

   ```
   Enter a directory on the Linux VM that is writable [/home]: /ds1
   Are you happy with your answer? [y|n|q]:
   ```

   If the script finds that the location you enter (either a new location or the default) is not writable, it exits with the following message.

   ```
   The User does not have write permission to create the user's home
   directory under [<user input>] on the Linux VM.
   Exiting the PeopleSoft environment setup process.
   ```

8. Specify the type of database platform.

   Enter DB2ODBC for DB2 for z/OS, or ORACLE.

   ```
   Enter the PeopleSoft database platform [ORACLE]:
   ```

9. Specify whether you want a Unicode database.

   ```
   Is the PeopleSoft database unicode? [Y|n]:
   ```

10. Enter the database name.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database name:
    ```

11. Enter the database service name.

    The default is the same as the database name. Do not enter an IP address.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database service name [PSFT92DB]:
    ```

12. Enter the name of the host where the database is installed.

    Do not enter an IP address.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database host name:
```

13. Enter the database listener port number:

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database port [1521]:
```

14. Enter the PeopleSoft Connect ID at the following prompt:

    The default is people.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people]:
```

15. Enter a password for the PeopleSoft Connect ID, and enter again on the next line, at the following prompt.

    See E-DPK - Password restrictions are not reflected in the DPK setup script prompts, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2639270.1.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people] password.
Ensure that the password meets the length and complexity requirements
for your database platform:
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID password:
```

16. Enter the PeopleSoft user ID (operator ID), such as PS or VP1.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [VP1]:
```

17. Enter the password twice for the PeopleSoft operator ID.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [VP1] password.
Ensure that the password is between 1 and 32 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID password:
```

18. Enter the Application Server Domain Connection password, following the guidelines in the prompt.

Note. This is an optional password. If no password is entered, the connection between Web Server and Application Server will not be password protected.

```
[Optional] Enter a new Application Server Domain connection password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the Application Server Domain connection password:
```

19. Enter *y* to continue with the script.

```
Are you happy with your answers? [y|n]: y
Encrypting the Passwords in the User Data:                  [  OK  ]
Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files with User Data:        [  OK  ]
```

20. If you want to continue running the initialization script using the default configuration, answer *y* (yes) to the following prompt, and continue with the next step.

    If you want to customize the PeopleSoft environment using the Puppet YAML files, answer *n* (no) to stop the script.

```
The bootstrap script is ready to deploy and configure the PeopleSoft
environment using the default configuration defined in the Puppet
Hiera YAML files. You can proceed by answering 'y' at the following
prompt. And, if you want to customize the environment by overriding
the default configuration, you can answer 'n'. If you answer 'n', you
should follow the instructions in the PeopleSoft Installation Guide
```

```
for creating the customization Hiera YAML file and running the Puppet
'apply' command directly to continue with the setup of the PeopleSoft
environment

Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]:
```

21. Review the status messages as the script runs Puppet profiles to set up the PeopleSoft environment.

    A message of [OK] indicates that the profile has been applied successfully while a message [FAILED] indicates that the profile application failed.

    Upon successful completion, the DPK setup script displays the following message:

    ```
    The PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process Ended.
    ```

    The complete setup log is written to the file psft_dpk_setup.log in the same location as the DPK setup script.

Task 2-7-3: Running the DPK Setup Script for the Application Server Domain Deployment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as a Non-Root User

This procedure to deploy an application server domain assumes you have fulfilled the prerequisites.

If you are installing the PeopleSoft environment as a non-root user, see the section Running the DPK Setup Script for the Application Server Domain Deployment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as the Root User.

Note. Some of the informational script messages have been omitted for brevity.

To deploy the domain as a non-root user:

1. Open a terminal window.
2. Change directory to *DPK_INSTALL*/setup.
3. Run the script as follows:
   - If you extracted the first zip file into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, use this command:

     ```
     ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --env_type midtier --domain_type appserver
     ```

   - If you extracted the first zip file into a different directory, include the option `dpk_src_dir` to specify the location of the downloaded zip files, such as *DPK_INSTALL*, as follows:

     ```
     ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --dpk_src_dir DPK_INSTALL --env_type midtier ⇒
     --domain_type appserver
     ```

4. If you are running as a non-root user, answer *y* (yes) at the following prompt:

   ```
   You are running DPK setup without root/administrator access.
   This is fine as long as the system administrator has performed
   all necessary tasks and all prerequisites have been met.
   Please see the documentation to determine the prerequite tasks
   that need to be performed to successfully run DPK set up
   without root/administrator privilege.

   Would you like to proceed with the setup as a non-root user? [y/n]: y
   ```

5. At the following prompt, enter a location that is accessible to the host to be used as the PeopleSoft base directory, referred to here as *BASE_DIR*.

   The base directory is used to extract the DPKs as well as for deploying PeopleSoft components. The script

creates the base directory if it does not exist.

Use forward slashes only (/) when specifying the base directory; for example, /home/psft. Do not use a base directory name that begins with a number. Do not end the base directory name with a forward slash (for example, do not enter /ds1/psft/).

```
The base directory is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs. It is also
used to deploy the PeopleSoft components. This folder should be
accessible on the Linux VM, must have write permissions and should
have enough free space

Enter the PeopleSoft BaseDirectory:
Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]:
```

The script validates if there is enough free space available under the specified base directory for the PeopleSoft environment. The PeopleSoft environment setup is aborted if there is not enough free space.

Note. A mid-tier setup of a PeopleSoft environment requires about 25 GB of disk space.

```
Checking if the Base Folder has Enough Free Space:          [  OK  ]
```

6. Enter a writable directory with at least 10 GB available space for *PS_CFG_HOME*.

   The default is *USER_HOME*/psft/pt/8.58, where *USER_HOME* is the home directory for the logged-in user. The *PS_CFG_HOME* directory holds the configuration and log files for the PeopleSoft Application Server, Process Scheduler, and PIA domains.

   ```
   Enter a writable ps_config_home directory for PeopleSoft domains
   with at least 10.0GB space [/home/psftuser/psft/pt/8.58]:
   Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]: y
   ```

7. Specify the type of database platform.

   Enter DB2ODBC for DB2 for z/OS, or ORACLE.

   ```
   Enter the PeopleSoft database platform [ORACLE]:
   ```

8. Specify whether you want a Unicode database.

   ```
   Is the PeopleSoft database unicode? [Y|n]:
   ```

9. Enter the database name.

   ```
   Enter the PeopleSoft database name:
   ```

10. Enter the database service name.

    The default is the same as the database name. Do not enter an IP address.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database service name [PSFT92DB]:
    ```

11. Enter the name of the host where the database is installed.

    Do not enter an IP address.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database host name:
    ```

12. Enter the database listener port number:

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database port [1521]:
    ```

13. Enter the PeopleSoft Connect ID at the following prompt:

    The default is people.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people]:
```

14. Enter a password for the PeopleSoft Connect ID, and enter again on the next line, at the following prompt.

    See E-DPK - Password restrictions are not reflected in the DPK setup script prompts, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2639270.1.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people] password.
Ensure that the password meets the length and complexity requirements
for your database platform:
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID password:
```

15. Enter the PeopleSoft user ID (operator ID), such as PS or VP1.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [VP1]:
```

16. Enter the password twice for the PeopleSoft operator ID.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [VP1] password.
Ensure that the password is between 1 and 32 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID password:
```

17. Enter the Application Server Domain Connection password, following the guidelines in the prompt.

Note. This is an optional password. If no password is entered, the connection between Web Server and Application Server will not be password protected.

```
[Optional] Enter a new Application Server Domain connection password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the Application Server Domain connection password:
```

18. Enter *y* to continue with the script.

```
Are you happy with your answers? [y|n]: y
Encrypting the Passwords in the User Data:                  [  OK  ]
Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files with User Data:        [  OK  ]
```

19. If you want to continue running the initialization script using the default configuration, answer *y* (yes) to the following prompt, and continue with the next step.

    If you want to customize the PeopleSoft environment using the Puppet YAML files, answer *n* (no) to stop the script.

```
The bootstrap script is ready to deploy and configure the PeopleSoft
environment using the default configuration defined in the Puppet
Hiera YAML files. You can proceed by answering 'y' at the following
prompt. And, if you want to customize the environment by overriding
the default configuration, you can answer 'n'. If you answer 'n', you
should follow the instructions in the PeopleSoft Installation Guide
for creating the customization Hiera YAML file and running the Puppet
'apply' command directly to continue with the setup of the PeopleSoft
environment

Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]:
```

20. Review the status messages as the script runs Puppet profiles to set up the PeopleSoft environment.

A message of [OK] indicates that the profile has been applied successfully while a message [FAILED] indicates that the profile application failed.

Upon successful completion, the DPK setup script displays the following message:

```
The PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process Ended.
```

If you are running as a non-root user, the setup.log is written to the file <*USER_HOME*>/psft_dpk_work/psft_dpk_setup_<*PID*>.log, where <*USER_HOME*> is the home directory for the user running the script, and <PID> is a process ID

Task 2-8: Running the DPK Setup Script to Deploy a Process Scheduler Domain

This section discusses:

- Understanding the Process Scheduler Domain Deployment
- Running the DPK Setup Script for the Process Scheduler Domain Deployment on Microsoft Windows
- Running the DPK Setup Script for the Process Scheduler Domain Deployment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as the Root User
- Running the DPK Setup Script for the Process Scheduler Domain Deployment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as a Non-Root User

Understanding the Process Scheduler Domain Deployment

Use this option to set up a single Process Scheduler domain, for example, to install on a host separate from the database. The deployment includes the following:

- *PS_HOME* installed to the default location under the DPK base directory.
- *PS_CFG_HOME* installed to the default location
- Oracle Tuxedo installed to the default location under the DPK base directory
- Oracle WebLogic installed to the default location under the DPK base directory
- PeopleSoft Process Scheduler domain is installed and running.
- The Microsoft Windows DPKs include Microsoft Visual C++ Redistributable Packages for Visual Studio, which include required Microsoft C++ runtime libraries

The script requires the following information:

- Database platform type
- Database name
- Database host name
- Database port
- Unicode or non-Unicode
- PeopleSoft Connect ID and password
- PeopleSoft operator ID and password
- Application Server Domain Connection password (optional)

In addition, ensure that you fulfill the items in the Prerequisites section in the task Running the DPK Setup Script for Mid-Tier Deployment.

See Also

"Using and Maintaining the PeopleSoft Environment," Using the PeopleSoft Installation

Task 2-8-1: Running the DPK Setup Script for the Process Scheduler Domain Deployment on Microsoft Windows

This procedure to deploy a Process Scheduler domain assumes that you have obtained the four PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPK zip files and saved them in *DPK_INSTALL.*

1. Extract the first zip file *(FILENAME*_1of*n*.zip).

   Note. It is a good idea to extract into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, *DPK_INSTALL.*

   The extraction creates the *DPK_INSTALL/*setup folder and other files.
2. Open a command prompt with Run as Administrator.
3. Change directory to *DPK_INSTALL/*setup.
4. Run the script as follows:

   Note. If you see an error message similar to "The application has failed to start because its side-by-side configuration is incorrect," it indicates that your machine does not include the necessary Microsoft C++ runtime libraries. Go to the Microsoft Web site, locate the Microsoft Visual C++ redistributable package for your system, and install as directed.

   - If you extracted the first zip file into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, use this command:

     ```
     psft-dpk-setup.bat --env_type midtier --domain_type prcs
     ```

   - If you extracted the first zip file into a different directory, include the option `dpk_src_dir` to specify the location of the downloaded zip files, such as *DPK_INSTALL,* as follows:

     ```
     psft-dpk-setup.bat --dpk_src_dir DPK_INSTALL --env_type midtier ⇒
     --domain_type prcs
     ```
5. Specify whether to install the Puppet software if necessary at the next prompt.

   The script verifies if Puppet software is installed in the default location specified by the DPKs. If not, answer *y* (yes) to install the Puppet software and *n* to abort the PeopleSoft environment setup process. The default action (if nothing is entered at the prompt) is to install the software.

   If there is any error during the Puppet software installation, the script aborts the setup process.

   ```
   Verifying if Puppet Software is Installed:

   Puppet Software is not installed on the Windows Host. If PeopleSoft
   environment needs to be setup on this Host, Puppet software
   should be Installed.

   Do you want to proceed with the Puppet Installation? [Y|n]: y

   Installing Puppet Software on the Windows Host:              [  OK  ]
   ```
6. At the following prompt, enter a location that is accessible to the host to be used as the PeopleSoft base

directory, referred to here as *BASE_DIR*.

The base directory is used to extract the DPKs as well as for deploying PeopleSoft components. The script creates the base directory if it does not exist.

Use forward slashes only (/) when specifying the base directory; for example, C:/psft. Do not use a base directory name that begins with a number.

```
The base folder is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs. It is also
used to deploy the PeopleSoft components. This folder should be
accessible on the Windows VM, must have write permissions and should
have enough free space

Enter the PeopleSoft Base Folder:
Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]:
```

The script validates if there is enough free space available under the specified base directory for the PeopleSoft environment. The PeopleSoft environment setup is aborted if there is not enough free space.

Note. A mid-tier setup of a PeopleSoft environment requires about 25 GB of disk space.

```
Checking if the Base Folder has Enough Free Space:          [  OK  ]
```

7. Specify the type of database platform.

   Enter MSSQL for Microsoft SQL Server, DB2ODBC for DB2 for z/OS, or ORACLE.

   ```
   Enter the PeopleSoft database platform [ORACLE]:
   ```

8. Specify whether you want a Unicode database.

   ```
   Is the PeopleSoft database unicode? [Y|n]:
   ```

9. Enter the database name.

   ```
   Enter the PeopleSoft database name:
   ```

10. Enter the database service name.

    The default is the same as the database name. Do not enter an IP address.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database service name [PSFT92DB]:
    ```

11. Enter the name of the host where the database is installed.

    Do not enter an IP address.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database host name:
    ```

12. Enter the database listener port number:

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database port [1521]:
    ```

13. Enter the PeopleSoft Connect ID at the following prompt:

    The default is people.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people]:
    ```

14. Enter a password for the PeopleSoft Connect ID, and enter again on the next line, at the following prompt.

    See E-DPK - Password restrictions are not reflected in the DPK setup script prompts, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2639270.1.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people] password.
Ensure that the password meets the length and complexity requirements
for your database platform:
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID password:
```

15. Enter the PeopleSoft user ID (operator ID), such as PS or VP1.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [VP1]:
```

16. Enter the password twice for the PeopleSoft operator ID.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [VP1] password.
Ensure that the password is between 1 and 32 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID password:
```

17. Enter the Application Server Domain Connection password, following the guidelines in the prompt.

Note. This is an optional password. If no password is entered, the connection between Web Server and Application Server will not be password protected.

```
[Optional] Enter a new Application Server Domain connection password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the Application Server Domain connection password:
```

18. Enter *y* to continue with the script.

```
Are you happy with your answers? [y|n]: y
Encrypting the Passwords in the User Data:                  [  OK  ]
Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files with User Data:        [  OK  ]
```

19. If you want to continue running the initialization script using the default configuration, answer *y* (yes) to the following prompt, and continue with the next step.

    If you want to customize the PeopleSoft environment using the Puppet YAML files, answer *n* (no) to stop the script.

```
The bootstrap script is ready to deploy and configure the PeopleSoft
environment using the default configuration defined in the Puppet
Hiera YAML files. You can proceed by answering 'y' at the following
prompt. And, if you want to customize the environment by overriding
the default configuration, you can answer 'n'. If you answer 'n', you
should follow the instructions in the PeopleSoft Installation Guide
for creating the customization Hiera YAML file and running the Puppet
'apply' command directly to continue with the setup of the PeopleSoft
environment

Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]:
```

20. Review the status messages as the script runs Puppet profiles to set up the PeopleSoft environment.

    A message of [OK] indicates that the profile has been applied successfully while a message [FAILED] indicates that the profile application failed.

    Upon successful completion, the DPK setup script displays the following message:

```
The PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process Ended.
```

The complete setup log is written to the file psft_dpk_setup.log in the same location as the DPK setup script.

Task 2-8-2: Running the DPK Setup Script for the Process Scheduler Domain Deployment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as the Root User

This procedure to deploy a Process Scheduler domain assumes that you have obtained the four PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPK zip files and saved them in *DPK_INSTALL.*

Note. Some of the informational script messages have been omitted for brevity.

If you are installing the PeopleSoft environment as a non-root user, see the section Running the DPK Setup Script for the Process Scheduler Domain Deployment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as a Non-Root User.

To deploy the domain:

1. Extract the first zip file *(FILENAME*_1of*n.*zip).

   Note. It is a good idea to extract into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, *DPK_INSTALL.*

   The extraction creates the *DPK_INSTALL/*setup folder and other files.
2. Open a terminal window as root or a non-root user.
3. Change directory to *DPK_INSTALL/*setup.
4. Run the script as follows:
   - If you extracted the first zip file into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, use this command:

     ```
     ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --env_type midtier --domain_type prcs
     ```

   - If you extracted the first zip file into a different directory, include the option `dpk_src_dir` to specify the location of the downloaded zip files, such as *DPK_INSTALL,* as follows:

     ```
     ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --dpk_src_dir DPK_INSTALL --env_type midtier ⇒
     --domain_type prcs
     ```
5. Specify whether to install the Puppet software if necessary at the next prompt.

   The script verifies if Puppet software is installed in the default location specified by the DPKs. If not, answer *y* (yes) to install the Puppet software and *n* to abort the PeopleSoft environment setup process. The default action (if nothing is entered at the prompt) is to install the software.

   If there is any error during the Puppet software installation, the script aborts the setup process.

   ```
   Verifying if Puppet Software is Installed:

   Puppet Software is not installed on the Linux Host. If PeopleSoft
   environment needs to be setup on this Host, Puppet software
   should be Installed.

   Do you want to proceed with the Puppet Installation? [Y|n]: y

   Installing Puppet Software on the Linux Host:              [  OK  ]
   ```
6. At the following prompt, enter a location that is accessible to the host to be used as the PeopleSoft base directory, referred to here as *BASE_DIR.*

   The base directory is used to extract the DPKs as well as for deploying PeopleSoft components. The script

creates the base directory if it does not exist.

Use forward slashes only (/) when specifying the base directory; for example, /home/psft. Do not use a base directory name that begins with a number. Do not end the base directory name with a forward slash (for example, do not enter /ds1/psft/).

```
The base folder is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs. It is also
used to deploy the PeopleSoft components. This folder should be
accessible on the Linux VM, must have write permissions and should
have enough free space

Enter the PeopleSoft Base Folder:
Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]:
```

The script validates if there is enough free space available under the specified base directory for the PeopleSoft environment. The PeopleSoft environment setup is aborted if there is not enough free space.

Note. A mid-tier setup of a PeopleSoft environment requires about 25 GB of disk space.

```
Checking if the Base Directory has Enough Free Space:          [  OK  ]
```

7. Specify a writable directory for the user home directory at the following prompt.

   You see this prompt beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.04.

   The PeopleSoft environment setup using DPKs creates local users on the host. These users deploy the PeopleSoft components and own the PeopleSoft runtime domains. Enter a new location to be used for creating the home directories for these local users, or specify the default home directory, /home.

   ```
   Enter a directory on the Linux VM that is writable [/home]: /ds1
   Are you happy with your answer? [y|n|q]:
   ```

   If the script finds that the location you enter (either a new location or the default) is not writable, it exits with the following message.

   ```
   The User does not have write permission to create the user's home
   directory under [<user input>] on the Linux VM.
   Exiting the PeopleSoft environment setup process.
   ```

8. Specify the type of database platform.

   Enter DB2ODBC for DB2 for z/OS or ORACLE.

   ```
   Enter the PeopleSoft database platform [ORACLE]:
   ```

9. Specify whether you want a Unicode database.

   ```
   Is the PeopleSoft database unicode? [Y|n]:
   ```

10. Enter the database name.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database name:
    ```

11. Enter the database service name.

    The default is the same as the database name. Do not enter an IP address.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database service name [PSFT92DB]:
    ```

12. Enter the name of the host where the database is installed.

    Do not enter an IP address.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database host name:
```

13. Enter the database listener port number:

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database port [1521]:
```

14. Enter the PeopleSoft Connect ID at the following prompt:

    The default is people.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people]:
```

15. Enter a password for the PeopleSoft Connect ID, and enter again on the next line, at the following prompt.

    See E-DPK - Password restrictions are not reflected in the DPK setup script prompts, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2639270.1.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people] password.
Ensure that the password meets the length and complexity requirements
for your database platform:
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID password:
```

16. Enter the PeopleSoft user ID (operator ID), such as PS or VP1.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [VP1]:
```

17. Enter the password twice for the PeopleSoft operator ID.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [VP1] password.
Ensure that the password is between 1 and 32 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID password:
```

18. Enter the Application Server Domain Connection password, following the guidelines in the prompt.

Note. This is an optional password. If no password is entered, the connection between Web Server and Application Server will not be password protected.

```
[Optional] Enter a new Application Server Domain connection password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the Application Server Domain connection password:
```

19. Enter *y* to continue with the script.

```
Are you happy with your answers? [y|n]: y
Encrypting the Passwords in the User Data:                  [  OK  ]
Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files with User Data:        [  OK  ]
```

20. If you want to continue running the initialization script using the default configuration, answer *y* (yes) to the following prompt, and continue with the next step.

    If you want to customize the PeopleSoft environment using the Puppet YAML files, answer *n* (no) to stop the script.

```
The bootstrap script is ready to deploy and configure the PeopleSoft
environment using the default configuration defined in the Puppet
Hiera YAML files. You can proceed by answering 'y' at the following
prompt. And, if you want to customize the environment by overriding
the default configuration, you can answer 'n'. If you answer 'n', you
should follow the instructions in the PeopleSoft Installation Guide
```

```
for creating the customization Hiera YAML file and running the Puppet
'apply' command directly to continue with the setup of the PeopleSoft
environment

Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]:
```

21. Review the status messages as the script runs Puppet profiles to set up the PeopleSoft environment.

    A message of [OK] indicates that the profile has been applied successfully while a message [FAILED] indicates that the profile application failed.

    Upon successful completion, the DPK setup script displays the following message:

    ```
    The PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process Ended.
    ```

    The complete setup log is written to the file psft_dpk_setup.log in the same location as the DPK setup script.

Task 2-8-3: Running the DPK Setup Script for the Process Scheduler Domain Deployment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as a Non-Root User

If you are installing the PeopleSoft environment as a non-root user, ensure that you fulfill the prerequisites in the section Deploying as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.

Note. Some of the informational script messages have been omitted for brevity.

To deploy the domain:

1. Open a terminal window as a non-root user.
2. Change directory to *DPK_INSTALL*/setup.
3. Run the script as follows:
   - If you extracted the first zip file into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, use this command:

     ```
     ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --env_type midtier --domain_type prcs
     ```

   - If you extracted the first zip file into a different directory, include the option `dpk_src_dir` to specify the location of the downloaded zip files, such as *DPK_INSTALL,* as follows:

     ```
     ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --dpk_src_dir DPK_INSTALL --env_type midtier ⇒
     --domain_type prcs
     ```

4. Answer *y* (yes) at the following prompt:

   ```
   You are running DPK setup without root/administrator access.
   This is fine as long as the system administrator has performed
   all necessary tasks and all prerequisites have been met.
   Please see the documentation to determine the prerequite tasks
   that need to be performed to successfully run DPK set up
   without root/administrator privilege.

   Would you like to proceed with the setup as a non-root user? [y/n]: y
   ```

5. At the following prompt, enter a location that is accessible to the host to be used as the PeopleSoft base directory, referred to here as *BASE_DIR.*

   The base directory is used to extract the DPKs as well as for deploying PeopleSoft components. The script creates the base directory if it does not exist.

Use forward slashes only (/) when specifying the base directory; for example, /home/psft. Do not use a base directory name that begins with a number. Do not end the base directory name with a forward slash (for example, do not enter /ds1/psft/).

```
The base directory is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs. It is also
used to deploy the PeopleSoft components. This directory should be
accessible on the Linux Host, must have write permissions and should
have enough free space

Enter the PeopleSoft Base Directory:
Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]:
```

The script validates if there is enough free space available under the specified base directory for the PeopleSoft environment. The PeopleSoft environment setup is aborted if there is not enough free space.

Note. A mid-tier setup of a PeopleSoft environment requires about 25 GB of disk space.

```
Checking if the Base Directory has Enough Free Space:          [  OK  ]
```

6. Enter a writable directory with at least 10 GB available space for *PS_CFG_HOME*.

   The default is *USER_HOME*/psft/pt/8.58, where *USER_HOME* is the home directory for the logged-in user. The *PS_CFG_HOME* directory holds the configuration and log files for the PeopleSoft Application Server, Process Scheduler, and PIA domains.

   ```
   Enter a writable ps_config_home directory for PeopleSoft domains
   with at least 10.0GB space [/home/psftuser/psft/pt/8.58]:
   Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]: y
   ```

7. Specify the type of database platform.

   Enter DB2ODBC for DB2 for z/OS or ORACLE.

   ```
   Enter the PeopleSoft database platform [ORACLE]:
   ```

8. Specify whether you want a Unicode database.

   ```
   Is the PeopleSoft database unicode? [Y|n]:
   ```

9. Enter the database name.

   ```
   Enter the PeopleSoft database name:
   ```

10. Enter the database service name.

    The default is the same as the database name. Do not enter an IP address.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database service name [PSFT92DB]:
    ```

11. Enter the name of the host where the database is installed.

    Do not enter an IP address.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database host name:
    ```

12. Enter the database listener port number:

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database port [1521]:
    ```

13. Enter the PeopleSoft Connect ID at the following prompt:

    The default is people.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people]:
```

14. Enter a password for the PeopleSoft Connect ID, and enter again on the next line, at the following prompt.

    See E-DPK - Password restrictions are not reflected in the DPK setup script prompts, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2639270.1.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people] password.
Ensure that the password meets the length and complexity requirements
for your database platform:
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID password:
```

15. Enter the PeopleSoft user ID (operator ID), such as PS or VP1.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [VP1]:
```

16. Enter the password twice for the PeopleSoft operator ID.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [VP1] password.
Ensure that the password is between 1 and 32 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID password:
```

17. Enter the Application Server Domain Connection password, following the guidelines in the prompt.

Note. This is an optional password. If no password is entered, the connection between Web Server and Application Server will not be password protected.

```
[Optional] Enter a new Application Server Domain connection password.
Ensure the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the Application Server Domain connection password:
```

18. Enter *y* to continue with the script.

```
Are you happy with your answers? [y|n]: y
Encrypting the Passwords in the User Data:                  [  OK  ]
Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files with User Data:        [  OK  ]
```

19. If you want to continue running the initialization script using the default configuration, answer *y* (yes) to the following prompt, and continue with the next step.

    If you want to customize the PeopleSoft environment using the Puppet YAML files, answer *n* (no) to stop the script.

```
The bootstrap script is ready to deploy and configure the PeopleSoft
environment using the default configuration defined in the Puppet
Hiera YAML files. You can proceed by answering 'y' at the following
prompt. And, if you want to customize the environment by overriding
the default configuration, you can answer 'n'. If you answer 'n', you
should follow the instructions in the PeopleSoft Installation Guide
for creating the customization Hiera YAML file and running the Puppet
'apply' command directly to continue with the setup of the PeopleSoft
environment

Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]:
```

20. Review the status messages as the script runs Puppet profiles to set up the PeopleSoft environment.

A message of [OK] indicates that the profile has been applied successfully while a message [FAILED] indicates that the profile application failed.

Upon successful completion, the DPK setup script displays the following message:

```
The PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process Ended.
```

The complete setup log is written to the file psft_dpk_setup.log in the same location as the DPK setup script.

The setup.log is written to the file <*USER_HOME*>/psft_dpk_work/psft_dpk_setup_<*PID*>.log, where <*USER_HOME*> is the home directory for the user running the script, and <PID> is a process ID

Task 2-9: Running the DPK Setup Script to Deploy an Application Server and a Process Scheduler Domain

This section discusses:

- Understanding the Application Server and Process Scheduler Domain Deployment
- Running the DPK Setup Script for the Application Server and Process Scheduler Domain Deployment on Microsoft Windows
- Running the DPK Setup Script for the Application Server and Process Scheduler Domain Deployment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as the Root User
- Running the DPK Setup Script for the Application Server and Process Scheduler Domain Deployment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as a Non-Root User

Understanding the Application Server and Process Scheduler Domain Deployment

Use this option to set up a single application server and a single Process Scheduler domain, for example to install on a host separate from the database. The deployment includes the following:

- *PS_HOME* installed to the default location under the DPK base directory.
- *PS_CFG_HOME* installed to the default location
- Oracle Tuxedo installed to the default location under the DPK base directory
- Oracle WebLogic installed to the default location under the DPK base directory
- An Application Server domain and a Process Scheduler domains are installed and running.
- The Microsoft Windows DPKs include Microsoft Visual C++ Redistributable Packages for Visual Studio, which include required Microsoft C++ runtime libraries

The script requires the following information:

- Database platform type
- Database name
- Database host name
- Database port
- Unicode or non-Unicode
- PeopleSoft Connect ID and password
- PeopleSoft operator ID and password

- Application Server Domain Connection password (optional)

If you are installing on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, see the information about running as non-root in the section Reviewing the DPK Setup Script Options.

In addition, ensure that you fulfill the items in the Prerequisites section in the task Running the DPK Setup Script for Mid-Tier Deployment.

See Also

"Using and Maintaining the PeopleSoft Environment," Using the PeopleSoft Installation

Task 2-9-1: Running the DPK Setup Script for the Application Server and Process Scheduler Domain Deployment on Microsoft Windows

This procedure to deploy an application server and a Process Scheduler domain assumes that you have obtained the four PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPK zip files and saved them in *DPK_INSTALL.*

To deploy the domains:

1. Extract the first zip file *(FILENAME*_1of*n*.zip).

   Note. It is a good idea to extract into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, *DPK_INSTALL.*

   The extraction creates the *DPK_INSTALL/*setup folder and other files.
2. Open a command prompt with Run as Administrator.
3. Change directory to *DPK_INSTALL/*setup.
4. Run the script as follows:

   Note. On Microsoft Windows, if you see an error message similar to "The application has failed to start because its side-by-side configuration is incorrect," it indicates that your machine does not include the necessary Microsoft C++ runtime libraries. Go to the Microsoft Web site, locate the Microsoft Visual C++ redistributable package for your system, and install as directed.

   - If you extracted the first zip file into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, use this command:

     ```
     psft-dpk-setup.bat --env_type midtier --domain_type appbatch
     ```

   - If you extracted the first zip file into a different directory, include the option `dpk_src_dir` to specify the location of the downloaded zip files, such as *DPK_INSTALL,* as follows:

     ```
     psft-dpk-setup.bat --dpk_src_dir DPK_INSTALL --env_type midtier ⇒
     --domain_type appbatch
     ```
5. Specify whether to install the Puppet software if necessary at the next prompt.

   The script verifies if Puppet software is installed in the default location specified by the DPKs. If not, answer *y* (yes) to install the Puppet software and *n* to abort the PeopleSoft environment setup process. The default action (if nothing is entered at the prompt) is to install the software.

   If there is any error during the Puppet software installation, the script aborts the setup process.

   ```
   Verifying if Puppet Software is Installed:

   Puppet Software is not installed on the Windows Host. If PeopleSoft
   ```

```
environment needs to be setup on this Host, Puppet software
should be Installed.

Do you want to proceed with the Puppet Installation? [Y|n]: y

Installing Puppet Software on the Windows Host:             [  OK  ]
```

6. At the following prompt, enter a location that is accessible to the host to be used as the PeopleSoft base directory, referred to here as *BASE_DIR*.

   The base directory is used to extract the DPKs as well as for deploying PeopleSoft components. The script creates the base directory if it does not exist.

   Use forward slashes only (/) when specifying the base directory; for example, C:/psft. Do not use a base directory name that begins with a number.

   ```
   The base folder is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs. It is also
   used to deploy the PeopleSoft components. This folder should be
   accessible on the Windows VM, must have write permissions and should
   have enough free space

   Enter the PeopleSoft Base Folder:
   Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]:
   ```

   The script validates if there is enough free space available under the specified base directory for the PeopleSoft environment. The PeopleSoft environment setup is aborted if there is not enough free space.

   Note. A mid-tier setup of a PeopleSoft environment requires about 25 GB of disk space.

   ```
   Checking if the Base Folder has Enough Free Space:          [  OK  ]
   ```

7. Specify the type of database platform.

   Enter MSSQL for Microsoft SQL Server, DB2ODBC for DB2 for z/OS, or ORACLE.

   ```
   Enter the PeopleSoft database platform [ORACLE]:
   ```

8. Specify whether you want a Unicode database.

   ```
   Is the PeopleSoft database unicode? [Y|n]:
   ```

9. Enter the database name.

   ```
   Enter the PeopleSoft database name:
   ```

10. Enter the database service name.

    The default is the same as the database name. Do not enter an IP address.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database service name [PSFT92DB]:
    ```

11. Enter the name of the host where the database is installed.

    Do not enter an IP address.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database host name:
    ```

12. Enter the database listener port number:

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database port [1521]:
    ```

13. Enter the PeopleSoft Connect ID at the following prompt:

The default is people.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people]:
```

14. Enter a password for the PeopleSoft Connect ID, and enter again on the next line, at the following prompt.

    See E-DPK - Password restrictions are not reflected in the DPK setup script prompts, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2639270.1.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people] password.
Ensure that the password meets the length and complexity requirements
for your database platform:
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID password:
```

15. Enter the PeopleSoft user ID (operator ID), such as PS or VP1.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [VP1]:
```

16. Enter the password twice for the PeopleSoft operator ID.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [VP1] password.
Ensure that the password is between 1 and 32 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID password:
```

17. Enter the Application Server Domain Connection password, following the guidelines in the prompt.

Note. This is an optional password. If no password is entered, the connection between Web Server and Application Server will not be password protected.

```
[Optional] Enter a new Application Server Domain connection password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the Application Server Domain connection password:
```

18. Enter *y* to continue with the script.

```
Are you happy with your answers? [y|n]: y
Encrypting the Passwords in the User Data:                  [  OK  ]
Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files with User Data:        [  OK  ]
```

19. If you want to continue running the initialization script using the default configuration, answer *y* (yes) to the following prompt, and continue with the next step.

    If you want to customize the PeopleSoft environment using the Puppet YAML files, answer *n* (no) to stop the script.

```
The bootstrap script is ready to deploy and configure the PeopleSoft
environment using the default configuration defined in the Puppet
Hiera YAML files. You can proceed by answering 'y' at the following
prompt. And, if you want to customize the environment by overriding
the default configuration, you can answer 'n'. If you answer 'n', you
should follow the instructions in the PeopleSoft Installation Guide
for creating the customization Hiera YAML file and running the Puppet
'apply' command directly to continue with the setup of the PeopleSoft
environment

Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]:
```

20. Review the status messages as the script runs Puppet profiles to set up the PeopleSoft environment.

    A message of [OK] indicates that the profile has been applied successfully while a message [FAILED] indicates that the profile application failed.

    Upon successful completion, the DPK setup script displays the following message:

    ```
    The PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process Ended.
    ```

    The complete setup log is written to the file psft_dpk_setup.log in the same location as the DPK setup script.

Task 2-9-2: Running the DPK Setup Script for the Application Server and Process Scheduler Domain Deployment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as the Root User

This procedure to deploy an application server and a Process Scheduler domain assumes that you have obtained the four PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPK zip files and saved them in *DPK_INSTALL.*

Note. Some of the informational script messages have been omitted for brevity.

If you are installing the PeopleSoft environment as a non-root user, see the following section, Running the DPK Setup Script for the Application Server and Process Scheduler Domain Deployment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as a Non-Root User.

To deploy the domains:

1. Extract the first zip file *(FILENAME*_1of*n.*zip).

   Note. It is a good idea to extract into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, *DPK_INSTALL.*

   The extraction creates the *DPK_INSTALL/*setup folder and other files.
2. Open a terminal window as root.
3. Change directory to *DPK_INSTALL/*setup.
4. Run the script as follows:

   - If you extracted the first zip file into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, use this command:

     ```
     ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --env_type midtier --domain_type appbatch
     ```

   - If you extracted the first zip file into a different directory, include the option `dpk_src_dir` to specify the location of the downloaded zip files, such as *DPK_INSTALL,* as follows:

     ```
     ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --dpk_src_dir DPK_INSTALL --env_type midtier ⇒
     --domain_type appbatch
     ```
5. Specify whether to install the Puppet software if necessary at the next prompt.

   The script verifies if Puppet software is installed in the default location specified by the DPKs. If not, answer *y* (yes) to install the Puppet software and *n* to abort the PeopleSoft environment setup process. The default action (if nothing is entered at the prompt) is to install the software.

   If there is any error during the Puppet software installation, the script aborts the setup process.

   ```
   Verifying if Puppet Software is Installed:

   Puppet Software is not installed on the Linux Host. If PeopleSoft
   environment needs to be setup on this Host, Puppet software
   ```

```
should be Installed.

Do you want to proceed with the Puppet Installation? [Y|n]: y

Installing Puppet Software on the Linux Host:              [  OK  ]
```

6. At the following prompt, enter a location that is accessible to the host to be used as the PeopleSoft base directory, referred to here as *BASE_DIR*.

   The base directory is used to extract the DPKs as well as for deploying PeopleSoft components. The script creates the base directory if it does not exist.

   Use forward slashes only (/) when specifying the base directory; for example, /home/psft. Do not use a base directory name that begins with a number. Do not end the base directory name with a forward slash (for example, do not enter /ds1/psft/).

   ```
   The base directory is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs. It is also
   used to deploy the PeopleSoft components. This directory should be
   accessible on the Linux VM, must have write permissions and should
   have enough free space

   Enter the PeopleSoft Base Directory:
   Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]:
   ```

   The script validates if there is enough free space available under the specified base directory for the PeopleSoft environment. The PeopleSoft environment setup is aborted if there is not enough free space.

   Note. A mid-tier setup of a PeopleSoft environment requires about 25 GB of disk space.

   ```
   Checking if the Base Folder has Enough Free Space:         [  OK  ]
   ```

7. Specify a writable directory for the user home directory at the following prompt.

   You see this prompt beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.04.

   The PeopleSoft environment setup using DPKs creates local users on the host. These users deploy the PeopleSoft components and own the PeopleSoft runtime domains. Enter a new location to be used for creating the home directories for these local users, or specify the default home directory, /home.

   ```
   Enter a directory on the Linux VM that is writable [/home]: /ds1
   Are you happy with your answer? [y|n|q]:
   ```

   If the script finds that the location you enter (either a new location or the default) is not writable, it exits with the following message.

   ```
   The User does not have write permission to create the user's home
   directory under [<user input>] on the Linux VM.
   Exiting the PeopleSoft environment setup process.
   ```

8. Specify the type of database platform.

   Enter DB2ODBC for DB2 for z/OS or ORACLE.

   ```
   Enter the PeopleSoft database platform [ORACLE]:
   ```

9. Specify whether you want a Unicode database.

   ```
   Is the PeopleSoft database unicode? [Y|n]:
   ```

10. Enter the database name.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database name:
```

11. Enter the database service name.

    The default is the same as the database name. Do not enter an IP address.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database service name [PSFT92DB]:
    ```

12. Enter the name of the host where the database is installed.

    Do not enter an IP address.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database host name:
    ```

13. Enter the database listener port number:

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database port [1521]:
    ```

14. Enter the PeopleSoft Connect ID at the following prompt:

    The default is people.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people]:
    ```

15. Enter a password for the PeopleSoft Connect ID, and enter again on the next line, at the following prompt.

    See E-DPK - Password restrictions are not reflected in the DPK setup script prompts, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2639270.1.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people] password.
    Ensure that the password meets the length and complexity requirements
    for your database platform:
    Re-Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID password:
    ```

16. Enter the PeopleSoft user ID (operator ID), such as PS or VP1.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [VP1]:
    ```

17. Enter the password twice for the PeopleSoft operator ID.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [VP1] password.
    Ensure that the password is between 1 and 32 characters in length.
    You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
    Re-Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID password:
    ```

18. Enter the Application Server Domain Connection password, following the guidelines in the prompt.

    Note. This is an optional password. If no password is entered, the connection between Web Server and Application Server will not be password protected.

    ```
    [Optional] Enter a new Application Server Domain connection password.
    Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
    You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
    Re-Enter the Application Server Domain connection password:
    ```

19. Enter *y* to continue with the script.

    ```
    Are you happy with your answers? [y|n]: y
    Encrypting the Passwords in the User Data:                  [  OK  ]
    Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files with User Data:        [  OK  ]
    ```

20. If you want to continue running the initialization script using the default configuration, answer *y* (yes) to the following prompt, and continue with the next step.

If you want to customize the PeopleSoft environment using the Puppet YAML files, answer *n* (no) to stop the script.

```
The bootstrap script is ready to deploy and configure the PeopleSoft
environment using the default configuration defined in the Puppet
Hiera YAML files. You can proceed by answering 'y' at the following
prompt. And, if you want to customize the environment by overriding
the default configuration, you can answer 'n'. If you answer 'n', you
should follow the instructions in the PeopleSoft Installation Guide
for creating the customization Hiera YAML file and running the Puppet
'apply' command directly to continue with the setup of the PeopleSoft
environment

Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]:
```

21. Review the status messages as the script runs Puppet profiles to set up the PeopleSoft environment.

    A message of [OK] indicates that the profile has been applied successfully while a message [FAILED] indicates that the profile application failed.

    Upon successful completion, the DPK setup script displays the following message:

    ```
    The PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process Ended.
    ```

    The complete setup log is written to the file psft_dpk_setup.log in the same location as the DPK setup script.

Task 2-9-3: Running the DPK Setup Script for the Application Server and Process Scheduler Domain Deployment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as a Non-Root User

If you are installing the PeopleSoft environment as a non-root user, ensure that you fulfill the prerequisites in the section Deploying as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.

Note. Some of the informational script messages have been omitted for brevity.

To deploy the domains:

1. Open a terminal window as a non-root user.
2. Change directory to *DPK_INSTALL*/setup.
3. Run the script as follows:

    - If you extracted the first zip file into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, use this command:

      ```
      ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --env_type midtier --domain_type appbatch
      ```

    - If you extracted the first zip file into a different directory, include the option `dpk_src_dir` to specify the location of the downloaded zip files, such as *DPK_INSTALL*, as follows:

      ```
      ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --dpk_src_dir DPK_INSTALL --env_type midtier ⇒
      --domain_type appbatch
      ```

4. Answer y (yes) at the following prompt:

    ```
    You are running DPK setup without root/administrator access.
    This is fine as long as the system administrator has performed
    all necessary tasks and all prerequisites have been met.
    ```

```
Please see the documentation to determine the prerequite tasks
that need to be performed to successfully run DPK set up
without root/administrator privilege.

Would you like to proceed with the setup as a non-root user? [y/n]: y
```

5. At the following prompt, enter a location that is accessible to the host to be used as the PeopleSoft base directory, referred to here as *BASE_DIR*.

   The base directory is used to extract the DPKs as well as for deploying PeopleSoft components. The script creates the base directory if it does not exist.

   Use forward slashes only (/) when specifying the base directory; for example, /home/psft. Do not use a base directory name that begins with a number. Do not end the base directory name with a forward slash (for example, do not enter /ds1/psft/).

   ```
   The base directory is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs. It is also
   used to deploy the PeopleSoft components. This directory should be
   accessible on the Linux Host, must have write permissions and should
   have enough free space

   Enter the PeopleSoft Base Directory:
   Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]:
   ```

   The script validates if there is enough free space available under the specified base directory for the PeopleSoft environment. The PeopleSoft environment setup is aborted if there is not enough free space.

   Note. A mid-tier setup of a PeopleSoft environment requires about 25 GB of disk space.

   ```
   Checking if the Base Directory has Enough Free Space:          [  OK  ]
   ```

6. Enter a writable directory with at least 10 GB available space for *PS_CFG_HOME*.

   The default is *USER_HOME*/psft/pt/8.58, where *USER_HOME* is the home directory for the logged-in user. The *PS_CFG_HOME* directory holds the configuration and log files for the PeopleSoft Application Server, Process Scheduler, and PIA domains.

   ```
   Enter a writable ps_config_home directory for PeopleSoft domains
   with at least 10.0GB space [/home/psftuser/psft/pt/8.58]:
   Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]: y
   ```

7. Specify the type of database platform.

   Enter DB2ODBC for DB2 for z/OS or ORACLE.

   ```
   Enter the PeopleSoft database platform [ORACLE]:
   ```

8. Specify whether you want a Unicode database.

   ```
   Is the PeopleSoft database unicode? [Y|n]:
   ```

9. Enter the database name.

   ```
   Enter the PeopleSoft database name:
   ```

10. Enter the database service name.

    The default is the same as the database name. Do not enter an IP address.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database service name [PSFT92DB]:
    ```

11. Enter the name of the host where the database is installed.

Do not enter an IP address.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database host name:
```

12. Enter the database listener port number:

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database port [1521]:
```

13. Enter the PeopleSoft Connect ID at the following prompt:

    The default is people.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people]:
```

14. Enter a password for the PeopleSoft Connect ID, and enter again on the next line, at the following prompt.

    See E-DPK - Password restrictions are not reflected in the DPK setup script prompts, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2639270.1.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people] password.
Ensure that the password meets the length and complexity requirements
for your database platform:
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID password:
```

15. Enter the PeopleSoft user ID (operator ID), such as PS or VP1.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [VP1]:
```

16. Enter the password twice for the PeopleSoft operator ID.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [VP1] password.
Ensure that the password is between 1 and 32 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID password:
```

17. Enter the Application Server Domain Connection password, following the guidelines in the prompt.

Note. This is an optional password. If no password is entered, the connection between Web Server and Application Server will not be password protected.

```
[Optional] Enter a new Application Server Domain connection password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the Application Server Domain connection password:
```

18. Enter *y* to continue with the script.

```
Are you happy with your answers? [y|n]: y
Encrypting the Passwords in the User Data:                  [  OK  ]
Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files with User Data:        [  OK  ]
```

19. If you want to continue running the initialization script using the default configuration, answer *y* (yes) to the following prompt, and continue with the next step.

    If you want to customize the PeopleSoft environment using the Puppet YAML files, answer *n* (no) to stop the script.

```
The bootstrap script is ready to deploy and configure the PeopleSoft
environment using the default configuration defined in the Puppet
Hiera YAML files. You can proceed by answering 'y' at the following
prompt. And, if you want to customize the environment by overriding
```

```
the default configuration, you can answer 'n'. If you answer 'n', you
should follow the instructions in the PeopleSoft Installation Guide
for creating the customization Hiera YAML file and running the Puppet
'apply' command directly to continue with the setup of the PeopleSoft
environment

Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]:
```

20. Review the status messages as the script runs Puppet profiles to set up the PeopleSoft environment.

    A message of [OK] indicates that the profile has been applied successfully while a message [FAILED] indicates that the profile application failed.

    Upon successful completion, the DPK setup script displays the following message:

    ```
    The PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process Ended.
    ```

The setup.log is written to the file <*USER_HOME*>/psft_dpk_work/psft_dpk_setup_<*PID*>.log, where <*USER_HOME*> is the home directory for the user running the script, and <PID> is a process ID.

Task 2-10: Running the DPK Setup Script to Deploy a PIA Domain

This section discusses:

- Understanding the PIA Domain Deployment
- Prerequisites for the PIA Domain Deployment
- Running the DPK Setup Script for the PIA Domain Deployment on Microsoft Windows
- Running the DPK Setup Script for the PIA Domain Deployment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as the Root User
- Running the DPK Setup Script for the PIA Domain Deployment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as a Non-Root User

Understanding the PIA Domain Deployment

Use these instructions to set up a PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture (PIA) domain only, for example to install on a host separate from the database.

The PIA domain deployment includes the following:

- *PS_HOME* installed to the default location under the DPK base directory
- *PS_CFG_HOME* installed to the default location
- Oracle Tuxedo installed to the default location under the DPK base directory
- Oracle WebLogic installed to the default location under the DPK base directory
- PIA domain is installed and running.
- The Microsoft Windows DPKs include Microsoft Visual C++ Redistributable Packages for Visual Studio, which include required Microsoft C++ runtime libraries

See Also

"Using and Maintaining the PeopleSoft Environment," Using the PeopleSoft Installation

Prerequisites for the PIA Domain Deployment

Review the following item to prepare for the PIA domain deployment:

- Before beginning the PIA domain deployment, ensure that Application Server and Process Scheduler domains are available.
- Ensure that you fulfill the items in the Prerequisites section in the task Running the DPK Setup Script for Mid-Tier Deployment.
- If you are installing on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, see the information about running as non-root in the section Reviewing the DPK Setup Script Options.
- If your environment includes separate hosts for the PIA domain and the Application Server domain, you must use customizations to designate the application server that the PIA domain will access.

  See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations," Reviewing the Customization File for a PIA Domain on a Separate Host.

The script requires the following information:

- Database platform type
- Database name
- Database host name
- Database port
- Unicode or non-Unicode
- PeopleSoft Connect ID and password
- PeopleSoft operator ID and password
- Application Server Domain Connection password (optional)
- PeopleSoft Web profile user (PTWEBSERVER) password
- WebLogic server administrator password
- Integration Gateway administrator user and password
- Integration Gateway keystore password
- Application Server Domain Connections string
- Process Scheduler Domain Server Name

Task 2-10-1: Running the DPK Setup Script for the PIA Domain Deployment on Microsoft Windows

This procedure to deploy a single PIA domain assumes that you have obtained the four PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPK zip files and saved them in *DPK_INSTALL.*

Note. Some of the informational script messages have been omitted for brevity.

---

1. Extract the first zip file *(FILENAME*_1of*n*.zip).

   Note. It is a good idea to extract into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, *DPK_INSTALL.*

   The extraction creates the *DPK_INSTALL/*setup folder and other files.
2. Open a command prompt with Run as Administrator.

3. Change directory to *DPK_INSTALL*/setup.
4. Run the script as follows:

Note. If you see an error message similar to "The application has failed to start because its side-by-side configuration is incorrect," it indicates that your machine does not include the necessary Microsoft C++ runtime libraries. Go to the Microsoft Web site, locate the Microsoft Visual C++ redistributable package for your system, and install as directed.

- If you extracted the first zip file into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, use this command:

  ```
  psft-dpk-setup.bat --env_type midtier --domain_type pia
  ```

- If you extracted the first zip file into a different directory, include the option `dpk_src_dir` to specify the location of the downloaded zip files, such as *DPK_INSTALL*, as follows:

  ```
  psft-dpk-setup.bat --dpk_src_dir DPK_INSTALL --env_type midtier ⇒
  --domain_type pia
  ```

5. Specify whether to install the Puppet software if necessary at the next prompt.

   The script verifies if Puppet software is installed in the default location specified by the DPKs. If not, answer *y* (yes) to install the Puppet software and *n* to abort the PeopleSoft environment setup process. The default action (if nothing is entered at the prompt) is to install the software.

   If there is any error during the Puppet software installation, the script aborts the setup process.

   ```
   Verifying if Puppet Software is Installed:

   Puppet Software is not installed on the Windows Host. If PeopleSoft
   environment needs to be setup on this Host, Puppet software
   should be Installed.

   Do you want to proceed with the Puppet Installation? [Y|n]: y

   Installing Puppet Software on the Windows Host:             [  OK  ]
   ```

6. At the following prompt, enter a location that is accessible to the host to be used as the PeopleSoft base directory, referred to here as *BASE_DIR*.

   The base directory is used to extract the DPKs as well as for deploying PeopleSoft components. The script creates the base directory if it does not exist.

   Use forward slashes only (/) when specifying the base directory; for example, C:/psft. Do not use a base directory name that begins with a number.

   ```
   The base folder is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs. It is also
   used to deploy the PeopleSoft components. This folder should be
   accessible on the Windows VM, must have write permissions and should
   have enough free space

   Enter the PeopleSoft Base Folder:
   Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]:
   ```

   The script validates if there is enough free space available under the specified base directory for the PeopleSoft environment. The PeopleSoft environment setup is aborted if there is not enough free space.

Note. A mid-tier setup of a PeopleSoft environment requires about 25 GB of disk space.

```
Checking if the Base Folder has Enough Free Space:          [  OK  ]
```

7. Specify the type of database platform.

   Enter MSSQL for Microsoft SQL Server, DB2ODBC for DB2 for z/OS, or ORACLE.

   ```
   Enter the PeopleSoft database platform [ORACLE]:
   ```

8. Specify whether you want a Unicode database.

   ```
   Is the PeopleSoft database unicode? [Y|n]:
   ```

9. Enter the database name.

   ```
   Enter the PeopleSoft database name:
   ```

10. Enter the database service name.

    The default is the same as the database name. Do not enter an IP address.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database service name [PSFT92DB]:
    ```

11. Enter the name of the host where the database is installed.

    Do not enter an IP address.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database host name:
    ```

12. Enter the database listener port number:

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database port [1521]:
    ```

13. Enter the PeopleSoft Connect ID at the following prompt:

    The default is people.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people]:
    ```

14. Enter a password for the PeopleSoft Connect ID, and enter again on the next line, at the following prompt.

    See E-DPK - Password restrictions are not reflected in the DPK setup script prompts, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2639270.1.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people] password.
    Ensure that the password meets the length and complexity requirements
    for your database platform:
    Re-Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID password:
    ```

15. Enter the PeopleSoft user ID (operator ID), such as PS or VP1.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [VP1]:
    ```

16. Enter the password twice for the PeopleSoft operator ID.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [VP1] password.
    Ensure that the password is between 1 and 32 characters in length.
    You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
    Re-Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID password:
    ```

17. Enter the Application Server Domain Connection password, following the guidelines in the prompt.

Note. This is an optional password. If no password is entered, the connection between Web Server and Application Server will not be password protected.

```
[Optional] Enter a new Application Server Domain connection password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the Application Server Domain connection password:
```

18. Enter the password for the PTWEBSERVER web profile user at the following prompt:

```
Enter a new PeopleSoft WebProfile user [PTWEBSERVER] password. Ensure
the password is between 8 and 32 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft WebProfile user password:
```

19. Enter the Oracle WebLogic Server Admin password, following the guidelines in the prompt.

    The default Oracle WebLogic server administrator is system. The window does not display masking characters as you type. There is no default password.

```
Enter a new WebLogic Server Admin user [system] password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length
with at least one lowercase letter and one uppercase letter. It must⇒
 also
contain one number or one of these special characters !@#$%^& :

Re-Enter the WebLogic Server Admin user password:
```

20. Enter the Integration Gateway user ID and password at the following prompt.

    The default user ID is administrator.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway user [administrator]:
Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway user [administrator] password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length:.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway user password:
```

21. Enter the Integration Gateway keystore password.

    You see this prompt beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.04.

    See the information on using the integrationGateway.properties file and configuring security in the Integration Broker product documentation.

    See *PeopleTools: Integration Broker Administration,* "Configuring Security and General Properties."

```
Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway Keystore password. Ensure
the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway Keystore password:
```

22. Enter the Application Server Domain Connection string, in the format *<Server_name>:<Port>*.

    To specify the Application Server Domain Connect string, enter the application server name and a colon, followed by the Jolt port that the PIA domain connects to. For example, **`psftserver:9000`**.

    See *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration,* "Configuring Jolt Failover and Load Balancing."

    See *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration,* "Configuring SSL for Workstation Listener and Jolt Listener."

```
Enter the Application Server Domain Connections String:
```

23. Enter the name of the server with the Process Scheduler domain.

```
Enter the Process Scheduler Domain Server Name:
```

24. Enter *y* to continue with the script.

```
Are you happy with your answers? [y|n]: y
Encrypting the Passwords in the User Data:                  [  OK  ]
Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files with User Data:        [  OK  ]
```

25. If you want to continue running the initialization script using the default configuration, answer *y* (yes) to the following prompt, and continue with the next step.

    If you want to customize the PeopleSoft environment using the Puppet YAML files, answer *n* (no) to stop the script.

```
The bootstrap script is ready to deploy and configure the PeopleSoft
environment using the default configuration defined in the Puppet
Hiera YAML files. You can proceed by answering 'y' at the following
prompt. And, if you want to customize the environment by overriding
the default configuration, you can answer 'n'. If you answer 'n', you
should follow the instructions in the PeopleSoft Installation Guide
for creating the customization Hiera YAML file and running the Puppet
'apply' command directly to continue with the setup of the PeopleSoft
environment

Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]:
```

26. Review the status messages as the script runs Puppet profiles to set up the PeopleSoft environment.

    A message of [OK] indicates that the profile has been applied successfully while a message [FAILED] indicates that the profile application failed.

    Upon successful completion, the DPK setup script displays the following message:

```
The PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process Ended.
```

    The complete setup log is written to the file psft_dpk_setup.log in the same location as the DPK setup script.

Task 2-10-2: Running the DPK Setup Script for the PIA Domain Deployment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as the Root User

This procedure to deploy a single PIA domain assumes that you have obtained the four PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPK zip files and saved them in *DPK_INSTALL.*

Note. Some of the informational script messages have been omitted for brevity.

If you are installing the PeopleSoft environment as a non-root user, see the next section, Running the DPK Setup Script for the PIA Domain Deployment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as a Non-Root User

To deploy the domain:

1. Extract the first zip file *(FILENAME*_1of*n*.zip).

   Note. It is a good idea to extract into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, *DPK_INSTALL.*

   The extraction creates the *DPK_INSTALL/*setup folder and other files.

2. Open a terminal windows as root.
3. Change directory to *DPK_INSTALL/*setup.

4. Run the script as follows:

   - If you extracted the first zip file into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, use this command:

     ```
     ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --env_type midtier --domain_type pia
     ```

   - If you extracted the first zip file into a different directory, include the option `dpk_src_dir` to specify the location of the downloaded zip files, such as *DPK_INSTALL*, as follows:

     ```
     ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --dpk_src_dir DPK_INSTALL --env_type midtier ⇒
     --domain_type pia
     ```

5. Specify whether to install the Puppet software if necessary at the next prompt.

   The script verifies if Puppet software is installed in the default location specified by the DPKs. If not, answer *y* (yes) to install the Puppet software and *n* to abort the PeopleSoft environment setup process. The default action (if nothing is entered at the prompt) is to install the software.

   If there is any error during the Puppet software installation, the script aborts the setup process.

   ```
   Verifying if Puppet Software is Installed:

   Puppet Software is not installed on the Linux Host. If PeopleSoft
   environment needs to be setup on this Host, Puppet software
   should be Installed.

   Do you want to proceed with the Puppet Installation? [Y|n]: y

   Installing Puppet Software on the Linux Host:              [  OK  ]
   ```

6. At the following prompt, enter a location that is accessible to the host to be used as the PeopleSoft base directory, referred to here as *BASE_DIR*.

   The base directory is used to extract the DPKs as well as for deploying PeopleSoft components. The script creates the base directory if it does not exist.

   Use forward slashes only (/) when specifying the base directory; for example, /home/psft. Do not use a base directory name that begins with a number. Do not end the base directory name with a forward slash (for example, do not enter /ds1/psft/).

   ```
   The base directory is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs. It is also
   used to deploy the PeopleSoft components. This directory should be
   accessible on the Linux VM, must have write permissions and should
   have enough free space

   Enter the PeopleSoft Base Directory:
   Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]:
   ```

   The script validates if there is enough free space available under the specified base directory for the PeopleSoft environment. The PeopleSoft environment setup is aborted if there is not enough free space.

   Note. A mid-tier setup of a PeopleSoft environment requires about 25 GB of disk space.

   ```
   Checking if the Base Directory has Enough Free Space:          [  OK  ]
   ```

7. Specify a writable directory for the user home directory at the following prompt.

   You see this prompt beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.04.

   The PeopleSoft environment setup using DPKs creates local users on the host. These users deploy the

PeopleSoft components and own the PeopleSoft runtime domains. Enter a new location to be used for creating the home directories for these local users, or specify the default home directory, /home.

```
Enter a directory on the Linux VM that is writable [/home]: /ds1
Are you happy with your answer? [y|n|q]:
```

If the script finds that the location you enter (either a new location or the default) is not writable, it exits with the following message.

```
The User does not have write permission to create the user's home
directory under [<user input>] on the Linux VM.
Exiting the PeopleSoft environment setup process.
```

8. Specify the type of database platform.

   Enter DB2ODBC for DB2 for z/OS, or ORACLE.

   ```
   Enter the PeopleSoft database platform [ORACLE]:
   ```

9. Specify whether you want a Unicode database.

   ```
   Is the PeopleSoft database unicode? [Y|n]:
   ```

10. Enter the database name.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database name:
    ```

11. Enter the database service name.

    The default is the same as the database name. Do not enter an IP address.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database service name [PSFT92DB]:
    ```

12. Enter the name of the host where the database is installed.

    Do not enter an IP address.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database host name:
    ```

13. Enter the database listener port number:

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database port [1521]:
    ```

14. Enter the PeopleSoft Connect ID at the following prompt:

    The default is people.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people]:
    ```

15. Enter a password for the PeopleSoft Connect ID, and enter again on the next line, at the following prompt.

    See E-DPK - Password restrictions are not reflected in the DPK setup script prompts, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2639270.1.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people] password.
    Ensure that the password meets the length and complexity requirements
    for your database platform:
    Re-Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID password:
    ```

16. Enter the PeopleSoft user ID (operator ID), such as PS or VP1.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [VP1]:
    ```

17. Enter the password twice for the PeopleSoft operator ID.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [VP1] password.
Ensure the password is between 1 and 32 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID password:
```

18. Enter the Application Server Domain Connection password, following the guidelines in the prompt.

    Note. This is an optional password. If no password is entered, the connection between Web Server and Application Server will not be password protected.

```
[Optional] Enter a new Application Server Domain connection password.
Ensure the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the Application Server Domain connection password:
```

19. Enter the password for the PTWEBSERVER web profile user at the following prompt:

```
Enter a new PeopleSoft Web Profile user [PTWEBSERVER] password. Ensure
that the password is between 8 and 32 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Web Profile user password:
```

20. Enter the Oracle WebLogic Server Admin password, following the guidelines in the prompt.

    The default Oracle WebLogic server administrator is system. The window does not display masking characters as you type. There is no default password.

```
Enter a new WebLogic Server Admin user [system] password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length
with at least one lowercase letter and one uppercase letter. It must⇒
 also
contain one number or one of these special characters !@#$%^& :

Re-Enter the WebLogic Server Admin user password:
```

21. Enter the Integration Gateway user ID and password at the following prompt.

    The default user ID is administrator.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway user [administrator]:
Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway user [administrator] password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway user password:
```

22. Enter the Integration Gateway keystore password.

    You see this prompt beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.04.

    See the information on using the integrationGateway.properties file and configuring security in the Integration Broker product documentation.

    See *PeopleTools: Integration Broker Administration,* "Configuring Security and General Properties."

```
Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway Keystore password. Ensure
the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway Keystore password:
```

23. Enter the Application Server Domain Connection string, in the format *<Server_name>:<Port>*.

To specify the Application Server Domain Connect string, enter the application server name and a colon, followed by the Jolt port that the PIA domain connects to. For example, **psftserver:9000**.

See *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration*, "Configuring Jolt Failover and Load Balancing."

See *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration*, "Configuring SSL for Workstation Listener and Jolt Listener.."

```
Enter the Application Server Domain Connections String:
```

24. Enter the name of the server with the Process Scheduler domain.

```
Enter the Process Scheduler Domain Server Name:
```

25. Enter *y* to continue with the script.

```
Are you happy with your answers? [y|n]: y
Encrypting the Passwords in the User Data:                  [  OK  ]
Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files with User Data:        [  OK  ]
```

26. If you want to continue running the initialization script using the default configuration, answer *y* (yes) to the following prompt, and continue with the next step.

    If you want to customize the PeopleSoft environment using the Puppet YAML files, answer *n* (no) to stop the script.

```
The bootstrap script is ready to deploy and configure the PeopleSoft
environment using the default configuration defined in the Puppet
Hiera YAML files. You can proceed by answering 'y' at the following
prompt. And, if you want to customize the environment by overriding
the default configuration, you can answer 'n'. If you answer 'n', you
should follow the instructions in the PeopleSoft Installation Guide
for creating the customization Hiera YAML file and running the Puppet
'apply' command directly to continue with the setup of the PeopleSoft
environment

Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]:
```

27. Review the status messages as the script runs Puppet profiles to set up the PeopleSoft environment.

    A message of [OK] indicates that the profile has been applied successfully while a message [FAILED] indicates that the profile application failed.

    Upon successful completion, the DPK setup script displays the following message:

```
The PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process Ended.
```

    The complete setup log is written to the file psft_dpk_setup.log in the same location as the DPK setup script.

Task 2-10-3: Running the DPK Setup Script for the PIA Domain Deployment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as a Non-Root User

If you are installing the PeopleSoft environment as a non-root user, ensure that you fulfill the prerequisites in the section Deploying as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.

Note. Some of the informational script messages have been omitted for brevity.

To deploy the domain:

1. Open a terminal windows as a non-root user.

2. Change directory to *DPK_INSTALL*/setup.
3. Run the script as follows:
   - If you extracted the first zip file into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, use this command:

     ```
     ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --env_type midtier --domain_type pia
     ```

   - If you extracted the first zip file into a different directory, include the option `dpk_src_dir` to specify the location of the downloaded zip files, such as *DPK_INSTALL*, as follows:

     ```
     ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --dpk_src_dir DPK_INSTALL --env_type midtier ⇒
     --domain_type pia
     ```

4. Answer *y* (yes) at the following prompt:

   ```
   You are running DPK setup without root/administrator access.
   This is fine as long as the system administrator has performed
   all necessary tasks and all prerequisites have been met.
   Please see the documentation to determine the prerequite tasks
   that need to be performed to successfully run DPK set up
   without root/administrator privilege.

   Would you like to proceed with the setup as a non-root user? [y/n]: y
   ```

5. At the following prompt, enter a location that is accessible to the host to be used as the PeopleSoft base directory, referred to here as *BASE_DIR*.

   The base directory is used to extract the DPKs as well as for deploying PeopleSoft components. The script creates the base directory if it does not exist.

   Use forward slashes only (/) when specifying the base directory; for example, /home/psft. Do not use a base directory name that begins with a number. Do not end the base directory name with a forward slash (for example, do not enter /ds1/psft/).

   ```
   The base directory is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs. It is also
   used to deploy the PeopleSoft components. This directory should be
   accessible on the Linux VM, must have write permissions and should
   have enough free space

   Enter the PeopleSoft Base Directory:
   Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]:
   ```

   The script validates if there is enough free space available under the specified base directory for the PeopleSoft environment. The PeopleSoft environment setup is aborted if there is not enough free space.

   Note. A mid-tier setup of a PeopleSoft environment requires about 25 GB of disk space.

   ```
   Checking if the Base Folder has Enough Free Space:          [  OK  ]
   ```

6. Enter a writable directory with at least 10 GB available space for *PS_CFG_HOME*.

   The default is *USER_HOME*/psft/pt/8.58, where *USER_HOME* is the home directory for the logged-in user. The *PS_CFG_HOME* directory holds the configuration and log files for the PeopleSoft Application Server, Process Scheduler, and PIA domains.

   ```
   Enter a writable ps_config_home directory for PeopleSoft domains
   with at least 10.0GB space [/home/psftuser/psft/pt/8.58]:
   Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]: y
   ```

7. Specify the type of database platform.

   Enter DB2ODBC for DB2 for z/OS or ORACLE.

   ```
   Enter the PeopleSoft database platform [ORACLE]:
   ```

8. Specify whether you want a Unicode database.

   ```
   Is the PeopleSoft database unicode? [Y|n]:
   ```

9. Enter the database name.

   ```
   Enter the PeopleSoft database name:
   ```

10. Enter the database service name.

    The default is the same as the database name. Do not enter an IP address.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database service name [PSFT92DB]:
    ```

11. Enter the name of the host where the database is installed.

    Do not enter an IP address.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database host name:
    ```

12. Enter the database listener port number:

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database port [1521]:
    ```

13. Enter the PeopleSoft Connect ID at the following prompt:

    The default is people.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people]:
    ```

14. Enter a password for the PeopleSoft Connect ID, and enter again on the next line, at the following prompt.

    See E-DPK - Password restrictions are not reflected in the DPK setup script prompts, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2639270.1.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people] password.
    Ensure that the password meets the length and complexity requirements
    for your database platform:
    Re-Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID password:
    ```

15. Enter the PeopleSoft user ID (operator ID), such as PS or VP1.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [VP1]:
    ```

16. Enter the password twice for the PeopleSoft operator ID.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [VP1] password.
    Ensure that the password is between 1 and 32 characters in length.
    You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
    Re-Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID password:
    ```

17. Enter the Application Server Domain Connection password, following the guidelines in the prompt.

    Note. This is an optional password. If no password is entered, the connection between Web Server and Application Server will not be password protected.

    ```
    [Optional] Enter a new Application Server Domain connection password.
    Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
    ```

```
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the Application Server Domain connection password:
```

18. Enter the password for the PTWEBSERVER web profile user at the following prompt:

```
Enter a new PeopleSoft Web Profile user [PTWEBSERVER] password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 32 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Web Profile user password:
```

19. Enter the Oracle WebLogic Server Admin password, following the guidelines in the prompt.

    The default Oracle WebLogic server administrator is system. The window does not display masking characters as you type. There is no default password.

```
Enter a new WebLogic Server Admin user [system] password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length
with at least one lowercase letter and one uppercase letter. It must⇒
 also
contain one number or one of these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the WebLogic Server Admin user password:
```

20. Enter the Integration Gateway user ID and password at the following prompt.

    The default user ID is administrator.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway user [administrator]:
Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway user [administrator] password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway user password:
```

21. Enter the Integration Gateway keystore password.

    You see this prompt beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.04.

    See the information on using the integrationGateway.properties file and configuring security in the Integration Broker product documentation.

    See *PeopleTools: Integration Broker Administration,* "Configuring Security and General Properties."

```
Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway Keystore password. Ensure
the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway Keystore password:
```

22. Enter the Application Server Domain Connection string, in the format *<Server_name>:<Port>*.

    To specify the Application Server Domain Connect string, enter the application server name and a colon, followed by the Jolt port that the PIA domain connects to. For example, **`psftserver:9000`**.

    See *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration,* "Configuring Jolt Failover and Load Balancing."

    See *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration,* "Configuring SSL for Workstation Listener and Jolt Listener.."

```
Enter the Application Server Domain Connections String:
```

23. Enter the name of the server with the Process Scheduler domain.

```
Enter the Process Scheduler Domain Server Name:
```

24. Enter *y* to continue with the script.

```
Are you happy with your answers? [y|n]: y
Encrypting the Passwords in the User Data:                  [  OK  ]
Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files with User Data:        [  OK  ]
```

25. If you want to continue running the initialization script using the default configuration, answer *y* (yes) to the following prompt, and continue with the next step.

    If you want to customize the PeopleSoft environment using the Puppet YAML files, answer *n* (no) to stop the script.

    ```
    The bootstrap script is ready to deploy and configure the PeopleSoft
    environment using the default configuration defined in the Puppet
    Hiera YAML files. You can proceed by answering 'y' at the following
    prompt. And, if you want to customize the environment by overriding
    the default configuration, you can answer 'n'. If you answer 'n', you
    should follow the instructions in the PeopleSoft Installation Guide
    for creating the customization Hiera YAML file and running the Puppet
    'apply' command directly to continue with the setup of the PeopleSoft
    environment

    Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]:
    ```

26. Review the status messages as the script runs Puppet profiles to set up the PeopleSoft environment.

    A message of [OK] indicates that the profile has been applied successfully while a message [FAILED] indicates that the profile application failed.

    Upon successful completion, the DPK setup script displays the following message:

    ```
    The PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process Ended.
    ```

The setup.log is written to the file <*USER_HOME*>/psft_dpk_work/psft_dpk_setup_<*PID*>.log, where <*USER_HOME*> is the home directory for the non-root user running the script, and <PID> is a process ID.

Task 2-11: Running the DPK Setup Script to Install PS_HOME Only

This section discusses:

- Understanding the PS_HOME Deployment
- Installing PS_HOME Only on Microsoft Windows
- Installing PS_HOME Only on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris

Understanding the PS_HOME Deployment

Use these instructions to install the *PS_HOME* installation folder, which includes the PeopleSoft PeopleTools server utilities. Use this deployment, for example, to get the tools needed to carry out database creation. The *PS_HOME* deployment includes the following:

- *PS_HOME* installed to *BASE_DIR*/pt/ps_home8.58.xx by default.
- The Microsoft Windows DPKs include Microsoft Visual C++ Redistributable Packages for Visual Studio, which include required Microsoft C++ runtime libraries
- PeopleTools utilities and scripts including:

  - *PS_HOME/*appserv/PSADMIN.exe
  - *PS_HOME/*bin/client/winx86/pscfg.exe (Configuration Manager)
  - *PS_HOME/*bin/client/winx86/psdmt.exe (Data Mover)
  - *PS_HOME/*bin/client/winx86/pside.exe (Application Designer)
  - *PS_HOME/*scripts
  - Other PeopleTools utilities
- Setup utilities including:
  - *PS_HOME/*setup/PsMpPIAInstall (PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture installer)
  - *PS_HOME/*setup/PsMpDbInstall (Database installer)
  - *PS_HOME/*setup/PsCA (Change Assistant installer)
  - *PS_HOME/*setup/PsCIA (Change Impact Analyzer installer)
  - *PS_HOME/*setup/PsMpWebAppDeployInstall (Web Application Deployment installer)

Task 2-11-1: Installing PS_HOME Only on Microsoft Windows

This procedure assumes you have obtained the four PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPK zip files and saved them in *DPK_INSTALL.* To use the DPK setup script to install *PS_HOME* only:

1. Extract the first zip file *(FILENAME*_1of4.zip) in the same directory, *DPK_INSTALL*.

   The extraction creates the *DPK_INSTALL/*setup folder and other files.

   See Obtaining the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPK for the DPK file name syntax.
2. Open a command prompt with Run as Administrator.
3. Change directory to *DPK_INSTALL/*setup.
4. Run the script with the options for mid-tier and deployment only.

   Note. If you see an error message similar to "The application has failed to start because its side-by-side configuration is incorrect," it indicates that your machine does not include the necessary Microsoft C++ runtime libraries. Go to the Microsoft Web site, locate the Microsoft Visual C++ redistributable package for your system, and install as directed.

   ```
   psft-dpk-setup.bat --env_type midtier --deploy_only --deploy_type ⇒
   tools_home
   ```
5. Wait while the script locates the valid PeopleSoft zip files and extracts them.

   The system displays messages indicating the steps in the setup process. The success or failure of each step is indicated by [OK] or [FAILED].

   The script locates the valid PeopleSoft zip files and extracts them. After it completes the extraction, it deletes the original downloaded zip files.

   ```
   Starting the PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process:

   Extracting the Zip File FILENAME_1of4.zip:    [  OK  ]
   Extracting the Zip File FILENAME_2of4.zip:    [  OK  ]
   Extracting the Zip File FILENAME_3of4.zip:    [  OK  ]
   Extracting the Zip File FILENAME_4of4.zip:    [  OK  ]
   ```
6. Specify whether to install the Puppet software if necessary at the next prompt.

The script verifies if Puppet software is installed in the default location specified by the DPKs. If not, answer *y* (yes) to install the Puppet software and *n* to abort the PeopleSoft environment setup process. The default action (if nothing is entered at the prompt) is to install the software.

If there is any error during the Puppet software installation, the script aborts the setup process.

```
Validating User Arguments:                                [  OK  ]
Validating PeopleSoft Supported Platform:                 [  OK  ]
Verifying if Puppet Software is Installed on the Host:

Puppet Software is not installed on the Host. If this Host is
used to setup a PeopleSoft environment, Puppet Software should
be Installed.

Do you want to Install Puppet Software on this Host? [Y|n]: y

Installing Puppet Software on the Host:                   [  OK  ]
```

The script verifies if the DPKs are available in *DPK_INSTALL*, and aborts with the message [FAILED] if they are not.

```
Checking if PeopleSoft DPKs are Present:                  [  OK  ]
```

7. At the following prompt, enter a location that is accessible to the host to be used as the PeopleSoft base directory.

   The base directory is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs as well as for deploying PeopleSoft components.

   Note. When entering the path for the base directory, use forward slashes (/). For example, `C:/psft`. Do not use a name for the base folder that begins with a number.

```
The base folder is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs. It is also
used to deploy the PeopleSoft components. This folder should be
accessible on the Windows VM, must have write permissions and should
have enough free space

Enter the PeopleSoft Base Folder: [C:/psft]
Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]:
```

   The script validates if there is enough free space available under the specified base directory for the PeopleSoft environment. The PeopleSoft environment setup is aborted if there is not enough free space.

   Note. A mid-tier setup of a PeopleSoft environment requires about 25 GB of disk space.

```
Checking if the Base Folder has Enough Free Space:        [  OK  ]
```

   The script creates the following three sub-directories under the user provided base directory, *BASE_DIR*:

   - *BASE_DIR*\dpk

     The script uses this directory to extract the archives from the PeopleSoft DPKs.

   - *BASE_DIR*\pt

     The script uses this directory to deploy PeopleSoft PeopleTools.

   - *BASE_DIR*\db

     This directory is not used for this deployment.

8. Review the status messages as the script validates the files found in DPK_INSTALL and extracts the archives

from the DPKs.

The script carries out validations for the mid-tier deployment. If any of the validations fail, the PeopleSoft environment setup is aborted.

Note. The messages have been truncated for brevity.

```
Validating the PeopleSoft DPKs in the Folder:
[...]
Extracting the Peoplesoft DPK Archives in Windows VM:
[...]
```

9. Review the status messages as the script sets up the Puppet file system.

   The script sets up Puppet on the host. It then copies the PeopleSoft Puppet modules to the standard location (*BASE_DIR*\dpk) and updates the YAML files to reflect the type of PeopleSoft environment setup.

   ```
   Setting up Puppet on the Windows VM:
   Generating eYAML Hiera Backend Encryption Keys:              [  OK  ]
   Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files in the Windows VM:      [  OK  ]
   Updating the Role in Puppet Site File for the Windows VM:    [  OK  ]
   ```

10. Specify the information for your database platform.

    a. For the database platform, enter ORACLE, MSSQL (Microsoft SQL Server), or DB2ODBC (DB2 for z/OS).

       ```
       Enter the PeopleSoft database platform [ORACLE]:
       ```

    b. Enter *y* (yes) to indicate that the database you will connect to is a Unicode database.

       Note. All PeopleSoft Update Image databases are required to be Unicode.

       ```
       Is the PeopleSoft database unicode? [Y|n]: y
       ```

11. Enter y to continue with the script.

    ```
    Are you happy with your answers? [y|n]: y
    Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files with User Data:       [  OK  ]
    ```

12. If you want to continue running the initialization script using the default configuration, answer *y* (yes) to the following prompt, and continue with the next step.

    If you want to customize the PeopleSoft environment using the Puppet YAML files, answer *n* (no) to stop the script.

    ```
    The bootstrap script is ready to deploy and configure the PeopleSoft
    environment using the default configuration defined in the Puppet
    Hiera YAML files. You can proceed by answering 'y' at the following
    prompt. And, if you want to customize the environment by overriding
    the default configuration, you can answer 'n'. If you answer 'n', you
    should follow the instructions in the PeopleSoft Installation Guide
    for creating the customization Hiera YAML file and running the Puppet
    'apply' command directly to continue with the setup of the PeopleSoft
    environment

    Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]:
    ```

13. Review the status messages as the script runs Puppet profiles to set up the PeopleSoft environment.

A message of [OK] indicates that the profile has been applied successfully while a message [FAILED] indicates that the profile application failed.

The script stops and exits the first time a profile application fails, and displays an error message. This example shows the error message after the step to set up the PeopleSoft OS Users environment failed:

```
Starting the Default Initialization of PeopleSoft Environment:

Deploying PeopleTools Components:                          [FAILED]
The initialization of PeopleSoft environment setup failed. Check the
log file [C:\DPK_INSTALL\setup\psft_dpk_setup.log] for the errors.
After correcting the errors, run the following script to continue
with the setup of PeopleSoft environemnt.

Start a cmd window as Administrator and run C:\psft\psft_puppet_⇒
apply.cmd

Exiting the PeopleSoft environment setup process.
```

See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations."

Upon successful completion, the DPK setup script displays the following message:

```
Starting the Default Initialization of PeopleSoft Environment:

Deploying PeopleTools Components:                          [  OK  ]
Setting up PeopleSoft OS Users Environment:                [  OK  ]

The PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process Ended.
```

The complete setup log is written to the file psft_dpk_setup.log in the same location as the DPK setup script.

Task 2-11-2: Installing PS_HOME Only on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris

This procedure assumes you have obtained the four PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPK zip files and saved them in *DPK_INSTALL*.

If you are installing the PeopleSoft environment as a non-root user, ensure that you fulfill the prerequisites in the section Deploying as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.

To use the DPK setup script to install *PS_HOME* only:

1. Extract the first zip file *(FILENAME*_1of4.zip) in the same directory, *DPK_INSTALL*.

   The extraction creates the *DPK_INSTALL/*setup folder and other files.

   See Obtaining the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs for the DPK file name syntax.
2. Open a terminal window and change directory to *DPK_INSTALL/*setup.
3. As a user with root access, run the script with the options for mid-tier and deployment only.

   ```
   psft-dpk-setup.sh --env_type midtier --deploy_only --deploy_type tools_⇒
   home
   ```
4. Wait while the script locates the valid PeopleSoft zip files and extracts them.

   The system displays messages indicating the steps in the setup process. The success or failure of each step is indicated by [OK] or [FAILED].

   ```
   Starting the PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process:
   ```

```
Extracting the Zip File FILENAME_1of4.zip:    [  OK  ]
Extracting the Zip File FILENAME_2of4.zip:    [  OK  ]
Extracting the Zip File FILENAME_3of4.zip:    [  OK  ]
Extracting the Zip File FILENAME_4of4.zip:    [  OK  ]
```

5. Specify whether to install the Puppet software if necessary at the next prompt.

   The script verifies if Puppet software is installed in the default location specified by the DPKs. If not, answer *y* (yes) to install the Puppet software and *n* to abort the PeopleSoft environment setup process. The default action (if nothing is entered at the prompt) is to install the software.

   If there is any error during the Puppet software installation, the script aborts the setup process.

```
Validating User Arguments:                                  [  OK  ]
Validating PeopleSoft Supported Platform:                   [  OK  ]
Verifying if Puppet Software is Installed on the Host:

Puppet Software is not installed on the Host. If this Host is
used to setup a PeopleSoft environment, Puppet Software should
be Installed.

Do you want to Install Puppet Software on this Host? [Y|n]: y

Installing Puppet Software on the Host:                     [  OK  ]
```

   The script verifies if the DPKs are available in *DPK_INSTALL,* and aborts with the message [FAILED] if they are not.

```
Preparing the Linux VM for PeopleSoft Environment:

Checking if PeopleSoft DPKs are Present:                    [  OK  ]
```

6. At the following prompt, enter a location that is accessible to the host to be used as the PeopleSoft base directory.

   The base directory is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs as well as for deploying PeopleSoft components.

Note. When entering the path for the base directory, use forward slashes (/). For example, `/cs1/psft`. Do not use a name for the base folder that begins with a number. Do not end the base directory name with a forward slash (for example, do not enter /ds1/psft/).

```
The base folder is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs as
well as for deploying PeopleSoft Components. This folder should be
accessible on the host, has write permission, and has enough free
spaceThe base folder is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs. It is also
used to deploy the PeopleSoft components. This folder should be
accessible on the Linux VM, must have write permissions and should
have enough free space.
.
Enter the PeopleSoft Base Folder [/opt/oracle/psft]:
Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]:
```

   The script validates if there is enough free space available under the specified base directory for the PeopleSoft environment. The PeopleSoft environment setup is aborted if there is not enough free space.

```
Checking if the Base Filesystem has Enough Free Space:      [  OK  ]
```

   The script creates the following three sub-directories under the user provided base directory, *BASE_DIR*:

- *BASE_DIR*/dpk

  The script uses this directory to extract the archives from the PeopleSoft DPKs.

- *BASE_DIR*/pt

  The script uses this directory to deploy PeopleSoft PeopleTools.

- *BASE_DIR*/db

  This directory is not used for this deployment.

7. Review the status messages as the script validates the files found in DPK_INSTALL and extracts the archives from the DPKs.

   The script carries out validations for the mid-tier deployment. If any of the validations fail, the PeopleSoft environment setup is aborted.

   Note. The messages have been truncated for brevity.

   ```
   Validating the PeopleSoft DPKs in the Folder:
   [...]
   Extracting the DPK Archives in the VM:
   [...]
   ```

8. Review the status messages as the script sets up the Puppet file system.

   The script sets up Puppet on the host. It then copies the PeopleSoft Puppet modules to the standard location *(BASE_DIR*/dpk) and updates the YAML files to reflect the type of PeopleSoft environment setup.

   ```
   Setting up Puppet on the VM:
   Generating eYAML Hiera Backend Encryption Keys:              [  OK  ]
   Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files in the Linux VM:        [  OK  ]
   Updating the Role in Puppet Site File for the Linux VM:      [  OK  ]
   ```

9. Specify the information for your database platform.

   a. For the database platform, enter ORACLE or DB2ODBC (DB2 for z/OS).

      ```
      Enter the PeopleSoft database platform [ORACLE]:
      ```

   b. Enter *y* (yes) to indicate that the database you are connecting to is a Unicode database.

      Note. All PeopleSoft Update Image databases are required to be Unicode.

      ```
      Is the PeopleSoft database unicode? [Y|n]: y
      ```

10. Enter y to continue with the script.

    ```
    Are you happy with your answers? [y|n]: y
    Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files with User Data:       [  OK  ]
    ```

11. If you want to continue running the initialization script using the default configuration, answer *y* (yes) to the following prompt, and continue with the next step.

    If you want to customize the PeopleSoft environment using the Puppet YAML files, answer *n* (no) to stop the script.

    ```
    The bootstrap script is ready to deploy and configure the PeopleSoft
    environment using the default configuration defined in the Puppet
    Hiera YAML files. You can proceed by answering 'y' at the following
    prompt. And, if you want to customize the environment by overriding
    ```

```
the default configuration, you can answer 'n'. If you answer 'n', you
should follow the instructions in the PeopleSoft Installation Guide
for creating the customization Hiera YAML file and running the Puppet
'apply' command directly to continue with the setup of the PeopleSoft
environment

Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]:
```

12. Review the status messages as the script runs Puppet profiles to set up the PeopleSoft environment.

    A message of [OK] indicates that the profile has been applied successfully while a message [FAILED] indicates that the profile application failed.

    The script stops and exits the first time a profile application fails, and displays an error message. This example shows the error message after the first step failed:

```
Starting the Default Initialization of PeopleSoft Environment:

Deploying PeopleTools Components:                          [FAILED]
The initialization of PeopleSoft environment setup failed. Check the
log file [/opt/DPK_INSTALL/setup/psft_dpk_setup.log] for the errors.
After correcting the errors, run the following commands to continue
with the setup of PeopleSoft environment.

From the shell, run /opt/oracle/psft/psft_puppet_apply.sh

Exiting the PeopleSoft environment setup process.
```

    See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations."

    Upon successful completion, the DPK setup script displays the following message:

```
Starting the Default Initialization of PeopleSoft Environment:

Deploying PeopleTools Components:                          [  OK  ]
Setting up PeopleSoft OS Users Environment:                [  OK  ]

The PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process Ended.
```

    The complete setup log is written to the file psft_dpk_setup.log in the same location as the DPK setup script.

    If you are running as a non-root user, the setup.log is written to the file <*USER_HOME*>/psft_dpk_work/psft_dpk_setup_<*PID*>.log, where <*USER_HOME*> is the home directory for the user running the script, and <PID> is a process ID

Task 2-12: Deploying the PeopleTools Client DPK

This section discusses:

- Understanding the Standalone Mode Deployment
- Preparing for the PeopleTools Client DPK Deployment
- Deploying in Standalone Mode

Task 2-12-1: Understanding the Standalone Mode Deployment

Use the standalone mode (SA mode) deployment for the PeopleTools Client DPK when deploying the DPK alone, without first deploying the PeopleSoft application or PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs. Use this method, for example, when carrying out a PeopleTools-only upgrade, or to install Change Assistant or one of the other utilities.

Install the PeopleTools Client DPK on a Microsoft Windows host that is certified for PeopleTools client installation.

Use SA mode deployment for the following tasks:

- PeopleTools Upgrade

  The deployment process installs a PeopleTools client *PS_HOME* that includes the directories needed for a PeopleSoft PeopleTools-only upgrade, such as data, projects, and scripts directories.

- PeopleTools Patch

  The deployment process installs a PeopleTools client *PS_HOME* that includes the directories needed for a PeopleSoft PeopleTools patch application, such as the PTP directory.

  See "Learning About the PeopleSoft Deployment Process," Reviewing the PeopleTools Patch DPKs.

- PeopleTools Client

  The deployment process installs a PeopleTools client *PS_HOME*. Choose the deployment type "None of the above" for this deployment.

- Change Assistant installation

  You can install Change Assistant as part of the PeopleTools Client deployment, or as a separate installation. The deployment process installs, but does not configure Change Assistant. To use Change Assistant for a PeopleSoft PeopleTools-only upgrade or to apply a PeopleSoft PeopleTools patch, you must configure Change Assistant manually. See the PeopleTools upgrade or patch documentation for information.

  If there is an existing Change Assistant installation, the deployment process removes or upgrades it to the current release, and saves a configuration file with the existing setup.

- Change Impact Analyzer

  You can install Change Impact Analyzer as part of the PeopleTools Client deployment, or as a separate installation.

- PeopleSoft Test Framework (PTF) installation

  You can install PeopleSoft Test Framework as part of the PeopleTools Client deployment, or as a separate installation.

- PeopleSoft Test Framework (PTF) configuration

  If you choose to configure PTF, the deployment process prompts you for setup parameters. You can configure PTF either at the same time that you install it or later. For example, you may choose to configure PTF separately if you install and configure it first, and then later the middle-tier components in your environment change. In this case, you do not need to install, but you can use the deployment process to reconfigure PTF.

- Configuration Manager

  If you accept the option to configure the PeopleTools client, the information that you supply is used to configure Configuration Manager.

- The PeopleTools Client deployment installs Microsoft Visual C++ Redistributable Packages for Visual Studio, which include required Microsoft C++ runtime libraries.

In addition to the Standalone Mode deployment described in this section, it is possible to deploy the PeopleTools Client in Update Manager mode, if you installed using the PUM installation type.

See *PeopleSoft Deployment Packages for Update Images Installation (PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.59)*.

Task 2-12-2: Preparing for the PeopleTools Client DPK Deployment

To obtain and extract the PeopleTools Client DPK:

1. Go to the download location for the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs, and download only the last zip file to a location known as *DPK_INSTALL* on a Microsoft Windows computer.

   The last zip file, for example *Filename*_4of4.zip, is the PeopleSoft PeopleTools client DPK.

   See Obtaining the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Patch DPKs, for the filename syntax of the DPK zip files.
2. Extract the downloaded zip file, which yields another zip file.
3. Extract the resulting zip file to a local or shared directory; for example C:\tools-client.

Task 2-12-3: Deploying in Standalone Mode

This section assumes that the user running the script has administrative permission.

To deploy the PeopleTools Client DPK in SA mode:

1. Verify that the Microsoft Windows folders options are set to show known file extensions.

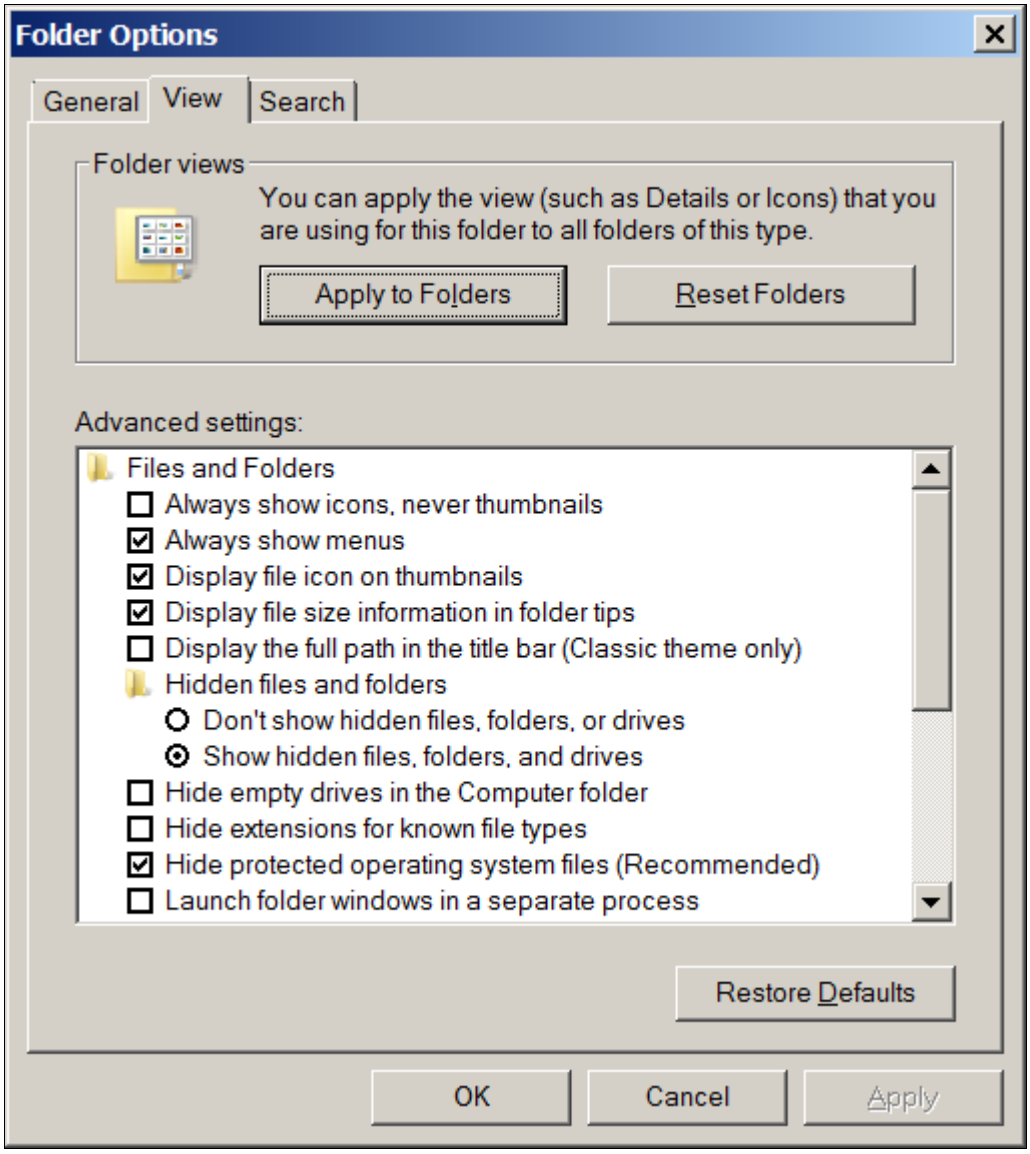
   Hidden file extensions may interfere with the script. To show file extensions, for example:

   a. Open Windows Explorer and select Tools, Folder Options.

      Note. Depending upon the Microsoft Windows operating system, you may use a different method to set the folder options.

   b. On the Folder Options dialog box, select the View tab.

c. Verify that the check box for Hide extensions for known file types is not selected, as shown in this example:



Folder Options dialog box: View tab

d. Click OK to close the box.

2. Open a command prompt, running as administrator, and change directory to the C:\tools_client folder.

   The tools_client folder includes various sub-folders, and the following files:

   - SetupPTClient.bat

     The interactive script that installs the PeopleSoft PeopleTools components such as Application Designer, Change Assistant, Change Impact Analyzer, and PeopleSoft Test Framework.

   - readme.txt

3. Run the setup script with the following command:

   ```
   SetupPTClient.bat -t
   ```

Note. If you see an error message similar to "The application has failed to start because its side-by-side configuration is incorrect," it indicates that your machine does not include the necessary Microsoft C++ runtime libraries. Go to the Microsoft Web site, locate the Microsoft Visual C++ redistributable package for your system, and install as directed.

- The setup script deploys to drive C by default. To deploy to a different drive, you can use the option `-d <drive>`:

  ```
  SetupPTClient.bat -t -d E
  ```

  This option installs all specified software (Change Assistant, Change Impact Analyzer, PeopleSoft Test Framework), installation and temporary directories, and log files to the specified drive, E:\ in this example. The drive can be any valid local or mapped shared drive.

- To enable logging, include the option `-l` in the command:

  ```
  SetupPTClient.bat -t -l
  ```

4. Answer *y* (yes) at the following prompt to deploy the PeopleTools Client.

   If you are running the script after having deployed the PeopleTools Client previously, and you want to install Change Assistant, Change Impact Analyzer, or PeopleSoft Test Framework without deploying the PeopleTools Client again, answer *n* (no), and continue with step 9.

   ```
   ****** SetupPTClient started at 11:42:38.91 ******
   set logger to true
    Do you want to deploy PeopleTools client? [Y/N]: y
   ```

5. Specify the RDBMS type for the PeopleTools Client that you want to deploy.

   In this example, the RDBMS is option *1,* Oracle.

   ```
    Please Select the Database Platform:
    1. Oracle
    2. Microsoft SQL Server
    3. DB2 for zOS
    Enter your choice [1-3] : 1
   ```

6. Specify the installation directory, referred to as PSHOME, for the PeopleTools Client, or press ENTER to accept the default directory, C:\PT<*release_number*>_Client_<*database_type*>, for example C:\PT8.58.02_Client_ORA.

   ```
   Please specify the PSHOME for the PeopleTools Client
   [C:\PT8.58.02_Client_ORA]:
   ```

7. Specify whether you want to supply configuration details at the following prompt.

   ```
   Do you want to configure PeopleTools client? [Y/N]:
   ```

   If you answer *n* (no), you do not want to configure the PeopleTools client, continue with step 9.

   If you answer *y* (yes), specify the information for your environment at the following prompts:

   ```
   Database Name: HCM92
   Server Name: example.com
   UserId: VP1
   Connect ID: people
   Connect Password:
   Retype Connect Password:
   ```

Note. When you enter the password, the script does not echo the password or any masking characters as you type.

- Specify the database name and database server to connect to.
- The connect ID a valid database-level ID that the PeopleSoft system uses to make the initial connection to the database.
- For User ID, specify a PeopleSoft user ID, such as VP1 or PS, that has permission to access the database from the PeopleTools client, Application Designer, and so on.

8. Select the type of deployment at the following prompt:

   See the definitions in Understanding the Standalone Mode Deployment.

```
Please make your selection for the Tools Client deployment:
 1. People Tools Full Upgrade
 2. People Tools Patch
 3. None of the above
 Enter your choice [1-3]:
```

9. Specify whether you want to install Change Assistant at the following prompt:

```
Do you want to install Change Assistant? [Y/N]:
```

   If you answer *y* (yes), specify the installation directory, or accept the default, C:\Program Files\PeopleSoft\Change Assistant:

```
Please specify the directory to install Change Assistant
[C:\Program Files\PeopleSoft\Change Assistant]:
```

10. Specify whether you want to install Change Impact Analyzer at the following prompt:

```
Do you want to install Change Impact Analyzer? [Y/N]:
```

    If you answer *y* (yes), specify the installation directory for Change Impact Analyzer, or accept the default, C:\Program Files\PeopleSoft\Change Impact Analyzer:

```
Please specify the directory to install Change Impact Analyzer
[C:\Program Files\PeopleSoft\Change Impact Analyzer]:
```

11. Specify whether you want to install PeopleSoft Test Framework at the following prompt:

```
Do you want to install PeopleSoft Test Framework? [Y/N]:
```

    If you answer *y* (yes), specify the installation directory for PeopleSoft Test Framework, or accept the default, C:\Program Files\PeopleSoft\PeopleSoft Test Framework:

```
Please specify the directory to install PeopleSoft Test Framework
[C:\Program Files\PeopleSoft\PeopleSoft Test Framework]:
```

12. Specify whether you want to configure the PeopleSoft Test Framework at the following prompt:

```
Do you want to configure PeopleSoft Test Framework? [Y/N]:
```

    If you answer *y* (yes), specify the information for your environment. For information on these parameters, see the PeopleTools Test Framework product documentation.

    See *PeopleTools: Test Framework*, "Installing a PTF Client."

```
Database Name: HCM92
Server:Port: example.com:443
```

```
Node ID: node_name
User ID: VP1
Proxy [Y/N]: y
Proxy Server: proxyserver.com
Proxy Port: 5000
Proxy User: username
Proxy Password:*******
Retype Proxy Password:*******
```

13. Review the setup steps.

    The messages you see depend upon your choices.

```
Starting Tools Client Deployment!
Deploying PeopleTools 8.58.02 Client in C:\PT8.58.02_Client_ORA
Configuring PeopleTools 8.58.02 Client
Deployment of PeopleTools Client Complete.
Tools Client Deployment Ended.
***** SetupPTClient ended at 11:35:08.91 ******
Please review C:\PeopleSoft\PTClientDeploy.log for additional⇒
 information.
```

14. To review the log file for the setup process, go to %USERPROFILE%\AppData\Local\Temp\PeopleSoft\PTClientDeploy.log.

    For example, if the USERPROFILE environment variable is C:\Users\username, the log file location is C:\Users\username\AppData\Local\Temp\PeopleSoft\PTClientDeploy.log.

Note. If you used the `-d <drive>` option to deploy to a drive other than drive C:\, the log file is found in <drive>:\Users\<username>\AppData\Local\Temp\PeopleSoft\PTClientDeploy.log and creates the directory if it does not exist.

The PTClientDeploy.log file includes a record of each of the steps in the PeopleTools Client deployment process. If any of the steps fail, a detailed error or warning message will be written to the same log file.

Chapter 3

Deploying the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Deployment Packages in Silent Mode

This chapter discusses:

- Understanding Silent Mode Installation
- Reviewing the Response File Sample for Mid-tier Installation
- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy an Application Server Domain
- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy a Process Scheduler Domain
- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy an Application Server and a Process Scheduler Domain
- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy a PIA Domain
- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Install PS_HOME Only
- Running the DPK Setup Script in Silent Mode for Default Initialization
- Running the DPK Setup Script in Silent Mode with Customizations
- Running the DPK Setup Script in Silent Mode for Default Initialization with use_alternate_puppet_install Option
- Running the DPK Setup Script in Silent Mode with Customizations and use_alternate_puppet_install Option

Understanding Silent Mode Installation

Use this section to perform a silent mode installation with the DPK setup script. In silent mode, you record the answers for the script prompts in a text file, called a response file. After you start the script and specify the response file location, no further interaction is required.

You can also run the DPK setup script in silent mode and specify a customizations file in addition to the response file. Use the examples in the chapter "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations" to create a customization file.

Note that some of the response file samples in this section include passwords. When creating the response file for silent mode installation, enter the passwords in clear text. If you are running a customized deployment, enter the passwords in clear text in the psft_customizations.yaml file. Do not enter encrypted passwords.

If you want to run as a non-root user on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, fulfill the requirements in the section Deploying as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris. Before you run the silent mode installation as a non-root user, the root user must run the DPK setup prereq step.

See "Installing the PeopleSoft Homes," Deploying as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.

Create your response file based on the samples in this section. The response file should include the values you would supply when running the DPK setup script interactively, and will vary depending upon the database platform and operating system.

The response files in this section include the following parameters:

- `env_type` — Specify midtier as the type of DPK deployment.
- `deploy_only` — Specify true for one of the special deployment options, such as to deploy only *PS_HOME*.
- `deploy_type` — Specify the type of deployment, as shown in the response file samples.
- `db_is_unicode` — Specify false if you want to install a non-Unicode database, or true to install a Unicode environment.

  The default setting is true. If you do not include the `db_is_unicode` parameter, the DPK setup script installs a Unicode environment.
- `psft_base_dir` — Enter an accessible location for the base folder, which is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs and for deploying PeopleSoft components.

  The script creates the folder if it is not present.

  For installation on Microsoft Windows, use forward slashes (/) for the base folder. For example, `C:/psft`. Enclose any names with special characters in double quotes. Do not use a name for the base folder that begins with a number.

  For installation on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, use forward slashes (/) for the base directory. For example, `/cs1/psft`. If the name includes any non-alphanumeric characters such as periods, enclose the name in double quotes. Do not use a name for the base directory that begins with a number. Do not end the base directory name with a forward slash (for example, do not enter /ds1/psft/).
- `user_home_dir` — On Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, if you are performing the deployment as the root user, enter a writable directory for the home directory for the script-created users (psadm1, psadm2, psadm3, oracle2, and esadm1).
- `user_config_home_dir` — On Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, if you are performing the deployment as a non-root user, enter a writable directory for the *PS_CFG_HOME* directory.

  If you do not include `user_config_home_dir` in the response file, it defaults to *USER_HOME/*psft.
- `db_platform` — Specify the database platform.

  Enter ORACLE, MSSQL (Microsoft SQL Server), or DB2ODBC (DB2 for z/OS).
- `db_name` — Enter the PeopleSoft database name.

  If the database name includes non-alphanumeric characters such as periods, enclose the name in double quotes. For example, "HCM.92".
- `db_service_name` — Enter the database service name.

  For the service name, enter the full name, including the domain, if the database was installed with the domain. Use forward slashes if necessary. If the service name includes non-alphanumeric characters such as periods, enclose the name in double quotes. For example, "HCM.92.example.com".
- `db_host` — Enter the name of the host where the database is installed.
- `db_port` — Enter the database port.
- `connect_id` — Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID.

  The default is people.
- `connect_pwd` — Enter the password for the Connect ID.

  Ensure the password meets the length and complexity requirements for your database platform.

  See E-DPK - Password restrictions are not reflected in the DPK setup script prompts, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2639270.1.

- `opr_id` — Enter the PeopleSoft operator ID, such as PS or VP1.
- `opr_pwd` — Enter the password for the operator ID.

  Ensure that the password is between 1 and 32 characters in length. You may include these special characters !@#$%^&.
- `domain_conn_pwd` — Enter the Application Server Domain Connection password.

  This is an optional password. If no password is entered, the connection between Web Server and Application Server will not be password protected.
- `weblogic_admin_pwd` — Enter the Oracle WebLogic Server Admin password.

  The default Oracle WebLogic server administrator is system. Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length with at least one lowercase letter, one uppercase letter and one number or one special character (!@#$%^&).
- `webprofile_user_id` — Enter the web profile user name.
- `webprofile_user_pwd` — Enter the password for the PTWEBSERVER web profile user.

  Ensure that the password is between 8 and 32 characters in length. You may include these special characters !@#$%^&.
- `gw_user_id` — Enter the Integration Gateway user ID.

  The default is administrator.
- `gw_user_pwd` — Enter the password for the Integration Gateway user.

  Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length. You may include these special characters !@#$%^&.
- `gw_keystore_pwd` — Enter the Integration Gateway keystore password.

  Ensure the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length. You may include these special characters !@#$%^&.

Task 3-1: Reviewing the Response File Sample for Mid-tier Installation

This section discusses:

- Reviewing the Response File Sample for Mid-tier Installation on Microsoft Windows
- Reviewing the Response File Sample for Mid-tier Installation as the Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris
- Reviewing the Response File Sample for Mid-tier Installation as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris

Task 3-1-1: Reviewing the Response File Sample for Mid-tier Installation on Microsoft Windows

Here is a sample response file for installing mid-tier components on Microsoft Windows.

```
env_type=midtier
psft_base_dir=C:/psft
```

```
db_platform=ORACLE
db_name=HCM92U36
db_service_name=HCM92U36
db_host=server.example.com
db_port=1521
connect_id=people
connect_pwd=password
opr_id=PS
opr_pwd=password
weblogic_admin_pwd=password
webprofile_user_id=PTWEBSERVER
webprofile_user_pwd=password
domain_conn_pwd=password
gw_user_id=administrator
gw_user_pwd=password
gw_keystore_pwd=password
```

Task 3-1-2: Reviewing the Response File Sample for Mid-tier Installation as the Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris

Here is a sample response file for installing mid-tier components on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.

```
env_type=midtier
db_platform=ORACLE
psft_base_dir=/opt/oracle/psft
user_home_dir=/opt/home
db_name=HCM92U36
db_service_name=HCM92U36
db_host=server.example.com
db_port=1521
connect_id=people
connect_pwd=password
opr_id=PS
opr_pwd=password
weblogic_admin_pwd=password
webprofile_user_id=PTWEBSERVER
webprofile_user_pwd=password
domain_conn_pwd=password
gw_user_id=administrator
gw_user_pwd=password
gw_keystore_pwd=password
```

Task 3-1-3: Reviewing the Response File Sample for Mid-tier Installation as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris

Here is a sample response file for installing mid-tier components on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.

```
env_type=midtier
db_platform=ORACLE
psft_base_dir=/opt/oracle/psft
user_config_home_dir=/opt/psftuser/pscfg_pt858_silent
```

```
db_name=HCM92U36
db_service_name=HCM92U36
db_host=server.example.com
db_port=1521
connect_id=people
connect_pwd=password
opr_id=PS
opr_pwd=password
weblogic_admin_pwd=password
webprofile_user_id=PTWEBSERVER
webprofile_user_pwd=password
domain_conn_pwd=password
gw_user_id=administrator
gw_user_pwd=password
gw_keystore_pwd=password
```

Task 3-2: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy an Application Server Domain

This section discusses:

- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy an Application Server Domain on Microsoft Windows
- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy an Application Server Domain on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as the Root User
- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy an Application Server Domain on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as a Non-Root User

Task 3-2-1: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy an Application Server Domain on Microsoft Windows

Here is a sample response file for deploying an application server domain on Microsoft Windows.

```
env_type=midtier
psft_base_dir=C:/psft
db_platform=ORACLE
domain_type=appserver
db_name=HCM92U36
db_host=server.example.com
db_service_name=HCM92U36
db_port=1521
connect_id=people
connect_pwd=password
opr_id=PS
opr_pwd=password
domain_conn_pwd=password
```

Task 3-2-2: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy an Application Server Domain on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as the Root User

Here is a sample response file for deploying an application server domain on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.

```
env_type=midtier
psft_base_dir=/opt/oracle/psft
db_platform=ORACLE
domain_type=appserver
db_name=HCM92U36
db_host=server.example.com
db_service_name=HCM92U36
db_port=1521
connect_id=people
connect_pwd=password
opr_id=PS
opr_pwd=password
domain_conn_pwd=password
```

Task 3-2-3: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy an Application Server Domain on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as a Non-Root User

Here is a sample response file for deploying an application server domain on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.

```
env_type=midtier
psft_base_dir=/opt/oracle/psft
db_platform=ORACLE
domain_type=appserver
db_name=HCM92U36
db_host=server.example.com
db_service_name=HCM92U36
db_port=1521
connect_id=people
connect_pwd=password
opr_id=PS
opr_pwd=password
domain_conn_pwd=password
```

Task 3-3: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy a Process Scheduler Domain

This section discusses:

- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy a Process Scheduler Domain on Microsoft Windows
- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy a Process Scheduler Domain on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as the Root User
- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy a Process Scheduler Domain on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as a Non-Root User

Task 3-3-1: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy a Process Scheduler Domain on Microsoft Windows

Here is a sample response file for deploying a Process Scheduler domain on Microsoft Windows.

```
env_type=midtier
psft_base_dir=C:/psft
db_platform=ORACLE
domain_type=prcs
db_name=HCM92U36
db_host=server.example.com
db_service_name=HCM92U36
db_port=1521
connect_id=people
connect_pwd=password
opr_id=QEDMO
opr_pwd=password
domain_conn_pwd=password
```

Task 3-3-2: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy a Process Scheduler Domain on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as the Root User

Here is a sample response file for deploying a Process Scheduler domain on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.

```
env_type=midtier
psft_base_dir=/opt/oracle/psft
db_platform=ORACLE
domain_type=prcs
db_name=HCM92U36
db_host=server.example.com
db_service_name=HCM92U36
db_port=1521
connect_id=people
connect_pwd=password
opr_id=QEDMO
opr_pwd=password
domain_conn_pwd=password
```

Task 3-3-3: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy a Process Scheduler Domain on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as a Non-Root User

Here is a sample response file for deploying a Process Scheduler domain on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.

```
env_type=midtier
psft_base_dir=/opt/oracle/psft
db_platform=ORACLE
domain_type=prcs
db_name=HCM92U36
db_host=server.example.com
db_service_name=HCM92U36
```

```
db_port=1521
connect_id=people
connect_pwd=password
opr_id=QEDMO
opr_pwd=password
domain_conn_pwd=password
```

Task 3-4: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy an Application Server and a Process Scheduler Domain

This section discusses:

- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy an Application Server and a Process Scheduler Domain on Microsoft Windows
- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy an Application Server and a Process Scheduler Domain on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as the Root User
- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy an Application Server and a Process Scheduler Domain on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as a Non-Root User

Task 3-4-1: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy an Application Server and a Process Scheduler Domain on Microsoft Windows

Here is a sample response file for deploying an application server and a Process Scheduler domain on Microsoft Windows.

```
env_type=midtier
psft_base_dir=C:/psft
db_platform=ORACLE
domain_type=appbatch
db_name=HCM92U36
db_host=server.example.com
db_service_name=HCM92U36
db_port=1521
connect_id=people
connect_pwd=password
opr_id=PS
opr_pwd=password
domain_conn_pwd=password
```

Task 3-4-2: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy an Application Server and a Process Scheduler Domain on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as the Root User

Here is a sample response file for deploying an application server and a Process Scheduler domain on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.

```
env_type=midtier
psft_base_dir=/opt/oracle/psft
```

```
user_home_dir=/scratch/dpkbase
db_platform=ORACLE
domain_type=appbatch
db_name=HCM92U36
db_host=server.example.com
db_service_name=HCM92U36
db_port=1521
connect_id=people
connect_pwd=password
opr_id=PS
opr_pwd=password
domain_conn_pwd=password
```

Task 3-4-3: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy an Application Server and a Process Scheduler Domain on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as a Non-Root User

Here is a sample response file for deploying an application server and a Process Scheduler domain on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.

```
env_type=midtier
psft_base_dir=/opt/oracle/psft
user_config_home_dir=/scratch/dpkbase
db_platform=ORACLE
domain_type=appbatch
db_name=HCM92U36
db_host=server.example.com
db_service_name=HCM92U36
db_port=1521
connect_id=people
connect_pwd=password
opr_id=PS
opr_pwd=password
domain_conn_pwd=password
```

Task 3-5: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy a PIA Domain

This section discusses:

- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy a PIA Domain on Microsoft Windows
- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy a PIA Domain on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as the Root User
- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy a PIA Domain on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as a Non-Root User

Task 3-5-1: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy a PIA Domain on Microsoft Windows

Here is a sample response file for deploying a PIA domain on Microsoft Windows.

```
env_type=midtier
psft_base_dir=C:/psft
db_platform=ORACLE
domain_type=pia
db_name=HCM92U36
db_host=server.example.com
db_service_name=HCM92U36
db_port=1521
connect_id=people
connect_pwd=password
opr_id=PS
opr_pwd=password
weblogic_admin_pwd=password
webprofile_user_id=PTWEBSERVER
webprofile_user_pwd=password
domain_conn_pwd=password
gw_user_id=administrator
gw_user_pwd=password
gw_keystore_pwd=password
pia_psserver_list=server2.example.com:9033
prcs_server_name=PRCS9722
```

Task 3-5-2: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy a PIA Domain on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as the Root User

Here is a sample response file for deploying a PIA domain on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.

```
env_type=midtier
psft_base_dir=/opt/oracle/psft
user_home_dir=/scratch/dpkbase
db_platform=ORACLE
domain_type=pia
db_name=HCM92U36
db_host=server.example.com
db_service_name=HCM92U36
db_port=1521
connect_id=people
connect_pwd=password
opr_id=PS
opr_pwd=password
weblogic_admin_pwd=password
webprofile_user_id=PTWEBSERVER
webprofile_user_pwd=password
domain_conn_pwd=password
gw_user_id=administrator
gw_user_pwd=password
```

```
gw_keystore_pwd=password
pia_psserver_list=server2.example.com:9033
prcs_server_name=PRCS9152
```

Task 3-5-3: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy a PIA Domain on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as a Non-Root User

Here is a sample response file for deploying a PIA domain on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.

```
env_type=midtier
psft_base_dir=/opt/oracle/psft
user_config_home_dir=/opt/psftuser/pscfg_pt858_silent
db_platform=ORACLE
domain_type=pia
db_name=HCM92U36
db_host=server.example.com
db_service_name=HCM92U36
db_port=1521
connect_id=people
connect_pwd=password
opr_id=PS
opr_pwd=password
weblogic_admin_pwd=password
webprofile_user_id=PTWEBSERVER
webprofile_user_pwd=password
domain_conn_pwd=password
gw_user_id=administrator
gw_user_pwd=password
gw_keystore_pwd=password
pia_psserver_list=server2.example.com:9033
prcs_server_name=PRCS9152
```

Task 3-6: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Install PS_HOME Only

This section discusses:

- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Install PS_HOME Only on Microsoft Windows
- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Install PS_HOME Only on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris

Task 3-6-1: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Install PS_HOME Only on Microsoft Windows

Here is a sample response file for installing only the *PS_HOME* installation directory, which includes the PeopleSoft PeopleTools server utilities.

```
env_type=midtier
deploy_only=true
deploy_type=tools_home
```

```
db_platform=ORACLE
psft_base_dir="C:\psft"
db_is_unicode=false
```

Task 3-6-2: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Install PS_HOME Only on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris

Here is a sample response file for installing only the *PS_HOME* installation directory, which includes the PeopleSoft PeopleTools server utilities.

```
env_type=midtier
deploy_only=true
deploy_type=tools_home
db_platform=ORACLE
psft_base_dir="/opt/oracle/psft"
db_is_unicode=false
```

Task 3-7: Running the DPK Setup Script in Silent Mode for Default Initialization

This procedure assumes you have obtained the required DPK zip files and saved them in *DPK_INSTALL.*

Note. If you want to run as a non-root user on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, fulfill the requirements in the section Deploying as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris. Before you run the silent mode installation, the root user must run the DPK setup prereq step.

1. Prepare the response file, using the examples in this section.
2. Extract the first zip file *(FILENAME*_1of*n*.zip).

   Note. It is a good idea to extract into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, *DPK_INSTALL.*

   The extraction creates the *DPK_INSTALL/*setup folder and other files.
3. Open a command prompt with Run as Administrator.
4. Change directory to *DPK_INSTALL/*setup.
5. Run the script and supply the full path and filename for the response file.

   On Microsoft Windows:

   ```
   psft-dpk-setup.bat --silent --response_file=<full_path/filename.txt>
   ```

   On Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris:

   ```
   ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --silent --response_file=<full_path/filename.txt>
   ```
6. Wait until the installation is complete.

   The script displays progress messages. The complete setup log is written to the file psft_dpk_setup.log in the same location as the DPK setup script.

Task 3-8: Running the DPK Setup Script in Silent Mode with Customizations

This procedure assumes you have obtained the required DPK zip files and saved them in *DPK_INSTALL.*

Note. If you want to run as a non-root user on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, fulfill the requirements in the section Deploying as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris. Before you run the silent mode installation, the root user must run the DPK setup prereq step.

Note. Remember to enter passwords in clear text in the response file and the psft_customizations.yaml file.

1. Prepare the response text file, using the examples in this section.
2. Prepare the customization YAML file, using the instructions in this documentation.

   Note. You can name the file whatever you like. For the silent mode installation, it is not necessary to use the name psft_customizations.yaml.

   See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations."
3. Extract the first zip file *(FILENAME*_1of*n.*zip).

   Note. It is a good idea to extract into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, *DPK_INSTALL.*

   The extraction creates the *DPK_INSTALL/*setup folder and other files.
4. Open a command prompt with Run as Administrator.
5. Change directory to *DPK_INSTALL/*setup.
6. Run the script, supplying the full path and filename for both the response file and the customization file.

   On Microsoft Windows:

   ```
   psft-dpk-setup.bat --silent --response_file=<full_path/filename.txt>
   --customization_file=<full_path/custfilename.yaml>
   ```

   On Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris:

   ```
   ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --silent --response_file=<full_path/filename.txt>
   --customization_file=<full_path/custfilename.yaml>
   ```
7. Wait until the installation is complete.

   The script displays progress messages. The complete setup log is written to the file psft_dpk_setup.log in the same location as the DPK setup script.

Task 3-9: Running the DPK Setup Script in Silent Mode for Default Initialization with use_alternate_puppet_install Option

This procedure assumes you have obtained the required DPK zip files and saved them in *DPK_INSTALL.*

Note. If you want to run as a non-root user on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, fulfill the requirements in the section Deploying as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris. Before you run the silent mode installation, the root user must run the DPK setup prereq step.

Note. The `--use_alternate_puppet_install` option is available for AIX, HP-UX, and Solaris beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.05.

1. Prepare the response text file, using the examples in this section.
2. Extract the first zip file *(FILENAME*_1of*n*.zip).

   Note. It is a good idea to extract into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, *DPK_INSTALL.*

   The extraction creates the *DPK_INSTALL/*setup folder and other files.
3. Open a command prompt with Run as Administrator.
4. Change directory to *DPK_INSTALL/*setup.
5. Run the script, supplying the full path and filename for both the response file and the customization file.

   On Microsoft Windows:

   ```
   psft-dpk-setup.bat --silent --response_file=<full_path/filename.txt>
   --use_alternate_puppet_install
   ```

   On Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris:

   ```
   ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --silent --response_file=<full_path/filename.txt>
   --use_alternate_puppet_install
   ```
6. Wait until the installation is complete.

   The script displays progress messages. The complete setup log is written to the file psft_dpk_setup.log in the same location as the DPK setup script.

Task 3-10: Running the DPK Setup Script in Silent Mode with Customizations and use_alternate_puppet_install Option

This procedure assumes you have obtained the required DPK zip files and saved them in *DPK_INSTALL.*

Note. If you want to run as a non-root user on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, fulfill the requirements in the section Deploying as a Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris. Before you run the silent mode installation, the root user must run the DPK setup prereq step.

Note. The `--use_alternate_puppet_install` option is available for AIX, HP-UX, and Solaris beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.05.

1. Prepare the response text file, using the examples in this section.
2. Prepare the customization YAML file, using the instructions in this documentation.

   Note. You can name the file whatever you like. For the silent mode installation, it is not necessary to use the name psft_customizations.yaml.

   See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations."
3. Extract the first zip file *(FILENAME*_1of*n*.zip).

Note. It is a good idea to extract into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, *DPK_INSTALL.*

The extraction creates the *DPK_INSTALL*/setup folder and other files.

4. Open a command prompt with Run as Administrator.
5. Change directory to *DPK_INSTALL*/setup.
6. Run the script, supplying the full path and filename for both the response file and the customization file.

   On Microsoft Windows:

   ```
   psft-dpk-setup.bat --silent --response_file=<full_path/filename.txt>
   --customization_file=<full_path/custfilename.yaml> --use_alternate_⇒
   puppet_install
   ```

   On Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris:

   ```
   ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --silent --response_file=<full_path/filename.txt>
   --customization_file=<full_path/custfilename.yaml> --use_alternate_⇒
   puppet_install
   ```

7. Wait until the installation is complete.

   The script displays progress messages. The complete setup log is written to the file psft_dpk_setup.log in the same location as the DPK setup script.

Chapter 4

Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations

This chapter discusses:

- Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations
- Preparing Customization Files for Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris Users and Groups
- Preparing the Customization File for JDK on AIX
- Preparing the Customization File for JDK on HP-UX
- Preparing the Customization File for PeopleSoft Domain Definitions
- Preparing the Customization File to Create PeopleSoft Domains Without Configuration
- Preparing the Customization File for Component Software Locations
- Preparing the Customization File for Unicode
- Preparing the Customization Files for the PeopleSoft Homes
- Preparing the Customization File for Jolt SSL and WSL SSL Ports
- Preparing the Customization File for Oracle HTTP Server
- Preparing the Customization File for Session Cookie Names
- Preparing the Customization File for JVM Heap Sizes
- Preparing the Customization File for Mid-Tier Connection to a Microsoft SQL Server Database
- Preparing the Customization File for Mid-Tier Connection to a DB2 z/OS Database
- Preparing the Customization File to Exclude Oracle Database Client Installation
- Preparing the Customization File for sysctl and ulimit Parameters on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris
- Completing the Customized Deployment

Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations

The PeopleSoft DPK setup script allows setup of a PeopleSoft environment quickly using the default data from the packaged Hiera YAML files. This section gives examples of ways to use the YAML files for customization.

Always use the documented procedures to make changes to your environment. Doing so will allow you to retain your customizations when removing a deployment before deploying a new patch or version.

Note. You can use the customizations in this chapter whether you use the DPK script interactively or in silent mode. This list notes a few places where using the DPK customization is different for interactive or silent mode.

Use these guidelines when customizing your environment:

- (Interactive mode) Do not change any of the original delivered YAML files.

  This practice enables you to retain your customizations after deploying a new patch or update.

  When you deploy the PeopleSoft DPKs, the YAML files associated with the deployment are installed in the following location:

  - *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data/defaults.yaml
  - *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data/psft_configuration.yaml
  - *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data/psft_deployment.yaml
  - *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data/psft_unix_system.yaml
- (Silent mode) Do not change any of the original delivered YAML files.

  This practice enables you to retain your customizations after deploying a new patch or update.

  Use the YAML files in the following location as the basis for the customizations file used in silent installation:

  - *DPK_INSTALL*/setup/puppet/production/data/defaults.yaml
  - *DPK_INSTALL*/setup/puppet/production/data/psft_configuration.yaml
  - *DPK_INSTALL*/setup/puppet/production/data/psft_deployment.yaml
  - *DPK_INSTALL*/setup/puppet/production/data/psft_unix_system.yaml
- (Interactive mode) Start with the DPK setup script and choose not to continue with the default initialization.

  Answer *no* at the prompt "Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]:" to exit the script and bypass the default initialization process.

  To set up a customized PeopleSoft environment, use the DPK setup script for the first portion of the process, that is, to automate the tasks of extracting the DPK zip files, installing Puppet (if not installed), and copying the Puppet modules and Hiera data YAML files from the DPK into the location where Puppet looks for these files during the orchestration process. When you exit the script, it displays instructions on how to proceed to complete the initialization.
- Always use the customizations for these setups:
  - Installing on an AIX operating system
  - Installing on a HP-UX operating system
  - Connecting to a non-Oracle RDBMS platform.
- Always create a psft_customizations.yaml file to use for modified parameters.
  - Never modify the delivered YAML files. Instead, by copying the parameters that you want to modify into the psft_customizations.yaml file you are able to save the customization.
  - Copy only the section of the delivered YAML file that includes the parameters that you need to change, as directed by the samples in this documentation. Depending upon the specific type of customization, you may need to copy a single line, or an entire block of text, so be sure to check this documentation.
  - The DPK setup script processes the psft_customizations.yaml file before the generated YAML files, so that the values in psft_customizations.yaml override the values in psft_configuration.yaml, psft_deployment.yaml, and psft_unix_system.yaml.
  - (Interactive mode) Note that the file must be named "psft_customizations.yaml". Be sure to use the correct spelling.
  - (Silent mode) You can name the customization YAML file whatever you like for the silent mode installation.
- Verify the content of the delivered YAML files with each release.

The YAML files may have changed since this document was published. It is important that you copy the appropriate section of code from the YAML files you install with each new deployment, and use it as the basis for your psft_customizations.yaml file (or the silent mode customization YAML file).

- Do not create new parameters for psft_customizations.yaml (or the silent mode customization YAML file).

  The deployment recognizes only those parameters in the delivered YAML files or given in the product documentation.

- Use a single psft_customizations.yaml file (or the silent mode customization YAML file).

  You can copy the necessary sections from more than one of the delivered YAML files and include them in a single psft_customizations.yaml file. Again, copy only those sections with the parameters you want to change.

- Use the same psft_customizations.yaml file (or the silent mode customization YAML file) for all deployments on a given base folder.

  This applies to a use case in which you carry out more than one deployment on the same *BASE_DIR*. For example, you first install *PS_HOME* only, and use a psft_customizations.yaml file to specify a non-default *PS_HOME* location. Then you later do a second deployment, with the same *BASE_DIR*, to install mid-tier components, and you want to customize the location of Oracle WebLogic. In this case, use the first psft_customizations.yaml file, including the non-default *PS_HOME*, append the customization for the Oracle WebLogic location, and use it for the second deployment.

- Include the `remove: false` attribute to retain your customizations through the clean-up process.

  To ensure that your customizations are not removed when removing a deployed environment:

  - For each segment of customization parameters in the psft_customizations.yaml file (or the silent mode customization YAML file), include the `remove: false` attribute at the end of the segment.
  - If you remove the environment manually (using the psft_puppet_apply script), set the `ensure` attribute to *absent* in default.yaml.

    If you remove the environment using the `--cleanup` option for the PeopleSoft DPK setup script, you do not need to set the attribute first because it is part of the script process.
  - Remove the environment using the `--cleanup` option for the PeopleSoft DPK setup script, as described in this documentation.

    See "Installing the PeopleSoft Homes," Removing a Deployed PeopleSoft Environment.

- Copy an entire section containing the parameter to be modified, and be sure to retain the indentation from the delivered YAML file.

  The hierarchy and alignment of the YAML files are very important to the correct operation. In addition to the brief overview given here, review the information in the appendix "Using the Puppet Hiera YAML Files for Customization."

  - The YAML files include scalar type and collection type parameters.

    Scalar parameters are of the form `key: value`; for example:

    ```
    db_platform: ORACLE
    ```

    Collection type parameters include a parameter name followed by one or more indented lists of `key:value` pairs. In this case, the value of the collection parameter is defined by the indented list of values; for example:

    ```
    ps_home:
      db_type:    "%{hiera('db_platform')}"
      unicode_db: "%{hiera('unicode_db')}"
      location:   "%{hiera('ps_home_location')}"
    ```

  - When you locate a parameter that you want to modify, be sure to locate the section heading that begins at

the first column of the YAML file. This ensures that the deployment operation modifies the correct parameter.

- Be sure to retain the indentation from the delivered YAML file.

  Typically there is an indentation of 2 or 3 spaces for each successive subsection. This is necessary in order for the parameters to be correctly interpreted.

  Note. Be sure when copying and pasting that you retain the indentation. Depending upon the authoring or editing tools you use, the desired indentation may be lost when you copy and paste. It is a good idea to double-check the final psft_customizations.yaml file (or the silent mode customization YAML file), especially for the special cases where you copy a sample from this documentation.

- When copying and modifying collection type parameters, use only spaces, not tabs, to indent the subsections.

- (Interactive mode) Use the encrypted passwords from the generated YAML files.

  The DPK setup script encrypts user-supplied passwords and includes them in the generated YAML files. If you copy a section of a YAML file with encrypted passwords, do not replace or remove the encrypted text.

  The encrypted passwords are quite long. Be sure to copy the entire string, without adding spaces, tabs, or line feeds.

  Note. For the majority of the customizations described in this documentation, you copy the encrypted passwords from the generated YAML files. If that is not possible, see the appendix "Encrypting Passwords for Customizations on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris."

- (Silent mode) When creating the psft_customizations.yaml file for silent mode installation, enter the passwords in clear text. Do not enter encrypted passwords.

- Replace the entire attribute string.

  The parameters in the delivered YAML files are written with Hiera interpolation functions that act as variables. To modify each parameter, you must replace the entire string after the colon, and enclose your new value in double quotes. For example, in the psft_deployment.yaml file, the location for an Oracle WebLogic installation is given by the following parameters:

```
weblogic_location: "%{hiera('pt_location')}/bea"
weblogic:
  location:  "%{hiera('weblogic_location')}"
```

  The second Hiera function refers to the first. When `pt_location` is set as C:/psft, Oracle WebLogic will be installed in C:/psft/bea. To change this, remove both strings of text `"%{hiera('pt_location')}/bea"` and `"%{hiera('weblogic_location')}"`, and replace them with the full path to the new location. Retain the two-space indentation, and use a forward slash (/) for paths on both Microsoft Windows and Linux; for example:

  On Microsoft Windows:

```
weblogic_location:  "C:/psft/weblogic"
weblogic:
  location: "C:/psft/weblogic"
```

  On Linux:

```
weblogic_location:  "/opt/bea/weblogic"
weblogic:
  location: "/opt/bea/weblogic"
```

- Do not use the customizations to set up a non-Unicode environment if you are deploying the PeopleSoft

Update Image DPKs for use with PeopleSoft Update Manager.

The environments for the PeopleSoft Update Images are required to be Unicode.

- Verify existing installations before beginning deployment.

  You have the option to use existing installations, for example for Oracle WebLogic, but you have the responsibility to ensure that the installation is supported, complete, and correct. The deployment script does not verify whether an installation directory includes a valid, working installation.

  See Preparing the Customization File for Component Software Locations.

- Set the Puppet environment if necessary.

  The process to complete the initialization using the customizations, as described in the section Completing the Customized Deployment, runs the psft_puppet_apply script that sets necessary environment variables, and runs the puppet apply command. If you choose to use the `puppet apply` command directly rather than the script, you may get a message saying that "puppet" is not recognized. This message may indicate that the Puppet software is not included in your system's path. In that case, you can use the commands given here to set the Puppet environment. You should also set the Puppet environment if you need to run `puppet apply` after the script execution has ended with an error.

  - On Microsoft Windows, to set the Puppet environment, run this command:

    ```
    "C:\Program Files\Puppet Labs\Puppet\bin\puppet_shell.bat"
    ```

  - On Linux, specify the following environment variables before running the `puppet apply` command:

    ```
    export PUPPET_DIR=/opt/puppetlabs
    export PUPPET_BIN=${PUPPET_DIR}/bin
    export PUPPET_LIB=${PUPPET_DIR}/lib
    export PATH=${PUPPET_BIN}:$PATH
    export LD_LIBRARY_PATH=${PUPPET_LIB}:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
    ```

  - On AIX or Solaris, specify the following environment variables before running the `puppet apply` command:

    ```
    export PUPPET_DIR=/opt/oracle/puppetlabs
    export PUPPET_BIN=${PUPPET_DIR}/bin
    export PUPPET_LIB=${PUPPET_DIR}/lib
    export PATH=${PUPPET_BIN}:$PATH
    export LIBPATH=${PUPPET_LIB}:$LIBPATH
    ```

  - On HP-UX, specify the following environment variables before running the `puppet apply` command:

    ```
    export PUPPET_DIR=/opt/oracle/puppetlabs
    export PUPPET_BIN=${PUPPET_DIR}/bin
    export PUPPET_LIB=${PUPPET_DIR}/lib
    export PATH=${PUPPET_BIN}:$PATH
    export SHLIB_PATH=${PUPPET_LIB}:$SHLIB_PATH
    export LD_LIBRARY_PATH=${PUPPET_LIB}:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
    ```

  - On AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris operating systems, instead of using the export commands above, you can use the pspuppet.sh script to set the Puppet environment.

    Use this method if the DPK setup script is interrupted, either intentionally to apply customizations, or by an error, and you choose to run the `puppet apply` command, rather than the psft_puppet_apply script. The pspuppet.sh script will set the Puppet PATH and LIBRARY environment variables. The pspuppet.sh script is installed by the DPK setup script in /opt/oracle/puppetlabs. Source the script by entering the following command:

    ```
    . /opt/oracle/puppetlabs/pspuppet.sh
    ```

The dot, or period (".") at the beginning of the command is a source operator that ensures that the script commands persist in the shell environment that you are deploying from. After sourcing the script, continue with the deployment by running the `puppet apply` command.

- Use only the predefined web profiles.

  PeopleSoft PeopleTools includes four predefined web profiles — DEV, KIOSK, PROD, and TEST. In the delivered YAML file psft_configuration.yaml, the web profile is specified by the scalar parameter `pia_webprofile_name: PROD`. If you want to specify a different value using psft_customizations.yaml, be sure to use one of the four predefined values.

  See *PeopleTools: Portal Technology*, "Configuring Web Profiles."

- When using the customizations for a PeopleSoft web server domain, do not use the names PIA, PIA1, PIA2, or weblogic for the domain name.

  The name of the WebLogic domain and the server and cluster names within it must be unique. The names PIA, PIA1, and PIA2 are reserved for use by the PeopleSoft system. The name weblogic is reserved for use by the Oracle WebLogic software. These restrictions apply to single server and multi-server domain creation.

  See Preparing the Customization File for PeopleSoft Domain Definitions.

  See *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration*, "WebLogic Domain Types."

- To specify a non-default location for the Process Scheduler Report Repository, you must create the Report Repository directory before you begin the DPK installation.

  The Report Repository is the designated server for reports that are generated from the PeopleSoft Process Scheduler Server. In the delivered YAML file psft_configuration.yaml, the Report Repository location is defined as a subdirectory of *PS_CFG_HOME*, as specified by this scalar parameter:

  ```
  report_repository_dir: "%{hiera('ps_config_home')}/psreports"
  ```

  To define a different location, create the directory first. Use the `report_repository_dir` parameter with the customized location in the psft_customizations.yaml file.

  See *PeopleTools: Process Scheduler*, "PeopleSoft Process Scheduler Architecture."

  See the task Setting Up Process Scheduler to Transfer Reports and Logs to the Report Repository in the PeopleSoft 9.2 Application Installation guide for your database platform.

  See Oracle's PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58 Home Page, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2602329.2.

Task 4-1: Preparing Customization Files for Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris Users and Groups

This section discusses:

- Preparing the Customization File for a Single User and Single Group
- Preparing the Customization File for a New Single User, New Primary Group, and Existing Secondary Group
- Preparing the Customization File for Existing Users and Groups

Note. If you are running the DPK setup script as a non-root user, the customizations for users and groups in this section are not supported.

Note. If you want to set up your environment to use existing LDAP or existing users and groups on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, you must meet these requirements: 1) The user home directory should have read/write/execute permission for the root user. 2) The user default shell should be Bash.

Note. To use an encrypted password with one of the customization files in this section, note that the successful use of the encrypted password depends on the presence of the public and private keys in the *BASE_DIR/*dpk/puppet directory referred to in the eyaml encrypt command. You cannot save an encrypted password and use it with an installation with a different *BASE_DIR*.

Task 4-1-1: Preparing the Customization File for a Single User and Single Group

This user customization applies to Linux, AIX, HP-UX, and Solaris OS platforms only. If you choose the default initialization when running the DPK setup script, the Puppet framework creates local users and default groups, which are contained in the generated psft_unix_system.yaml file. Use the sample customization file in this section if you do not want to use the default users and groups, and instead want to set up your environment with a different single user and single group for the whole PeopleSoft environment.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations before preparing the customization file.

This user customization applies to the following scenarios:

- New single user + new single group
- New single user + existing single group
- Existing single user + new single group
- Existing single user + existing single group

Note. After completing the initialization, the system will prompt you to provide a new password the first time you log in. This requirement applies to both a new single user and an existing single user.

To use the customization for an existing single user, do not enter a password in the psft_customizations.yaml file.

This customization will create a single user and single group. You must specify values for two parameters that are not included in the generated psft_unix_system.yaml file, `psft_user` and `psft_group`.

- `groups/psft_group`
  - Use the groups/psft_group collection parameter only if you want to create a group for a single user. The DPK process will create the group. If there is an existing group with the same name, the script will skip it.
  - Specify the same value for groups/psft_group/name and for users/psft_user/gid.

    Use a group name (string), not a GID (number), for both the name in the group collection parameter, and the gid in the users collection parameter.
  - Note that you must use the parameters exactly as given in this documentation. If you try to create a different parameter name or alter the parameter, the DPK process will not recognize it.
- `users/psft_user`
  - Use the users/psft_user collection parameter to create a new user and add that user to the group specified by groups/psft_group.
  - This group is the primary group for the new user.
  - Specify the same value for users/psft_user/name and for the scalar parameter psft_runtime_user_name.
  - The single user has all the roles and permissions that the default users would have.

    See "Using and Maintaining the PeopleSoft Environment," Using the PeopleSoft Installation, for a list of the default users and permissions.
- `users/psft_user/home_dir`

When you run the DPK setup script, it includes a prompt for the users' home directory. That value is included in the generated psft_unix_system.yaml file. You can accept that same value in this customization file for users/psft_user/home_dir, or you can change it here. If you change it, the DPK process will create the new home directory.

To prepare the customization file:

1. Create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool, such as vi on Linux, and save it in the same location as the psft_unix_system.yaml file.

   By default, the DPK setup script installs the YAML files in *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data.

2. Use the sample below in creating the psft_customizations.yaml file, and modify the values as needed.

   Note. Be sure that your final psft_customizations.yaml file includes the indentation shown here. The indentation may be lost if you copy from this documentation and paste into the file.

   In this example, the new single user *newusr* will be created and assigned to the primary group *newgrp*.

```
---
groups:
  psft_group:
    name: newgrp
    remove: false

psft_runtime_user_name: newusr

users:
  psft_user:
    name: newusr
    gid: newgrp
    home_dir: /dpk_base/home/userhome
    password: ENC[PKCS7,MIIBeQYJKoZIhvcNA...........]
    remove: false
```

   Important! Verify that you fulfill the following requirements:

   - Ensure that the file begins with three dashes (`---`).
   - For a new user, replace the password sample above with an encrypted password.

     Enter the encrypted password on a single line. Do not include spaces or line feeds. See the instructions later in this documentation to generate the encrypted password.

     See "Encrypting Passwords for Customizations on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris."

     Note. Use clear text passwords for silent mode installation.

   - Do not enter a password for an existing user.

3. Save the file.
4. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-1-2: Preparing the Customization File for a New Single User, New Primary Group, and Existing Secondary Group

This user customization applies to Linux, AIX, HP-UX, and Solaris OS platforms only. If you choose the default initialization when running the DPK setup script, the Puppet framework creates local users and default groups, which are contained in the generated psft_unix_system.yaml file. Use the sample customization file in this section if you do not want to use the default users and groups, and instead want to set up your environment with a new single user assigned to two groups.

See "Using and Maintaining the PeopleSoft Environment," Using the PeopleSoft Installation, for a list of the default users and permissions.

Note. After completing the initialization, the system will prompt you to provide a new password for the new user, the first time you log in.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations before preparing the customization file.

This customization will create a new single user and a new group, the primary group. The new user is also assigned to an existing, secondary group. You must specify values for two parameters that are not included in the generated psft_unix_system.yaml file, `psft_user` and `psft_group`.

- `groups/psft_group`
  - Use the groups/psft_group collection parameter only if you want to create a new group for a single user. The DPK process will create the group. If there is an existing group with the same name, the script will skip it.
  - Specify the same value for groups/psft_group/name and for users/psft_user/gid.

    Use a group name (string), not a GID (number), for both the name in the group collection parameter, and the gid in the users collection parameter.
  - Note that you must use the parameters exactly as given in this documentation. If you try to create a different parameter name or alter the parameter, the DPK process will not recognize it.
- `users/psft_user`
  - Use the users/psft_user collection parameter to create a new user and add that user to the new group specified by groups/psft_group/name.
  - Specify the same value for users/psft_user/name and for the scalar parameter psft_runtime_user_name.
  - The new group specified by users/psft_user/gid and groups/psft_group/name is the primary group for the new user.
  - The existing group specified by users/psft_user/groups is the secondary group for the new user.
  - The single user has all the roles and permissions that the default users would have.

    See "Using and Maintaining the PeopleSoft Environment," Using the PeopleSoft Installation, for a list of the default users and permissions.
- `users/psft_user/home_dir`

  When you run the DPK setup script, it includes a prompt for the users' home directory. That value is included in the generated psft_unix_system.yaml file. You can accept that same value in this customization file for users/psft_user/home_dir, or you can change it here. If you change it, the DPK process will create the new home directory.

To prepare the customization file:

1. Create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool, such as vi on Linux, and save it in the same location as the psft_unix_system.yaml file.

   By default, the DPK setup script installs the YAML files in *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data.

2. Use the sample below in creating the psft_customizations.yaml file, and modify the values as needed.

   Note. Be sure that your final psft_customizations.yaml file includes the indentation shown here. The indentation may be lost if you copy from this documentation and paste into the file.

   In this example, the new single user *newusr2* will be created and assigned to the newly created primary group *primgrp* and the existing secondary group *secgrp*.

```
---
groups:
  psft_group:
    name: primgrp
    remove: false

psft_runtime_user_name: newusr2

users:
  psft_user:
    name: newusr2
    gid: primgrp
    groups: secgrp
    home_dir: /dpk_base/home/userhome
    password: ENC[PKCS7,MIIBeQYJKoZIhvcNA...........]
    remove: false
```

   Important! Verify that you fulfill the following requirements:

   - Ensure that the file begins with three dashes (`---`).
   - Replace the password sample above with an encrypted password.

     Enter the encrypted password on a single line. Do not include spaces or line feeds. See the instructions later in this documentation to generate the encrypted password.

     See "Encrypting Passwords for Customizations on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris."

     Note. Use clear text passwords for silent mode installation.

3. Save the file.
4. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-1-3: Preparing the Customization File for Existing Users and Groups

This user customization applies to Linux, AIX, HP-UX, and Solaris OS platforms only. If you choose the default initialization, the Puppet framework creates default local users and groups. However, your security policies may prohibit creating these OS users. In such a scenario, you can override these default users using the customizations file. The customizations file can refer to one or more existing users or existing groups and Puppet will use them instead of the default users.

See "Using and Maintaining the PeopleSoft Environment," Using the PeopleSoft Installation, for a list of the default users and permissions.

Note. After completing the initialization, the system will prompt you to provide a new password for the existing user, the first time you log in.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations before preparing the customization file.

Ensure you fulfill these requirements:

- The users, groups, and GIDs that you specify in the psft_customizations.yaml file are present before you begin the installation.
- Do not include a password in psft_customizations.yaml.

  The customizations file does not specify new passwords, because it is assumed that the passwords associated with the existing users will be used.
- When you run the DPK setup script, you must specify a user home directory in which the existing user resides.

1. Locate the psft_unix_system.yaml file, which includes default users and groups.

   By default, the DPK setup script installs the YAML files in *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data.

   Note. The code examples in this topic are for illustrative purposes only. Remember to use the text from the YAML files you install with each new deployment as the basis for your psft_customizations.yaml file.

2. If necessary, create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool, such as vi on Linux, and save it in the same location as the psft_unix_system.yaml file.

   If this is the first entry in the psft_customizations.yaml file, ensure that there are three dashes (`---`) on the first line. Do not indent the dashes.

3. Copy the entire section for the users and groups from the psft_unix_system.yaml file into the psft_customizations.yaml file and modify the values as needed.

Note. Be sure that your final psft_customizations.yaml file includes the indentation from the generated YAML file. The indentation may be lost when you copy and paste.

For example:

```
---
psft_install_user_name:     psadmx5
psft_runtime_user_name:     psadmx6
psft_app_install_user_name: psadmx7
oracle_user_name:           oraclex3

psft_runtime_group_name:     psftrungrp
psft_app_install_group_name: psftappgrp
oracle_install_group_name:   orainstgrp
oracle_runtime_group_name:   orarungrp

user_home_dir:   /data1/home
users:
  tools_install_user:
    name:     "%{hiera('psft_install_user_name')}"
    gid:      orainstgrp
    groups:   "%{hiera('psft_runtime_group_name')}"
    home_dir: "%{hiera('user_home_dir')}/%{hiera('psft_install_user_⇒
name')}"

  psft_runtime_user:
    name:     "%{hiera('psft_runtime_user_name')}"
    gid:      orainstgrp
    home_dir: "%{hiera('user_home_dir')}/%{hiera('psft_runtime_user_⇒
name')}"

  app_install_user:
    name:     "%{hiera('psft_app_install_user_name')}"
    gid:      psftappgrp
    home_dir: "%{hiera('user_home_dir')}/%{hiera('psft_app_install_user_⇒
name')}"

  oracle_user:
    name:     "%{hiera('oracle_user_name')}"
    gid:      orainstgrp
    home_dir: "%{hiera('user_home_dir')}/%{hiera('oracle_user_name')}"

  es_user:
    name:     esuserx3
    gid:      users
    home_dir: /data1/home/esuserx3
```

The following table describes the parameters in the sample psft_customizations.yaml and the default values in psft_unix_system.yaml:

Attribute and Sample Value in psft_customizations.yaml	Default Value in psft_unix_system.yaml	Description
`psft_install_user_⇒ name: psadmx5`	Replaces the default user psadm1.	This is the PeopleSoft PeopleTools installation administrator, who owns *PS_HOME*, but cannot write into *PS_CFG_HOME*.
`psft_runtime_user_⇒ name: psadmx6`	Replaces the default user psadm2.	This is the PeopleSoft PeopleTools domain user who creates and configures the Application Server domain, Process Scheduler (batch server) domain, and the web server domain. This user cannot write to *PS_HOME*, but has read/execute access.
`psft_app_install_user_⇒ name: psadmx7`	Replaces the default user psadm3.	This is the PeopleSoft application installation administrator who owns *PS_APP_HOME*.
`oracle_user_name: ⇒ oraclex3`	Replaces the default user oracle2.	This is the Oracle Database Server owner, who owns *ORACLE_HOME*.
`psft_runtime_group_⇒ name: psftrungrp`	Replaces the default group psft.	**Note.** Do not use the same name for the four group name parameters. Ensure that the names that you specify for these parameters in psft_customizations.yaml are different.
`psft_app_install_⇒ group_name: psftapp⇒ grp`	Replaces the default group appinst.	This group is the primary group for the app_install_user. **Note.** Do not use the same name for the four group name parameters. Ensure that the names that you specify for these parameters in psft_customizations.yaml are different.
`oracle_install_group_⇒ name: orainstgrp`	Replaces the default group name oinstall.	This group is the primary group for the oracle_user, psft_runtime_user, and tools_install_user. **Note.** Do not use the same name for the four group name parameters. Ensure that the names that you specify for these parameters in psft_customizations.yaml are different.

Attribute and Sample Value in psft_customizations.yaml	Default Value in psft_unix_system.yaml	Description
`oracle_runtime_group_⇒ name:  orarungrp`	Replaces the default group name dba.	**Note.** Do not use the same name for the four group name parameters. Ensure that the names that you specify for these parameters in psft_customizations.yaml are different.
`users:  tools_install_user:  name:  "%⇒ {hiera('psft_install_⇒ user_name')}"  gid:  orainst⇒ grp  groups:  "%⇒ {hiera('psft_runtime_⇒ group_name')}"  home_dir: "%⇒ {hiera('user_home_⇒ dir')}/%{hiera('psft_⇒ install_user_name')}"`	NA	• The name for the tools_install_user is the same as the psft_install_user_name, as specified by an interpolation function. • The orainstgrp is the primary group for the tools_install_user. • The tools_install_user must belong to the psft runtime group as a secondary group. To satisfy this requirement, the value for users/tools_install_user/groups is set to the interpolation function "%{hiera('psft_runtime_group_name')}".

4. Save the file.
5. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-2: Preparing the Customization File for JDK on AIX

As mentioned in the section Reviewing Software Requirements for AIX, you must use customizations to specify the installation location of the manually installed JDK 8.0 for the AIX DPK.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations before preparing the customization file.

1. Locate the psft_deployment.yaml file in *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data.

   Note. The code examples in this topic are for illustrative purposes only. Remember to use the text from the YAML files you install with each new deployment as the basis for your psft_customizations.yaml file.

   The installation location for JDK is defined in the psft_deployment.yaml file that is installed with the deployment.
2. If necessary, create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool such as vi, and save it in the same location as the psft_deployment.yaml file.

   If this is the first entry in the psft_customizations.yaml file, ensure that there are three dashes (`---`) on the first line of the file. Do not indent the dashes.

3. Copy the `jdk_location` scalar parameter, and the entire `jdk` collection-type section (two lines) from the psft_deployment.yaml file into the psft_customizations.yaml file.

   Be sure to set the locations to the same value. Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file.

   ```
   ---
   jdk_location:     /home/java/ibm-java-ppc64-80
   jdk:
     location:      /home/java/ibm-java-ppc64-80
     remove:         false
   ```

   As previously mentioned, setting the optional attribute `remove: false` means that the parameters in this section will not be deleted when the deployed environment is removed.

4. Save the file.
5. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-3: Preparing the Customization File for JDK on HP-UX

As mentioned in the section Reviewing Software Requirements for HP-UX, you must use customizations to specify the installation location of the manually installed JDK 8.0 for the HP-UX DPK.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations before preparing the customization file.

1. Locate the psft_deployment.yaml file in *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data.

   Note. The code examples in this topic are for illustrative purposes only. Remember to use the text from the YAML files you install with each new deployment as the basis for your psft_customizations.yaml file.

   The installation location for JDK is defined in the psft_deployment.yaml file that is installed with the deployment.

2. If necessary, create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool, such as vi, and save it in the same location as the psft_deployment.yaml file.

   If this is the first entry in the psft_customizations.yaml file, ensure that there are three dashes (`---`) on the first line of the file. Do not indent the dashes.

3. Copy the `jdk_location` scalar parameter, and the entire `jdk` collection-type section (two lines) from the psft_deployment.yaml file into the psft_customizations.yaml file.

   Be sure to set the locations to the same value. Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file.

   ```
   ---
   jdk_location:     /home/jdk/jdk1.8.0.14
   jdk:
     location:      /home/jdk/jdk1.8.0.14
     remove:         false
   ```

   As previously mentioned, setting the optional attribute `remove: false` means that the parameters in this section will not be deleted when the deployed environment is removed.

4. Save the file.
5. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-4: Preparing the Customization File for PeopleSoft Domain Definitions

This section discusses:

- Preparing the psft_customizations.yaml File
- Reviewing the Domain Definitions in psft_configuration.yaml
- Reviewing the Customization File for a Single Application Server Domain
- Reviewing the Customization File for a Single Process Scheduler Domain
- Reviewing the Customization File for a Single PIA Domain
- Reviewing the Customization File for a PIA Domain on a Separate Host
- Reviewing the Customization File for Multiple Web Sites in a Single Web Domain
- Reviewing the Customization File for Multiple Domains

Task 4-4-1: Preparing the psft_customizations.yaml File

Use this information if you want to customize the PeopleSoft domains — the application server, Process Scheduler, and PIA domains. For example, you may want to create multiple Application Server domains rather than a single domain.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations before preparing the customization file.

Note. As mentioned, do not use the names PIA, PIA1, PIA2, or weblogic to create a PIA (web server) domain.

1. Locate the psft_configuration.yaml file, which was installed by the deployment, in *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data.

   Note. The code examples in this topic are for illustrative purposes only. Remember to use the text from the YAML files you install with each new deployment as the basis for your psft_customizations.yaml file.

2. If necessary, create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool, such as Notepad on Microsoft Windows or vi on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, and save it in the same location as the psft_configuration.yaml file.

   If this is the first entry in the psft_customizations.yaml file, ensure that there are three dashes (`---`) on the first line of the file. Do not indent the dashes.

3. Copy the sections that you want to customize from the psft_configuration.yaml file into the psft_customizations.yaml file and modify the values as needed.

   Be sure to retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file.

   The following sections in this task include sample psft_customizations.yaml files.

4. Save the file.
5. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-4-2: Reviewing the Domain Definitions in psft_configuration.yaml

To customize the PeopleSoft domains, you begin with the psft_configuration.yaml file, which lists the attributes pertinent to the PeopleSoft domains. Be sure to retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file when you copy the sections into the psft_customizations.yaml file.

Note. The psft_configuration.yaml file includes definitions for Automated Configuration Manager (ACM) plug-ins, which configure components such as Integration Broker and Report Distribution. Depending upon the PeopleSoft domain being set up, certain ACM configurations will run as part of the deployment.

This sample shows a portion of a psft_configuration.yaml file, with annotations added (marked by ###) for the purposes of this explanation. The default application server name, APPDOM, is defined in the first portion of the file for the parameter `appserver_domain_name`, which is then referenced with an interpolation token `"%{hiera('appserver_domain_name')}"` in the `appserver_domain_list` section.

The DPK setup script encrypts user-supplied passwords and includes them in the generated YAML files. The encrypted text will be a long single line of letters and numbers. Be sure to copy the text in one unbroken line, with no spaces or line feeds. This sample includes short strings of text beginning with "ENC" to represent encrypted passwords.

Note. Use clear text passwords for silent mode installation.

```
---
db_name:           FS85806C
db_user:           VP1

############################################################
# Replace this password sample with encrypted text from the  #
# generated psft_configuration.yaml file.                    #
############################################################
db_user_pwd:       ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]
db_connect_id:     people

############################################################
# Replace this password sample with encrypted text from the  #
# generated psft_configuration.yaml file.                    #
############################################################
db_connect_pwd:    ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]

domain_user:           "%{hiera('psft_runtime_user_name')}"
ps_config_home:        "C:/Users/%{::env_username}/psft/pt/8.58"
appserver_template:    small
appserver_domain_name: APPDOM
prcs_domain_name:      PRCSDOM
prcs_domain_id:        "PRCS%{::rand}"
report_node_name:      "%{hiera('prcs_domain_id')}"
pia_domain_name:       peoplesoft
pia_site_name:         ps
pia_http_port:         8000
pia_https_port:        8443
jolt_port:             9033
wsl_port:              7000
db_port:               1521
```

```
gateway_node_name:     QE_LOCAL
pia_gateway_user:      administrator

################################################################
# Replace this password sample with encrypted text from the  #
# generated psft_configuration.yaml file.                    #
################################################################
pia_gateway_user_pwd:  ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]

webserver_type:        weblogic
pia_webprofile_name:   PROD
pia_psserver_list:     "%{::fqdn}:%{hiera('jolt_port')}"
report_repository_dir: "%{hiera('ps_config_home')}/psreports"

################################################################
# Replace this password sample with encrypted text from the  #
# generated psft_configuration.yaml file.                    #
################################################################
domain_conn_pwd:       ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]

help_uri:              pt854pbh1
tns_dir:               "%{hiera('db_location')}"
tns_admin_list:
  "%{hiera('db_name')}":
    db_host:         "%{::fqdn}"
    db_port:         "%{hiera('db_port')}"
    db_protocol:     TCP
    db_service_name: "%{hiera('db_name')}"

db2_server_list:
  "%{hiera('db_name')}":
    db2_type:        "%{hiera('db_platform')}"
    db2_host:        "%{::fqdn}"
    db2_port:        "%{hiera('db_port')}"
    db2_node:        TCPLNX01
    db2_target_db:   "%{hiera('db_name')}"

mssql_server_list:
  "%{hiera('db_name')}":
    mss_server_name: "%{::fqdn}"
    mss_odbc_name:   "ODBC Driver 11 for SQL Server"

#####################################################################
# Copy the entire section beginning here for                        #
# application server customization.                                 #
#####################################################################

appserver_domain_list:
  "%{hiera('appserver_domain_name')}":
    os_user:         "%{hiera('domain_user')}"
    ps_cfg_home_dir: "%{hiera('ps_config_home')}"
    template_type:   "%{hiera('appserver_template')}"
```

```
    db_settings:
      db_name:        "%{hiera('db_name')}"
      db_type:        "%{hiera('db_platform')}"
      db_opr_id:      "%{hiera('db_user')}"
      db_opr_pwd:     "%{hiera('db_user_pwd')}"
      db_connect_id:  "%{hiera('db_connect_id')}"
      db_connect_pwd: "%{hiera('db_connect_pwd')}"

    config_settings:
      Domain Settings/Domain ID:    "%{hiera('appserver_domain_name')}"
      PSAPPSRV/Min Instances:       2
      PSAPPSRV/Max Instances:       2
      PSAPPSRV/Max Fetch Size:      15000
      Security/DomainConnectionPwd: "%{hiera('domain_conn_pwd')}"
      JOLT Listener/Port:           "%{hiera('jolt_port')}"
      JOLT Listener/Address:        0.0.0.0
      Workstation Listener/Port:    "%{hiera('wsl_port')}"

    feature_settings:
      PUBSUB:        "Yes"
      QUICKSRV:      "No"
      QUERYSRV:      "No"
      JOLT:          "Yes"
      JRAD:          "No"
      WSL:           "Yes"
      DBGSRV:        "No"
      RENSRV:        "No"
      MCF:           "No"
      PPM:           "Yes"
      PSPPMSRV:      "Yes"
      ANALYTICSRV:   "No"
      SERVER_EVENTS: "Yes"
      DOMAIN_GW:     "No"
##################################################################
# End application server section.                               #
##################################################################

##################################################################
# Copy the entire section beginning here for                     #
# Process Scheduler customization                               #
##################################################################

prcs_domain_list:
  "%{hiera('prcs_domain_name')}":
    os_user:         "%{hiera('domain_user')}"
    ps_cfg_home_dir: "%{hiera('ps_config_home')}"

    db_settings:
      db_name:        "%{hiera('db_name')}"
      db_type:        "%{hiera('db_platform')}"
      db_opr_id:      "%{hiera('db_user')}"
      db_opr_pwd:     "%{hiera('db_user_pwd')}"
      db_connect_id:  "%{hiera('db_connect_id')}"
```

```
      db_connect_pwd: "%{hiera('db_connect_pwd')}"

    config_settings:
      Process Scheduler/PrcsServerName: "%{hiera('prcs_domain_id')}"
      Security/DomainConnectionPwd:     "%{hiera('domain_conn_pwd')}"

    feature_settings:
      MSTRSRV:      "Yes"
      APPENG:       "Yes"
#####################################################################
# End Process Scheduler section.                                    #
#####################################################################

#####################################################################
# Copy the entire section beginning here for PIA customization.     #
#####################################################################
pia_domain_list:
  "%{hiera('pia_domain_name')}":
    os_user:                "%{hiera('domain_user')}"
    ps_cfg_home_dir:        "%{hiera('ps_config_home')}"
    gateway_user:           "%{hiera('pia_gateway_user')}"
    gateway_user_pwd:       "%{hiera('pia_gateway_user_pwd')}"
    auth_token_domain:      ".%{::domain}"

    webserver_settings:
      webserver_type:           "%{hiera('webserver_type')}"
      webserver_home:           "%{hiera('weblogic_location')}"
      webserver_admin_user:     system
      webserver_admin_user_pwd:  ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]

#############################################################
# Replace this password sample with encrypted text from the  #
# generated psft_configuration.yaml file.                    #
#############################################################

      webserver_admin_port:     "%{hiera('pia_http_port')}"
      webserver_http_port:      "%{hiera('pia_http_port')}"
      webserver_https_port:     "%{hiera('pia_https_port')}"

    site_list:
      "%{hiera('pia_site_name')}":
        appserver_connections: "%{hiera('pia_psserver_list')}"
        domain_conn_pwd:       "%{hiera('domain_conn_pwd')}"

        webprofile_settings:
          profile_name:         "%{hiera('pia_webprofile_name')}"
          profile_user:         PTWEBSERVER
          profile_user_pwd:     ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]

#############################################################
# Replace this password sample with encrypted text from the  #
# generated psft_configuration.yaml file.                    #
#############################################################
```

```
        report_repository_dir: "%{hiera('report_repository_dir')}"
#####################################################################
# End PIA section.                                                  #
#####################################################################

ohs_domain:
    name:                       ohsdom

#########################################################
# Remaining text removed for brevity.                   #
#########################################################
```

Task 4-4-3: Reviewing the Customization File for a Single Application Server Domain

This sample shows a psft_customizations.yaml file for a single application server domain with the domain name APPDOM1. Be sure to retain the indentation as given in the delivered psft_configuration.yaml file when you copy the sections into the psft_customizations.yaml file. This sample includes annotations (marked by ###) for the purposes of this explanation.

If you want to create PeopleSoft domains in a non-default *PS_CFG_HOME* location, you must specify the desired value for the scalar parameter `ps_config_home` outside the `appserver_domain_list` section.

Note. Specify the same value for `ps_config_home` and for the `ps_cfg_home_dir` parameter in the `appserver_domain_list` section. They both must reference the same location.

See Preparing the Customization File for the PS_CFG_HOME Location.

```
---
appserver_domain_list:

### Custom application server domain name ###
  "APPDOM1":
    os_user:         "%{hiera('domain_user')}"
    template_type:   "%{hiera('appserver_template')}"

    ### Do not change the ps_cfg_home_dir parameter. ###
    ps_cfg_home_dir: "%{hiera('ps_config_home')}"



    db_settings:
      db_name:        "%{hiera('db_name')}"
      db_type:        "%{hiera('db_platform')}"
      db_opr_id:      "%{hiera('db_user')}"
      db_opr_pwd:     "%{hiera('db_user_pwd')}"
      db_connect_id:  "%{hiera('db_connect_id')}"
      db_connect_pwd: "%{hiera('db_connect_pwd')}"

    config_settings:
      Domain Settings/Domain ID:    IBUPG0
      PSAPPSRV/Min Instances:       3
      PSAPPSRV/Max Instances:       5
```

```
      JOLT Listener/Port:           "%{hiera('jolt_port')}"
      Workstation Listener/Port:    "%{hiera('wsl_port')}"

    feature_settings:
      PUBSUB:         "Yes"
      QUICKSRV:       "No"
      QUERYSRV:       "No"
      JOLT:           "Yes"
      JRAD:           "No"
      WSL:            "Yes"
      DBGSRV:         "No"
      RENSRV:         "No"
      MCF:            "No"
      PPM:            "Yes"
      PSPPMSRV:       "Yes"
      ANALYTICSRV:    "No"
      SERVER_EVENTS: "Yes"
      DOMAIN_GW:      "No"
```

Task 4-4-4: Reviewing the Customization File for a Single Process Scheduler Domain

This sample shows a psft_customizations.yaml file for a single Process Scheduler domain with the domain name PRCSDOM1. Be sure to retain the indentation as given in the delivered psft_configuration.yaml file when you copy the sections into the psft_customizations.yaml file. This sample includes annotations (marked by ###) for the purposes of this explanation.

If you want to create PeopleSoft domains in a non-default *PS_CFG_HOME* location, you must specify the desired value for the scalar parameter `ps_config_home` outside the `prcs_domain_list` section.

Note. Specify the same value for `ps_config_home` and for the `ps_cfg_home_dir` parameter in the `appserver_domain_list` section. They both must reference the same location.

See Preparing the Customization File for the PS_CFG_HOME Location.

```
---
prcs_domain_list:

### Custom Process Scheduler domain name ###
  "PRCSDOM1":
    os_user:         "%{hiera('domain_user')}"

    ### Do not change the ps_cfg_home_dir parameter. ###
    ps_cfg_home_dir: "%{hiera('ps_config_home')}"

    db_settings:
      db_name:        "%{hiera('db_name')}"
      db_type:        "%{hiera('db_platform')}"
      db_opr_id:      "%{hiera('db_user')}"
      db_opr_pwd:     "%{hiera('db_user_pwd')}"
      db_connect_id:  "%{hiera('db_connect_id')}"
      db_connect_pwd: "%{hiera('db_connect_pwd')}"
```

```
    config_settings:
      Process Scheduler/PrcsServerName: "%{hiera('prcs_domain_id')}"
      Security/DomainConnectionPwd:     "%{hiera('domain_conn_pwd')}"

    feature_settings:
      MSTRSRV:      "Yes"
      APPENG:       "Yes"
```

Task 4-4-5: Reviewing the Customization File for a Single PIA Domain

This sample shows a psft_customizations.yaml file for a single PIA domain with the domain name PIAHR1. Be sure to retain the indentation as given in the delivered psft_configuration.yaml file when you copy the sections into the psft_customizations.yaml file. This sample includes annotations (marked by ###) for the purposes of this explanation.

Note. Do not use the reserved names PIA, PIA1, PIA2, or weblogic for the PIA (web server) domain.

If you want to create PeopleSoft domains in a non-default *PS_CFG_HOME* location, you must specify the desired value for the scalar parameter `ps_config_home` outside the `pia_domain_list` section.

Note. Specify the same value for `ps_config_home` and for the `ps_cfg_home_dir` parameter in the `appserver_domain_list` section. They both must reference the same location.

See Preparing the Customization File for the PS_CFG_HOME Location.

```
---
pia_domain_list:

## Custom PIA domain name###
  "PIAHR1":
    os_user:                "%{hiera('domain_user')}"

    ### Do not change the ps_cfg_home_dir parameter. ###
    ps_cfg_home_dir:        "%{hiera('ps_config_home')}"
    gateway_user:           "%{hiera('pia_gateway_user')}"
    gateway_user_pwd:       "%{hiera('pia_gateway_user_pwd')}"
    auth_token_domain:      ".%{::domain}"
    webserver_install_type: "%{hiera('webserver_install_type')}"

    webserver_settings:
      webserver_type:           "%{hiera('webserver_type')}"
      webserver_home:           "%{hiera('weblogic_location')}"
      webserver_admin_user:     system
      webserver_admin_user_pwd: ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]
      webserver_admin_port:     "%{hiera('pia_http_port')}"
      webserver_http_port:      "%{hiera('pia_http_port')}"
      webserver_https_port:     "%{hiera('pia_https_port')}"

    site_list:
      "%{hiera('pia_site_name')}":
        appserver_connections: "%{hiera('pia_psserver_list')}"
        domain_conn_pwd:       "%{hiera('domain_conn_pwd')}"
```

```
    webprofile_settings:
      profile_name:        "%{hiera('pia_webprofile_name')}"
      profile_user:        PTWEBSERVER
      profile_user_pwd:    ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]

    report_repository_dir: "%{hiera('report_repository_dir')}"
```

Task 4-4-6: Reviewing the Customization File for a PIA Domain on a Separate Host

If you want to set up an environment in which the PIA domain and web server are not on the same machine as the application server domain, you must use customizations to specify the machine where the application server is installed. This customization is required for the Integration Broker configuration.

The generated psft_configuration.yaml includes the following parameter, which sets the host for Integration Broker to the PIA host, which by default is the machine where the DPK setup script is run:

```
env.ib_appserver_host:            "%{hiera('pia_host_name')}"
```

If you use the DPK setup script to set up a PIA domain only, and the PIA domain is not on the same machine as your application server domain, the value for the `env.ib_appserver_host` parameter must be set to the application server machine name.

See "Deploying the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Deployment Packages," Running the DPK Setup Script to Deploy a PIA Domain.

Copy the entire `component_postboot_setup_list` collection type parameter section (comprised of several lines) from psft_configuration.yaml and paste it into psft_customizations.yaml. Change the value for `env.ib_appserver_host` to point to the host where the application server is set up, for example `ps_app_server1`. Be sure to retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file when you copy the sections into the psft_customizations.yaml file.

Note. Do not use the reserved names PIA, PIA1, PIA2, or weblogic for the PIA (web server) domain.

This sample shows a sample psft_customizations.yaml file, with annotations added (marked by ###) for the purposes of this explanation.

```
---
component_postboot_setup_list:
  integration_broker:
    run_control_id:                        intbroker
    os_user:                               "%{hiera('domain_user')}"

    db_settings:
      db_name:                             "%{hiera('db_name')}"
      db_type:                             "%{hiera('db_platform')}"
      db_opr_id:                           "%{hiera('db_user')}"
      db_opr_pwd:                          "%{hiera('db_user_pwd')}"
      db_connect_id:                       "%{hiera('db_connect_id')}"
      db_connect_pwd:                      "%{hiera('db_connect_pwd')}"

    acm_plugin_list:
      PTIBActivateDomain:
        domain.activate_retry_count:       10
        domain.activate_wait_time:         10
```

```
      PTIBConfigureGatewayNodes:
        env.gateway_host:                  "%{hiera('pia_host_name')}"
        env.gateway_port:                  "%{hiera('pia_http_port')}"
        env.gateway_ssl_port:              "%{hiera('pia_https_port')}"
        env.use_ssl_gateway:               false
        env.default_local_node:            "%{hiera('gateway_node_name')}"
        env.gateway_user:                  "%{hiera('pia_gateway_user')}"
        env.gateway_password:              "%{hiera('pia_gateway_user_⇒
pwd')}"

###Custom application server name ###
        env.ib_appserver_host:             ps_app_server1
        env.ib_jolt_port:                  "%{hiera('jolt_port')}"
        env.ib_node_proxy_userid:          "%{hiera('db_user')}"
        env.ib_node_proxy_password:        "%{hiera('db_user_pwd')}"
        env.tools_release:                 "%ToolsRelease"
        env.ib_appserver_domain_password: "%{hiera('domain_conn_pwd')}"
        env.ib_set_as_default_node:        true

      PTIBConfigureGatewayProperties:
        env.gateway_keystore_password:     password

      PTWebServerConfigUpdate:
        env.domainname:                    "%{hiera('pia_domain_name')}"
        env.sitename:                      "%{hiera('pia_site_name')}"
        env.piahome:                       "%{hiera('ps_config_home')}"
        env.psserver:                      ""
        env.KeyStorePwd:                   ""

    acm_plugin_order:
      - PTIBActivateDomain
      - PTIBConfigureGatewayNodes
      - PTIBConfigureGatewayProperties
      - PTWebServerConfigUpdate
```

Task 4-4-7: Reviewing the Customization File for Multiple Web Sites in a Single Web Domain

Use these guidelines to create the psft_customizations.yaml file for a single PIA (web server) domain with two or more web sites. This sample shows the psft_customizations.yaml file for a single PIA domain, called PIAHR2, with two web sites, hr92dev and hr92site. Be sure to also fulfill the guidelines in the section Preparing the psft_customizations.yaml File.

Be sure to retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file when you copy the sections into the psft_customizations.yaml file.

- Copy the entire `pia_domain_list` collection type parameter (comprised of several lines) from psft_configuration.yaml and change the value `"%{hiera('pia_domain_name')}"` to the desired name for the PIA domain, PIAHR2 in this example.

  Note. Do not use the reserved names PIA, PIA1, PIA2, or weblogic for the PIA (web server) domain.

- In the `pia_domain_list` collection type parameter, to add a second web site, copy the portion defining

the web site, and paste it below the first, default, web site definition. Copy and paste the web site portion for as many web sites as you need, and specify different names for the each site.

- Replace the password sample here with encrypted text from the generated psft_configuration.yaml file.

Note. Use clear text passwords for silent mode installation.

Here is a sample psft_customizations.yaml file, with annotations added (marked by ###) for the purposes of this explanation.

```
---
### PIA domain with modified name###
pia_domain_list:
  "PIAHR2":
    os_user:               "%{hiera('domain_user')}"
    ps_cfg_home_dir:       "%{hiera('ps_config_home')}"
    gateway_user:          "%{hiera('pia_gateway_user')}"
    gateway_user_pwd:      "%{hiera('pia_gateway_user_pwd')}"
    auth_token_domain:     ".%{::domain}"

    webserver_settings:
      webserver_type:           "%{hiera('webserver_type')}"
      webserver_home:           "%{hiera('weblogic_location')}"
      webserver_admin_user:     system
      webserver_admin_user_pwd: ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]
      webserver_admin_port:     "50000"
      webserver_http_port:      "50000"
      webserver_https_port:     "50005"

    site_list:
### First web site with modified name ###
      "hr92dev":
        appserver_connections: "%{hiera('pia_psserver_list')}"
        domain_conn_pwd:       "%{hiera('domain_conn_pwd')}"

        webprofile_settings:
          profile_name:        "%{hiera('pia_webprofile_name')}"
          profile_user:        PTWEBSERVER
          profile_user_pwd:    ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]

        report_repository_dir: "%{hiera('report_repository_dir')}"

### Second web site with modified name ###
      "hr92site":
        appserver_connections: "%{hiera('pia_psserver_list')}"
        domain_conn_pwd:       "%{hiera('domain_conn_pwd')}"

        webprofile_settings:
          profile_name:        "%{hiera('pia_webprofile_name')}"
          profile_user:        PTWEBSERVER
          profile_user_pwd:    ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]

        report_repository_dir: "%{hiera('report_repository_dir')}"
```

Task 4-4-8: Reviewing the Customization File for Multiple Domains

For multiple domains, duplicate the entire domain section, again maintaining the indentation from the original psft_configuration.yaml file. This sample shows a psft_customizations.yaml file for two application server domains, two PIA domains, and two Process Scheduler domains, with annotations added for the purposes of this explanation. The annotations are labelled with letters referring to the text discussion, and by ### characters, such as `###(A)###`.

Follow these guidelines in creating a psft_customizations.yaml file for customized PeopleSoft domains. The letters correspond to those in the code sample.

- (A) For more than one application server, include the `pia_psserver_list` entry at the top of the psft_customizations.yaml definitions. List the application server domains that are used by the PIA domains, using the format *<application_server_host>:<Jolt port>*. Separate the entries with a comma.
- (B) Copy the entire section for the domains that you want to customize.

  Be sure to retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file when you copy the sections into the psft_customizations.yaml file.
- (C) Specify unique names for each domain.
- (D) Specify unique ports for each domain.
- (E) If specifying more than one application server domain, you must configure the REN server to use a unique port by setting the attribute `PSRENSRV/default_http_port` to a value other than the default, 7180 in the psft_customizations.yaml.

  Note. The REN server setting is also a requirement for a traditional PeopleSoft installation when setting up more than one application server on a single machine.

- (F) If specifying more than one Process Scheduler domain, you must specify unique Process Scheduler server names.

  In this sample, the first Process Scheduler server uses the default value, which is defined as an interpolation token. The second Process Scheduler server has a different name, `PRCS222`.

  (G) In addition, the Master Scheduler Server should be enabled for the first Process Scheduler domain (`MSTRSRV: "Yes"`), and disabled for subsequent Process Scheduler domains (`MSTRSRV: "No"`).

  See *PeopleTools: Process Scheduler*, "Understanding PeopleSoft Master Scheduler Server."
- (H) If specifying more than one PIA domain, you must specify different site names for each.

  In this sample, the first PIA site name uses the default value, which is defined as an interpolation token. The second PIA site name has a different name, `ps222`.

```
---
pia_psserver_list:   "hostname.example.com:9033,hostname.example.com:9043"
### (A) ###

appserver_domain_list:
  "APPDOM111":                                                  ###(B), (C)###
    os_user:          "%{hiera('domain_user')}"
    template_type:    "%{hiera('appserver_template')}"
    ps_cfg_home_dir: "%{hiera('ps_config_home')}"

    db_settings:
      db_name:         "%{hiera('db_name')}"
```

```
    db_type:        "%{hiera('db_platform')}"
    db_opr_id:      "%{hiera('db_user')}"
    db_opr_pwd:     "%{hiera('db_user_pwd')}"
    db_connect_id:  "%{hiera('db_connect_id')}"
    db_connect_pwd: "%{hiera('db_connect_pwd')}"

  config_settings:
    Domain Settings/Domain ID:    IBUPG0
    PSAPPSRV/Min Instances:       3
    PSAPPSRV/Max Instances:       5
    JOLT Listener/Port:           9033                          ###(D)###
    Workstation Listener/Port:    7000                          ###(D)###

  feature_settings:
    PUBSUB:        "Yes"
    QUICKSRV:      "No"
    QUERYSRV:      "No"
    JOLT:          "Yes"
    JRAD:          "No"
    WSL:           "Yes"
    DBGSRV:        "No"
    RENSRV:        "No"
    MCF:           "No"
    PPM:           "Yes"
    PSPPMSRV:      "Yes"
    ANALYTICSRV:   "No"
    SERVER_EVENTS: "Yes"
    DOMAIN_GW:     "No"

"APPDOM222":                                                  ###(B), (C)###
  os_user:         "%{hiera('domain_user')}"
  template_type:   "%{hiera('appserver_template')}"
  ps_cfg_home_dir: "%{hiera('ps_config_home')}"

  db_settings:
    db_name:        "%{hiera('db_name')}"
    db_type:        "%{hiera('db_platform')}"
    db_opr_id:      "%{hiera('db_user')}"
    db_opr_pwd:     "%{hiera('db_user_pwd')}"
    db_connect_id:  "%{hiera('db_connect_id')}"
    db_connect_pwd: "%{hiera('db_connect_pwd')}"

  config_settings:
    Domain Settings/Domain ID:    IBUPG0
    PSAPPSRV/Min Instances:       3
    PSAPPSRV/Max Instances:       5
    JOLT Listener/Port:           9043                          ###(D)###
    Workstation Listener/Port:    7001                          ###(D)###
    PSRENSRV/default_http_port:   7191                          ###(E)###

  feature_settings:
    PUBSUB:        "Yes"
    QUICKSRV:      "No"
```

```
      QUERYSRV:      "No"
      JOLT:          "Yes"
      JRAD:          "No"
      WSL:           "Yes"
      DBGSRV:        "No"
      RENSRV:        "No"
      MCF:           "No"
      PPM:           "Yes"
      PSPPMSRV:      "Yes"
      ANALYTICSRV:   "No"
      SERVER_EVENTS: "Yes"
      DOMAIN_GW:     "No"


pia_domain_list:
  "PIADOM111":                                          ###(B), (C)###
    os_user:               "%{hiera('domain_user')}"
    ps_cfg_home_dir:       "%{hiera('ps_config_home')}"
    gateway_user:          "%{hiera('pia_gateway_user')}"
    gateway_user_pwd:      "%{hiera('pia_gateway_user_pwd')}"
    auth_token_domain:     ".%{::domain}"

    webserver_settings:
      webserver_type:          "%{hiera('webserver_type')}"
      webserver_home:          "%{hiera('weblogic_location')}"
      webserver_admin_user:    system
      webserver_admin_user_pwd: ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]

#############################################################
# Replace this password sample with encrypted text from the  #
# generated psft_configuration.yaml file.                    #
#############################################################

      webserver_admin_port:    8000                          ###(D)###
      webserver_http_port:     8000                          ###(D)###
      webserver_https_port:    8443                          ###(D)###

    site_list:
      "%{hiera('pia_site_name')}":                           ###(H)###
        appserver_connections: "%{hiera('pia_psserver_list')}"
        domain_conn_pwd:       "%{hiera('domain_conn_pwd')}"

        webprofile_settings:
          profile_name:        "%{hiera('pia_webprofile_name')}"
          profile_user:        PTWEBSERVER
          profile_user_pwd:    ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]

#############################################################
# Replace this password sample with encrypted text from the  #
# generated psft_configuration.yaml file.                    #
#############################################################

        report_repository_dir: "%{hiera('report_repository_dir')}"
```

```
  "PIADOM222":                                                  ###(B), (C)###
    os_user:               "%{hiera('domain_user')}"
    ps_cfg_home_dir:       "%{hiera('ps_config_home')}"
    gateway_user:          "%{hiera('pia_gateway_user')}"
    gateway_user_pwd:      "%{hiera('pia_gateway_user_pwd')}"
    auth_token_domain:     ".%{::domain}"

    webserver_settings:
      webserver_type:           "%{hiera('webserver_type')}"
      webserver_home:           "%{hiera('weblogic_location')}"
      webserver_admin_user:     system
      webserver_admin_user_pwd: ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]

#############################################################
# Replace this password sample with encrypted text from the  #
# generated psft_configuration.yaml file.                    #
#############################################################

      webserver_admin_port:     8002                              ###(D)###
      webserver_http_port:      8002                              ###(D)###
      webserver_https_port:     8445                              ###(D)###

    site_list:
      "ps222":                                                    ###(H)###
        appserver_connections: "%{hiera('pia_psserver_list')}"
        domain_conn_pwd:       "%{hiera('domain_conn_pwd')}"

        webprofile_settings:
          profile_name:        "%{hiera('pia_webprofile_name')}"
          profile_user:        PTWEBSERVER
          profile_user_pwd:    ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]

#############################################################
# Replace this password sample with encrypted text from the  #
# generated psft_configuration.yaml file.                    #
#############################################################

        report_repository_dir: "%{hiera('report_repository_dir')}"


prcs_domain_list:
  "PRCSDOM111":
    os_user:         "%{hiera('domain_user')}"
    ps_cfg_home_dir: "%{hiera('ps_config_home')}"

    db_settings:
      db_name:        "%{hiera('db_name')}"
      db_type:        "%{hiera('db_platform')}"
      db_opr_id:      "%{hiera('db_user')}"
      db_opr_pwd:     "%{hiera('db_user_pwd')}"
      db_connect_id:  "%{hiera('db_connect_id')}"
      db_connect_pwd: "%{hiera('db_connect_pwd')}"
```

```
    config_settings:
      Process Scheduler/PrcsServerName: "%{hiera('prcs_domain_id')}" ###⇒
(F)###
      Security/DomainConnectionPwd:     "%{hiera('domain_conn_pwd')}"

    feature_settings:
      MSTRSRV:      "Yes"                                          ###(G)###
      APPENG:       "Yes"

  "PRCSDOM222":
    os_user:          "%{hiera('domain_user')}"
    ps_cfg_home_dir: "%{hiera('ps_config_home')}"

    db_settings:
      db_name:         "%{hiera('db_name')}"
      db_type:         "%{hiera('db_platform')}"
      db_opr_id:       "%{hiera('db_user')}"
      db_opr_pwd:      "%{hiera('db_user_pwd')}"
      db_connect_id:   "%{hiera('db_connect_id')}"
      db_connect_pwd: "%{hiera('db_connect_pwd')}"

    config_settings:
      Process Scheduler/PrcsServerName: PRCS222                    ###(F)###
      Security/DomainConnectionPwd:     "%{hiera('domain_conn_pwd')}"

    feature_settings:
      MSTRSRV:      "No"                                           ###(G)###
      APPENG:       "Yes"
```

Task 4-5: Preparing the Customization File to Create PeopleSoft Domains Without Configuration

The default DPK initialization includes pre-boot and post-boot processes that use Automated Configuration Manager (ACM) plug-ins to configure and start the PeopleSoft domains. The ACM configuration, for example, sets up Integration Broker and the report repository for the Process Scheduler.

Use this customization if you want to install the necessary software for the PeopleSoft Application Server, PIA, and Process Scheduler servers without running the pre-boot and post-boot ACM processes. After you complete the DPK deployment with this customization, you can complete the configuration as needed.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations before preparing the customization file.

To prepare the customization file:

1. Locate the psft_configuration.yaml file, which was installed by the deployment, in *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data.
2. If necessary, create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool, such as Notepad on Microsoft Windows or vi on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, and save it in the same location as the generated psft_configuration.yaml file.

   If this is the first entry in the psft_customizations.yaml file, ensure that there are three dashes (`---`) on the

first line of the file. Do not indent the dashes.

3. Copy the parameters below from the psft_configuration.yaml file and paste them into the psft_customizations.yaml file.

   Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file.

   ```
   run_preboot_config_setup: true
   run_postboot_config_setup: true
   ```

4. To specify that the deployment does not run the pre-boot and post-boot ACM processes, change the values to "false"; for example:

   ```
   ---
   run_preboot_config_setup: false
   run_postboot_config_setup: false
   ```

5. Save the file.
6. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-6: Preparing the Customization File for Component Software Locations

Use the information in this section if you want to customize an installation location, for example to use an existing installation of Oracle Tuxedo or Oracle WebLogic.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations before preparing the customization file.

1. Locate the psft_deployment.yaml file in *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data.

   Note. The code examples in this topic are for illustrative purposes only. Remember to use the text from the YAML files you install with each new deployment as the basis for your psft_customizations.yaml file.

   The installation locations for Oracle Tuxedo, Oracle WebLogic, JDK, and Oracle database client are defined in the psft_deployment.yaml file that is installed with the deployment.

2. If necessary, create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool, such as Notepad on Microsoft Windows or vi on Linux, AIX, HP-UX or Solaris, and save it in the same location as the psft_deployment.yaml file.

   If this is the first entry in the psft_customizations.yaml file, ensure that there are three dashes (`---`) on the first line of the file. Do not indent the dashes.

3. Select one or more of the sections corresponding to the components that you want to customize, and copy them to the psft_customizations.yaml file.

   As previously mentioned, setting the optional attribute `remove: false` means that the parameters in this section will not be deleted when the deployed environment is removed.

   - For JDK, copy the `jdk_location` scalar parameter, and the entire `jdk` collection-type section (comprised of two lines) from the psft_deployment.yaml file into the psft_customizations.yaml file. Be sure to set the locations to the same value. Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file.

     ```
     ---
     jdk_location:    C:/jdk
     jdk:
     ```

```
  location:  C:/jdk
  remove:        false
```

- For Oracle Tuxedo, copy both the `tuxedo_location` scalar parameter and the entire `tuxedo` collection-type section (comprised of two lines) from the psft_deployment.yaml file into the psft_customizations.yaml file. Be sure to set the locations to the same value. Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file.

  ```
  ---
  tuxedo_location:   C:/psft/tuxedo
  tuxedo:
    location:      C:/psft/tuxedo
    remove:        false
  ```

- For Oracle WebLogic, copy both the `weblogic_location` scalar parameter and the entire `weblogic` collection-type section (comprised of two lines) from the psft_deployment.yaml file into the psft_customizations.yaml file. Be sure to set the locations to the same value. Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file.

  ```
  ---
  weblogic_location:  C:/psft/weblogic
  weblogic:
    location:         C:/psft/weblogic
    remove:           false
  ```

- For Oracle Client, copy both the `oracle_client_location` scalar parameter and the entire `oracle_client` collection-type section (comprised of two lines) from the psft_deployment.yaml file into the psft_customizations.yaml file. Be sure to set the locations to the same value. Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file.

  ```
  ---
  oracle_client_location: <Oracle_Home>
  oracle_client:
    location: <Oracle_Home>
  ```

  For example, to specify the location of pre-existing Oracle database client software:

  ```
  ---
  oracle_client_location:  C:/oracle/product/12.1.2/dbhome_1
  oracle_client:
    location:  C:/oracle/product/12.1.2/dbhome_1
  ```

- If you want to customize JDK, Oracle Tuxedo, and Oracle WebLogic, add all three entries to psft_customizations.yaml; for example:

  ```
  ---

  jdk_location:    C:/jdk
  jdk:
    location:      C:/jdk
    remove:        false

  tuxedo_location:   C:/psft/tuxedo
  tuxedo:
    location:      C:/psft/tuxedo
    remove:        false
  ```

```
  weblogic_location:  C:/psft/weblogic
  weblogic:
    location:         C:/psft/weblogic
    remove:           false
```

4. Save the file.
5. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-7: Preparing the Customization File for Unicode

Use these instructions if you want to change the Unicode designation for your database.

Note. Do not try to set up a non-Unicode environment if you are deploying the PeopleSoft Update Image DPKs for use with PeopleSoft Update Manager. The environments for the PeopleSoft Updates Images are required to be Unicode.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations before preparing the customization file.

1. Locate the psft_deployment.yaml file.

   Note. The code examples in this topic are for illustrative purposes only. Remember to use the text from the YAML files you install with each new deployment as the basis for your psft_customizations.yaml file.

   By default, the DPK setup script installs the YAML files in *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data.

   The `unicode_db` parameter is part of the `ps_home` section.

   ```
   ps_home:
     db_type:    "%{hiera('db_platform')}"
     unicode_db: "%{hiera('unicode_db')}"
     location:   "%{hiera('ps_home_location')}"
   ```

2. If necessary, create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool, such as Notepad on Microsoft Windows or vi on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, and save it in the same location as the psft_deployment.yaml file.

   If this is the first entry in the psft_customizations.yaml file, ensure that there are three dashes (`---`) on the first line of the file. Do not indent the dashes.

3. Copy the entire `ps_home` section from psft_deployment.yaml, maintaining the indentation, into the psft_customizations.yaml file.

   For a Unicode database, set the value for `unicode_db` to true:

   ```
   ---
   ps_home:
     db_type:    "%{hiera('db_platform')}"
     unicode_db: true
     location:   "%{hiera('ps_home_location')}"
   ```

   For a non-Unicode database, set the value for `unicode_db` to false:

   ```
   ---
   ps_home:
     db_type:    "%{hiera('db_platform')}"
   ```

```
  unicode_db: false
  location:   "%{hiera('ps_home_location')}"
```

4. Save the file.
5. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-8: Preparing the Customization Files for the PeopleSoft Homes

This section discusses:

- Preparing the Customization File for the PS_HOME Location
- Preparing the Customization File for the PS_APP_HOME Location
- Preparing the Customization File for the PS_CFG_HOME Location
- Preparing the Customization File for the PS_CUST_HOME Location

Task 4-8-1: Preparing the Customization File for the PS_HOME Location

By default, the DPK setup script creates the *PS_HOME* directory in *BASE_DIR/*pt/ps_home<*release*>, where <release> is the PeopleSoft PeopleTools patch release, such as 8.58.12. Use these steps to specify a different *PS_HOME* location.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations before preparing the customization file.

1. Locate the psft_deployment.yaml file in *BASE_DIR/*dpk/puppet/production/data.

   Note. The code examples in this topic are for illustrative purposes only. Remember to use the text from the YAML files you install with each new deployment as the basis for your psft_customizations.yaml file.

   The *PS_HOME* installation location is specified by the `ps_home` section (comprised of four lines).

   ```
   ps_home:
     db_type:    "%{hiera('db_platform')}"
     unicode_db: "%{hiera('unicode_db')}"
     location:   "%{hiera('ps_home_location')}"
   ```

2. If necessary, create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool, such as Notepad on Microsoft Windows or vi on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, and save it in the same location as the psft_deployment.yaml file.

   If this is the first entry in the psft_customizations.yaml file, ensure that there are three dashes (`---`) on the first line of the file. Do not indent the dashes.

3. Copy the entire section from the psft_deployment.yaml file into the psft_customizations.yaml file and modify the location value as needed.

   Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file.

   For example, on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris:

   ```
   ---
   ps_home:
   ```

```
  db_type:     "%{hiera('db_platform')}"
  unicode_db: "%{hiera('unicode_db')}"
  location:    "/home/psft8.58.12"
```

For example, on Microsoft Windows:

```
---
ps_home:
  db_type:     "%{hiera('db_platform')}"
  unicode_db: "%{hiera('unicode_db')}"
  location:    "C:/psft8.58.12"
```

4. Save the file.
5. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-8-2: Preparing the Customization File for the PS_APP_HOME Location

By default, the DPK setup script creates the *PS_APP_HOME* directory in *BASE_DIR*/pt/<*Product*>_app_home, where <Product> is the abbreviation for the PeopleSoft application, such as fscm for PeopleSoft Financials and Supply Chain Management.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations before preparing the customization file.

Here are two scenarios where you might use this customization:

- If you are performing a new installation using the PeopleSoft DPKs, and you do not want to use the default *PS_APP_HOME* location created by the DPK setup script, use this customization to specify and create the desired *PS_APP_HOME* directory.
- If you are performing a mid-tier deployment to connect to an existing environment, use this customization to specify the existing *PS_APP_HOME*.

Use these steps to specify the *PS_APP_HOME* location.

1. Locate the psft_deployment.yaml file in *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data.

   Note. The code examples in this topic are for illustrative purposes only. Remember to use the text from the YAML files you install with each new deployment as the basis for your psft_customizations.yaml file.

   The *PS_APP_HOME* installation location is specified by the `ps_app_home` section.

   ```
   ps_apphome_location:  "%{hiera('pt_location')}/hcm_app_home"
   ps_app_home:
     db_type: "%{hiera('db_platform')}"
     include_ml_files: false
     location: "%{hiera('ps_apphome_location')}"
   ```

2. If necessary, create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool, such as Notepad on Microsoft Windows or vi on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, and save it in the same location as the psft_deployment.yaml file.

   If this is the first entry in the psft_customizations.yaml file, ensure that there are three dashes (`---`) on the first line of the file. Do not indent the dashes.

3. To override the location, copy the entire section from the psft_deployment.yaml file into the psft_customizations.yaml file and modify the location value as needed.

Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file.

For example, on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris:

```
---
ps_apphome_location:  "/home/hcm92_home"
ps_app_home:
  db_type: "%{hiera('db_platform')}"
  include_ml_files: false
  location: "/home/hcm92_home"
```

For example, on Microsoft Windows:

```
---
ps_apphome_location:  "C:/hcm92_home"
ps_app_home:
  db_type: "%{hiera('db_platform')}"
  include_ml_files: false
  location: "C:/hcm92_home"
```

4. Save the file.
5. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-8-3: Preparing the Customization File for the PS_CFG_HOME Location

By default, the DPK setup script creates the *PS_CFG_HOME* directory in *<user_profile>*/psft/pt/8.58, such as C:/users/username/psft/pt/8.58 on Microsoft Windows, and /home/psadm2/psft/pt/8.58 on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris. Note that you cannot specify different *PS_CFG_HOME* locations for different PeopleSoft domains. The DPK installation requires the same *PS_CFG_HOME* be used for all domains. Use these steps to specify the *PS_CFG_HOME* location.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations before preparing the customization file.

---

1. Locate the psft_configuration.yaml file in *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data.

   Note. The code examples in this topic are for illustrative purposes only. Remember to use the text from the YAML files you install with each new deployment as the basis for your psft_customizations.yaml file.

   The *PS_CFG_HOME* installation location is specified by the ps_config_home parameter.

   ```
   ps_config_home:         "%{hiera('user_home_dir')}/%{hiera('domain_⇒
   user')}/psft/pt/8.58"
   ```

2. If necessary, create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool, such as Notepad on Microsoft Windows or vi on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, and save it in the same location as the psft_configuration.yaml file.

   If this is the first entry in the psft_customizations.yaml file, ensure that there are three dashes (`---`) on the first line of the file. Do not indent the dashes.

3. Copy the entire section from the psft_configuration.yaml file into the psft_customizations.yaml file and modify the location value as needed.

   Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file.

   For example, on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris:

```
---
ps_config_home:         "/home/pt858_config"
```

For example, on Microsoft Windows:

```
---
ps_config_home:         "C:/pt858_config"
```

4. Save the file.
5. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-8-4: Preparing the Customization File for the PS_CUST_HOME Location

Use the *PS_CUST_HOME* location for files such as COBOL and SQR that originate with your organization. The delivered YAML files do not include a *PS_CUST_HOME* location. The DPK setup script creates the *PS_CUST_HOME* if it does not exist.

Note. Setting a PS_CUST_HOME environment variable, which was used for non-DPK deployments, does not work.

---

1. If necessary, create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool, such as Notepad on Microsoft Windows or vi on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, and save it in the same location as the psft_configuration.yaml file.

   If this is the first entry in the psft_customizations.yaml file, ensure that there are three dashes (`---`) on the first line of the file. Do not indent the dashes.
2. Add the following parameters in the psft_customizations.yaml file and modify the location value as needed.

   Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file.

   For example, on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris:

   ```
   ---
   ps_cust_home_location:       "/home/pscusthome"
   ps_cust_home:
     location:   "/home/pscusthome"
   ```

   For example, on Microsoft Windows:

   ```
   ---
   ps_cust_home_location:        "C:/pscusthome"
   ps_cust_home:
     location:   "C:/pscusthome"
   ```

3. Save the file.
4. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-9: Preparing the Customization File for Jolt SSL and WSL SSL Ports

You have the option to use the Secure Socket Layers/Transport Layer Security (SSL/TSL) protocol for Workstation Listener and Jolt Listener ports for the application server configuration. To use this protocol you must set up an Oracle wallet for the digital certificates.

See *PeopleTools: Security Administration,* "Installing Web Server-Based Digital Certificates."

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations before preparing the customization file.

1. Locate the psft_configuration.yaml file in *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data.

   Note. The code examples in this topic are for illustrative purposes only. Remember to use the text from the YAML files you install with each new deployment as the basis for your psft_customizations.yaml file.

2. If necessary, create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool, such as Notepad on Microsoft Windows or vi on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, and save it in the same location as the psft_configuration.yaml file.

   If this is the first entry in the psft_customizations.yaml file, ensure that there are three dashes (`---`) on the first line of the file. Do not indent the dashes.

3. Copy the entire `appserver_domain_list` section from psft_configuration.yaml to psft_customizations.yaml.

   When you copy, retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file.

4. Add the following parameters to the psft_customizations.yaml file:

   Note. These parameters are not included in the delivered psft_configuration.yaml file.

   - Specify the SSL/TSL port for the Jolt listener; for example 9010.

     ```
     JOLT Listener/SSL Port:                 9010
     ```

   - Specify the SSL/TSL port for the Workstation listener, for example 7010:

     ```
     Workstation Listener/SSL Port:         7010
     ```

   - Specify the location of the wallet containing the certificates:

     ```
     Oracle Wallet/SEC_PRINCIPAL_LOCATION: test/security
     ```

   - Specify the wallet name, for example psft:

     ```
     Oracle Wallet/SEC_PRINCIPAL_NAME:     psft
     ```

   - Specify the wallet password:

     ```
     Oracle Wallet/SEC_PRINCIPAL_PASSWORD:
     ```

5. Modify the psft_customizations.yaml file, including the added parameters from the previous step, with values for your environment.

   Note. Be sure to retain the indentation shown in this example.

   This sample psft_customizations.yaml file shows the parameters added from step 4 in bold font:

   ```
   ---

   appserver_domain_list:
     "%{hiera('appserver_domain_name')}":
       os_user:         "%{hiera('domain_user')}"
       ps_cfg_home_dir: "%{hiera('ps_config_home')}"
       template_type:   "%{hiera('appserver_template')}"
   ```

```
    db_settings:
      db_name:        "%{hiera('db_name')}"
      db_type:        "%{hiera('db_platform')}"
      db_opr_id:      "%{hiera('db_user')}"
      db_opr_pwd:     "%{hiera('db_user_pwd')}"
      db_connect_id:  "%{hiera('db_connect_id')}"
      db_connect_pwd: "%{hiera('db_connect_pwd')}"

    config_settings:
      Domain Settings/Allow Dynamic Changes:    Y
      Domain Settings/Domain ID:            "%{hiera('appserver_domain_⇒
name')}"
      PSAPPSRV/Min Instances:               2
      PSAPPSRV/Max Instances:               2
      PSAPPSRV/Max Fetch Size:              15000
      Security/DomainConnectionPwd:         "%{hiera('domain_conn_⇒
pwd')}"
      JOLT Listener/Port:                   "%{hiera('jolt_port')}"
      JOLT Listener/Address:                 0.0.0.0
      JOLT Listener/SSL Port:                9010
      Workstation Listener/Port:            "%{hiera('wsl_port')}"
      Workstation Listener/SSL Port:        7010

      Oracle Wallet/SEC_PRINCIPAL_LOCATION: test/security

      Oracle Wallet/SEC_PRINCIPAL_NAME:     psft

      Oracle Wallet/SEC_PRINCIPAL_PASSWORD:


    feature_settings:
      PUBSUB:         "Yes"
      QUICKSRV:       "No"
      QUERYSRV:       "No"
      JOLT:           "Yes"
      JRAD:           "No"
      WSL:            "Yes"
      DBGSRV:         "No"
      RENSRV:         "No"
      MCF:            "No"
      PPM:            "Yes"
      PSPPMSRV:       "Yes"
      ANALYTICSRV:    "No"
      SERVER_EVENTS:  "Yes"
      DOMAIN_GW:      "No"
```

6. Save the file.
7. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-10: Preparing the Customization File for Oracle HTTP Server

Use the information in this section if you want to customize the installation of Oracle HTTP Server (OHS). OHS is included as part of Oracle WebLogic, and is used as a reverse proxy server (RPS).

Note. You cannot install OHS alone. The OHS installation is part of the PeopleTools DPK deployment.

See *PeopleTools: Portal Technology,* "Using Reverse Proxy Servers."

See *Fusion Middleware Installing and Configuring Oracle HTTP Server,* Oracle Help Center, https://docs.oracle.com/middleware/1213/core/install-ohs/toc.htm.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations before preparing the customization file.

1. Locate the psft_deployment.yaml and psft_configuration.yaml files in *BASE_DIR/* dpk/puppet/production/data.

   The parameter to turn OHS on, and the installation location are located in psft_deployment.yaml. The OHS domain configuration parameters are included in psft_configuration.yaml.

   Note. The code examples in this topic are for illustrative purposes only. Remember to use the text from the YAML files you install with each new deployment as the basis for your psft_customizations.yaml file.

2. If necessary, create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool, such as Notepad on Microsoft Windows or vi on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, and save it in the same location as the psft_deployment.yaml and psft_configuration.yaml files.

   Ensure that the file begins with three dashes (`---`).

3. Change the value for `setup_ohs` to true.

   This is mandatory to enable OHS. In addition, select other sections listed below, corresponding to the components that you want to customize, and copy them to the psft_customizations.yaml file.

   As previously mentioned, setting the optional attribute `remove: false` means that the parameters in this section will not be deleted when the deployed environment is removed.

   - To enable OHS (mandatory), copy the `setup_ohs` scalar parameter from psft_deployment.yaml into the psft_customizations.yaml file, and set it to true. Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file, as shown in this example:

     ```
     ---
     setup_ohs:  true
     ```

     Note. If you copy only this parameter into psft_customizations.yaml, the deployment will use the default installation location and default domain configuration.

   - To change the location of the OHS installation (optional), copy the following scalar and collection parameters from psft_deployment.yaml into the psft_customizations.yaml file. Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML files.

     Edit the parameters to specify the desired location. Enter the full path to the installation location. Be sure to enter the same value for both `ohs_location` and the `location` under `ohs`.

     ```
     ---
     ```

```
setup_ohs:  true
ohs_location:      "%{hiera('pt_location')}/bea/ohs"

ohs:
  location: "%{hiera('ohs_location')}"
```

- To customize the OHS domain configuration (optional), copy the following collection parameters from psft_configuration.yaml into the psft_customizations.yaml file and modify for your environment.

  Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file.

  Replace the password sample below (for `webserver_admin_user_pwd`) with an encrypted password. Enter the encrypted password on a single line. Do not include spaces or line feeds.

  See "Encrypting Passwords for Customizations on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris."

  Note. Use clear text passwords for silent mode installation.

```
---
setup_ohs:  true
ohs_domain:
    name:                       ohsdom
    os_user:                    "%{hiera('domain_user')}"
    domain_home_dir:            "%{hiera('ps_config_home')}"
    pia_webserver_type:         "%{hiera('webserver_type')}"
    pia_webserver_host:         "%{hiera('pia_host_name')}"
    pia_webserver_port:         "%{hiera('pia_http_port')}"
    node_manager_port:          7500

    webserver_settings:
      webserver_type:           ohs
      webserver_home:           "%{hiera('ohs_location')}"
      webserver_admin_user:     system
      webserver_admin_user_pwd: ENC[PKCS7,MIIBeQYJKoZ......]
      webserver_admin_port:     7700
      webserver_http_port:      7740
      webserver_https_port:     7743
```

- If you want to customize the installation location and domain configuration, copy all three entries into psft_customizations.yaml and edit. For example, to modify the installation location and the OHS domain name:

```
---
setup_ohs:  true

ohs_location:      "C:/psft_ohs"

ohs:
  location: "C:/psft_ohs"

ohs_domain:
    name:                       ohsdomain2
    os_user:                    "%{hiera('domain_user')}"
    domain_home_dir:            "%{hiera('ps_config_home')}"
    pia_webserver_type:         "%{hiera('webserver_type')}"
    pia_webserver_host:         "%{hiera('pia_host_name')}"
```

```
pia_webserver_port:          "%{hiera('pia_http_port')}"
node_manager_port:           7500

webserver_settings:
  webserver_type:            ohs
  webserver_home:            "%{hiera('ohs_location')}"
  webserver_admin_user:      system
  webserver_admin_user_pwd: ENC[PKCS7,MIIBeQYJKoZ........]
  webserver_admin_port:      7700
  webserver_http_port:       7740
  webserver_https_port:      7743
```

4. Save the file.
5. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-11: Preparing the Customization File for Session Cookie Names

Use the information in this section if you want to customize session cookie names. For example, you may need to set cookies when creating web server clusters.

See *PeopleTools: Portal Technology,* "Configuring Web Profiles."

See *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration,* "Working with Session Cookie Names."

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations before preparing the customization file.

Use these guidelines in creating the psft_customizations.yaml file:

- This customization uses parameters that are not included in the YAML files generated by the deployment. Follow the samples given here in creating the psft_customizations.yaml file.
- You are responsible for setting the correct values. There is no validation for the cookie names.
- Follow the legal naming conventions for http cookies.
- Set a unique name for each "setup of cluster of servers".

  For example, if a set of web-servers are for an HCM production site and the cookie-name is used in persistence criteria, then all the web-servers of that HCM site must have the same Portal cookie-name (and if using WSRP, the same Portlet cookie name).

1. Locate the psft_configuration.yaml file in *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data.

   Note. The code examples in this topic are for illustrative purposes only. Remember to use the text from the YAML files you install with each new deployment as the basis for your psft_customizations.yaml file.

   ---

2. If necessary, create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool, such as Notepad on Microsoft Windows or vi on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, and save it in the same location as the psft_deployment.yaml and psft_configuration.yaml files.

   Ensure that the file begins with three dashes (`---`).

3. Copy the entire collection parameter section for `pia_domain_list` from the psft_configuration.yaml file into the psft_customizations.yaml file.

   Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file.

4. Add the parameters for `portal_cookie_name` and `portlet_cookie_name` below `webserver_https_port`, and ensure that the indentation is the same as that of `webserver_https_port`.

```
pia_domain_list:
  "%{hiera('pia_domain_name')}":
    os_user:                "%{hiera('domain_user')}"
    ps_cfg_home_dir:        "%{hiera('ps_config_home')}"
    gateway_user:           "%{hiera('pia_gateway_user')}"
    gateway_user_pwd:       "%{hiera('pia_gateway_user_pwd')}"
    auth_token_domain:      ".%{::domain}"

    webserver_settings:
      webserver_type:           "%{hiera('webserver_type')}"
      webserver_home:           "%{hiera('weblogic_location')}"
      webserver_admin_user:     system
      webserver_admin_user_pwd: ENC[PKCS7,MIIBeQY.....]
      webserver_admin_port:     "%{hiera('pia_http_port')}"
      webserver_http_port:      "%{hiera('pia_http_port')}"
      webserver_https_port:     "%{hiera('pia_https_port')}"
      portal_cookie_name:       FIN-PORTAL-PSJESSIONID
      portlet_cookie_name:      FIN-PORTLET-PSJESSIONID

    site_list:
      "%{hiera('pia_site_name')}":
        appserver_connections: "%{hiera('pia_psserver_list')}"
        domain_conn_pwd:       "%{hiera('domain_conn_pwd')}"

        webprofile_settings:
          profile_name:        "%{hiera('pia_webprofile_name')}"
          profile_user:        PTWEBSERVER
          profile_user_pwd:    ENC[PKCS7,MIIBeQY.....]

        report_repository_dir: "%{hiera('report_repository_dir')}"
```

5. Save the file.
6. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-12: Preparing the Customization File for JVM Heap Sizes

Use the information in this section to customize the maximum and minimum JVM heap sizes, or runtime memory, in your deployed environment. The JVM heap size is the amount of memory that a particular JRE (Java Runtime Environment) gives to the JVM (Java Virtual Machine) that it creates. See the product documentation for information on the default settings.

See *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration,* "Adjusting the JVM Heap Size."

See *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration,* "Tuning Performance and Monitoring Resources"

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations before preparing the customization file.

Use these guidelines in creating the psft_customizations.yaml file:

- This customization uses parameters that are not included in the YAML files generated by the deployment. Follow the samples given here in creating the psft_customizations.yaml file.
- You are responsible for setting the correct values. There is no validation for the `java_heap_min` and `java_heap_max`.
- You must include the parameters for both the maximum and minimum heap size in the psft_customizations.yaml file.
- The `java_heap_max` value must be greater than the `java_heap_min` value.

1. Locate the psft_configuration.yaml files in *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data.

   Note. The code examples in this topic are for illustrative purposes only. Remember to use the text from the YAML files you install with each new deployment as the basis for your psft_customizations.yaml file.

2. If necessary, create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool, such as Notepad on Microsoft Windows or vi on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, and save it in the same location as the psft_deployment.yaml and psft_configuration.yaml files.

   Ensure that the file begins with three dashes (`---`).

3. Copy the entire collection parameter section for `pia_domain_list` from the psft_configuration.yaml file into the psft_customizations.yaml file.

   Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file.

4. Add the parameters for `java_heap_min` and `java_heap_max` below `webserver_https_port`, and ensure that the indentation is the same as that of `webserver_https_port`.

   Enter the desired size in megabytes, with no units. For example, enter *2048* for 2048 megabytes, or 2GB.

```
pia_domain_list:
  "%{hiera('pia_domain_name')}":
    os_user:               "%{hiera('domain_user')}"
    ps_cfg_home_dir:       "%{hiera('ps_config_home')}"
    gateway_user:          "%{hiera('pia_gateway_user')}"
    gateway_user_pwd:      "%{hiera('pia_gateway_user_pwd')}"
    auth_token_domain:     ".%{::domain}"

    webserver_settings:
      webserver_type:           "%{hiera('webserver_type')}"
      webserver_home:           "%{hiera('weblogic_location')}"
      webserver_admin_user:     system
      webserver_admin_user_pwd: ENC[PKCS7,MIIBeQY.............]
      webserver_admin_port:     "%{hiera('pia_http_port')}"
      webserver_http_port:      "%{hiera('pia_http_port')}"
      webserver_https_port:     "%{hiera('pia_https_port')}"
      java_heap_min:       2048
      java_heap_max:      4096

    site_list:
      "%{hiera('pia_site_name')}":
        appserver_connections: "%{hiera('pia_psserver_list')}"
        domain_conn_pwd:       "%{hiera('domain_conn_pwd')}"

        webprofile_settings:
          profile_name:        "%{hiera('pia_webprofile_name')}"
          profile_user:        PTWEBSERVER
```

```
    profile_user_pwd:    ENC[PKCS7,MIIBeQY.............]

report_repository_dir: "%{hiera('report_repository_dir')}"
```

5. Save the file.
6. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-13: Preparing the Customization File for Mid-Tier Connection to a Microsoft SQL Server Database

Use these steps to set up PeopleSoft mid-tier components to connect to a Microsoft SQL Server database. This section assumes that:

- You installed the Microsoft SQL Server client software on the Microsoft Windows host machine.
- You know the Microsoft SQL Server client installation location, SQL Server name, and the name of the ODBC driver required to connect to the database.
- When running the DPK setup script, you specified MSSQL as the database platform.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations before preparing the customization file.

1. Locate the psft_configuration.yaml file, which was created by the deployment, in *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data.

   Note. The code examples in this topic are for illustrative purposes only. Remember to use the text from the YAML files you install with each new deployment as the basis for your psft_customizations.yaml file.

   The information for Microsoft SQL Server, which you will copy and modify, is given in the `mssql_server_list` section in this file:

   ```
   mssql_server_list:
     "%{hiera('db_name')}":
       mss_server_name: "%{::fqdn}"
       mss_odbc_name:   "ODBC Driver 13 for SQL Server"
   ```

2. Locate the psft_deployment.yaml file, which was created by the deployment, in *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data.

   The database platform text, which you will copy, is specified as:

   ```
   db_platform:   MSSQL
   ```

3. If necessary, create a psft_customizations.yaml file using a standard editing tool, such as Notepad, and save it in the same location as the psft_configuration.yaml file.

   If this is the first entry in the psft_customizations.yaml file, ensure that there are three dashes (`---`) on the first line of the file. Do not indent the dashes.

4. Copy the `db_platform` line from the psft_deployment.yaml file into the psft_customizations.yaml file.

   Copy the entire section for `mssql_server_list` from the psft_configuration.yaml file into the psft_customizations.yaml file and modify the values as needed.

   Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML files.

   For `mss_server_name`, specify the SQL Server name or named instance. For `mss_odbc_name`, specify the name for the ODBC driver needed for connectivity to the Microsoft SQL Server database.

For example:

```
---
db_platform: MSSQL

mssql_server_list:
  <db_name>:
    mss_server_name: <server_name>
    mss_odbc_name:   <odbc_name>
    remove:  false
```

For example:

```
---
db_platform: MSSQL

mssql_server_list:
  FS92DEMO:
    mss_server_name: HOSTNAME\SQL2016
    mss_odbc_name:   "ODBC Driver 13 for SQL Server"
    remove:  false
```

For information on the ODBC driver, see the chapters on installing the appropriate version of Microsoft SQL Server in the PeopleSoft 9.2 Application installation product documentation.

See Oracle's PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58 Home Page, Installation and Upgrade tab, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2602329.2.

- Microsoft SQL Server 2016 uses ODBC Driver 13 for SQL Server.

  See "Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2016," Configuring the Connection to Use ODBC Driver for Microsoft SQL Server 2016.

- Microsoft SQL Server 2017 uses ODBC Driver 17 for SQL Server.

  See "Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2017," Configuring the Connection to Use ODBC Driver for Microsoft SQL Server 2017.

- Microsoft SQL Server 2019 uses ODBC Driver 17 for SQL Server.

  See "Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2019," Configuring the Connection to Use ODBC Driver for Microsoft SQL Server 2019

5. Save the file.
6. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-14: Preparing the Customization File for Mid-Tier Connection to a DB2 z/OS Database

Use these steps to set up PeopleSoft mid-tier components to connect to a DB2 z/OS database. The DPK setup script does not identify or verify the database client software on the host machine. You have the responsibility to ensure that the installation is supported, complete, and correct.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations before preparing the customization file.

This section assumes:

- You installed the appropriate client software for DB2 z/OS on the host machine and made a note of the DB2 client installation location.
- When running the DPK setup script, you specified DB2 z/OS (DB2ODBC) as the database platform.
- You have completed manually cataloging the database, and noted the values you used.

1. Locate the psft_configuration.yaml and psft_deployment.yaml files in *BASE_DIR/* dpk/puppet/production/data.

   Note. The code examples in this topic are for illustrative purposes only. Remember to use the text from the YAML files you install with each new deployment as the basis for your psft_customizations.yaml file.

   You need parameters from both files. The `db_platform` parameter appears in psft_deployment.yaml, and the `db2_server_list` section appears in psft_configuration.yaml.

2. If necessary, create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool, such as Notepad on Microsoft Windows or vi on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, and save it in the same location as the psft_configuration.yaml file.

   If this is the first entry in the psft_customizations.yaml file, ensure that there are three dashes (`---`) on the first line of the file. Do not indent the dashes.

3. Copy the `db_platform` section from psft_deployment.yaml to psft_customizations.yaml.

   Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML files.

   ```
   db_platform:       DB2ODBC
   ```

4. Copy the `db_name`, `db_user` and `db_user_pwd` scalar parameters from psft_configuration.yaml to psft_customizations.yaml and change for your environment.

   Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML files.

   ```
   db_name:         EP92DMO
   db_user:         VP1
   db_user_pwd:    ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]
   ```

5. Copy the `db2_server_list` section from psft_configuration.yaml to psft_customizations.yaml.

   Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML files.

   ```
   db2_server_list:
     "%{hiera('db_name')}":
       db2_type:         "%{hiera('db_platform')}"
       db2_host:         "%{::fqdn}"
       db2_port:         "%{hiera('db_port')}"
       db2_node:         TCPLNX01
       db2_target_db:    "%{hiera('db_name')}"
   ```

6. Add the `db2_client` section:

   ```
   db2_client:
     sqllib_location:  /home/ibm/sqllib
     instance_user:    ibm
     remove:           false
   ```

7. If necessary for your environment, add `db2_user_name`, `db2_user_pwd`, and `instance_user` (Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris).

8. Modify the psft_customizations.yaml for your environment.

   For example, on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris:

```
---
db_platform:        DB2ODBC
db_name:            EP92DMO
db_user:            VP1
db_user_pwd:   ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]

############################################################
# Replace this password sample with encrypted text from the #
# generated psft_configuration.yaml file.                  #
############################################################


db2_client:
  sqllib_location:  /home/ibm/sqllib
  instance_user:    ibm
    remove:          false

db2_server_list:
  "EP92DMO":
    db2_type:        DB2ODBC
    db2_host:        sysb21
    db2_port:        5126
    db2_node:        TCPDS3B
    db2_target_db:   DB2DS3B
    db2_user_name:   psftuser
    db2_user_pwd:    password
    remove:          false
```

Note. The `instance_user` attribute only applies to Linux, AIX, HP-UX, and Solaris platforms. This refers to the user name where the sqllib is installed.

   On Microsoft Windows:

```
----
db_platform:        DB2ODBC
db_name:            EP92DMO
db_user:            VP1
db_user_pwd:   ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]

############################################################
# Replace this password sample with encrypted text from the #
# generated psft_configuration.yaml file.                  #
############################################################

db2_client:
  sqllib_location:    C:/db2105
  remove:             false

db2_server_list:
  "EP92DMO":
```

```
db2_type:         DB2ODBC
db2_host:         sysb21
db2_port:         5126
db2_node:         TCPDS3B
db2_target_db:    DB2DS3B
db2_user_name:    psftuser
db2_user_pwd:     password
remove:           false
```

Use these guidelines in completing the psft_customizations.yaml:

psft_customizations.yaml attribute and sample value	Description

`db_platform: DB2ODBC`
and
`db2_type: DB2ODBC`
	Specify the RDBMS for DB2 z/OS.

`db_name: EP92DMO`
and
`db2_server_list: "EP92DMO"`
	Specify the database name you supplied to the DPK setup script.
	This is the logical PeopleSoft database name, and also the name of the ODBC system DSN. The DB2 z/OS system uses this as the database alias.

`db_user: VP1`	Specify the PeopleSoft User ID (operator ID) such as VP1 or PS.
`db_user_password: encryp_password`	Specify the password for the PeopleSoft User. Enter encrypted text from the psft_configuration.yaml file. **Note.** Use clear text passwords for silent mode installation.
`sqllib_location: C:/db2105`	Specify the location of the connectivity software for the DB2 client.
`db2_host: sysb21`	Specify the host name where the DB2 z/OS subsystem resides.
`db2_port: 5126`	Specify the TCP/IP port used by the DB2 z/OS subsystem.
`db2_node: TCPDS3B`	Specify the TCP/IP node name.
`db2_target_db: DB2DS3B`	Specify the DB2 subsystem name.
`db2_user_name: psftuser` `db2_user_pwd: password`	Specify the PeopleSoft access ID and password.

9. Save the file.
10. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-15: Preparing the Customization File to Exclude Oracle Database Client Installation

The DPK setup script command to deploy all software (`psft-dpk-setup.<ext> --env_type midtier --deploy_only --deploy_type all`) includes the installation of Oracle database client. Use the customization in this section to exclude that installation.

See "Installing the PeopleSoft Homes," Running the DPK Setup Script to Install All Software.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations before preparing the customization file.

1. If necessary, create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool, such as Notepad on Microsoft Windows or vi on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, and save it in the same location as the installed YAML files.

   If this is the first entry in the psft_customizations.yaml file, ensure that there are three dashes (`---`) on the first line of the file. Do not indent the dashes.
2. Add the content below to the psft_customizations.yaml file.

   Note. The line with "ensure" is indented.

   ```
   ---
   oracle_client:
     ensure: absent
   ```
3. Save the file.
4. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-16: Preparing the Customization File for sysctl and ulimit Parameters on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris

This section discusses:

- Preparing the Customization File to Change the setup_sysctl Parameter
- Preparing the Customization File to Overwrite the sysctl Parameters
- Preparing the Customization File to Overwrite the ulimit Parameters

Task 4-16-1: Preparing the Customization File to Change the setup_sysctl Parameter

Use these instructions for a deployment in this situation:

- The existing sysctl parameters on your system meet the DPK requirements.

  The values must be equal to or greater than the values for the parameters in the generated psft_unix_system.yaml file.
- You do not want the DPK setup script to overwrite the sysctl parameters

See "Prerequisites," Reviewing the System Parameters on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations before preparing the customization file.

1. Locate the psft_unix_system.yaml file, which was installed by the deployment, in *BASE_DIR/* dpk/puppet/production/data.
2. If necessary, create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool, such as vi on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, and save it in the same location as the generated psft_unix_system.yaml file.

   If this is the first entry in the psft_customizations.yaml file, ensure that there are three dashes (`---`) on the first line of the file. Do not indent the dashes.
3. Copy the parameter below from the psft_unix_system.yaml file and paste it into the psft_customizations.yaml file.

   Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file.

   ```
   setup_sysctl: true
   ```
4. To specify that the deployment does not overwrite the sysctl parameters, change the value to "false"; for example:

   ```
   ---
   setup_sysctl: false
   ```
5. Save the file.
6. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-16-2: Preparing the Customization File to Overwrite the sysctl Parameters

Use these instructions in this situation:

- You want to allow the DPK setup script to change the sysctl settings on your system.
- You want to specify sysctl values that are equal to or greater than the values for the parameters in the generated psft_unix_system.yaml file.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations before preparing the customization file.

1. Locate the psft_unix_system.yaml file, which was installed by the deployment, in *BASE_DIR/* dpk/puppet/production/data.
2. If necessary, create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool, such as vi on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, and save it in the same location as the generated psft_unix_system.yaml file.

   If this is the first entry in the psft_customizations.yaml file, ensure that there are three dashes (`---`) on the first line of the file. Do not indent the dashes.
3. Copy the `setup_sysctl: true` scalar parameter from the psft_unix_system.yaml file and paste it into the psft_customizations.yaml file.

   Do not change the parameter; it must be set to "true". Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file.
4. Copy the entire `sysctl:` collection type parameter (comprised of several lines) from the psft_unix_system.yaml file and paste it into the psft_customizations.yaml file.

   Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file.


```
---
setup_sysctl: true
sysctl:
    kernel.msgmnb:                65538
    kernel.msgmni:                1024
    kernel.msgmax:                65536
    kernel.shmmax:                68719476736
    kernel.shmall:                4294967296
    kernel.core_uses_pid:         1
    net.ipv4.tcp_keepalive_time:  90
    net.ipv4.tcp_timestamps:      1
    net.ipv4.tcp_window_scaling:  1
    net.ipv4.ip_local_port_range: '10000 65500'
```

5. Change the values of the `sysctl` parameters in psft_customizations.yaml as needed, but the values must be equal to or greater than those in the generated psft_unix_system.yaml file.
6. Save the file.
7. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-16-3: Preparing the Customization File to Overwrite the ulimit Parameters

Use these instructions if you want to specify ulimit values that are equal to or greater than the values for the parameters in the generated psft_unix_system.yaml file.

There is no parameter that you can use to specify whether the DPK setup script sets the ulimit parameters. You can change the values, but there is no parameter to prevent the DPK setup script from changing the ulimit parameters.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations before preparing the customization file.

---

1. Locate the psft_unix_system.yaml file, which was installed by the deployment, in *BASE_DIR/*dpk/puppet/production/data.
2. If necessary, create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool, such vi on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, and save it in the same location as the generated psft_unix_system.yaml file.

   If this is the first entry in the psft_customizations.yaml file, ensure that there are three dashes (`---`) on the first line of the file. Do not indent the dashes.
3. Copy the entire `ulimit:` collection type parameter (comprised of several lines) from the psft_unix_system.yaml file and paste it into the psft_customizations.yaml file.

   Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file.

```
---
ulimit:
  group:
    hard.nofile:  65536
    soft.nofile:  65536
    hard.nproc:   65536
    soft.nproc:   65536
    hard.core:    unlimited
    soft.core:    unlimited
```

```
    hard.memlock: 500000
    soft.memlock: 500000
    hard.stack:   102400
    soft.stack:   102400

  user:
    hard.nofile:  131072
    soft.nofile:  131072
    hard.nproc:   131072
    soft.nproc:   131072
    hard.core:    unlimited
    soft.core:    unlimited
    hard.memlock: 500000
    soft.memlock: 500000
```

4. Change the values of the `ulimit` parameters in psft_customizations.yaml as needed, but the values must be equal to or greater than those in the generated psft_unix_system.yaml file.
5. Save the file.
6. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-17: Completing the Customized Deployment

Use these steps to complete the customized deployment of the PeopleSoft environment:

1. Run the DPK setup script as previously described.

   See "Deploying the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Deployment Packages."
2. Answer *n* (no) to the following prompt:

   ```
   Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]: ⇒
   n
   ```

   The script stops, and displays instructions for completing the initialization. Leave the command window or terminal window open to refer to the instructions provided.
3. Prepare the psft_customizations.yaml file as previously described and save it in *BASE_DIR/*dpk/puppet/production/data.
4. As directed by the message displayed when the DPK setup script exited, enter the full path and script name, and wait until the deployment is complete.

   Since the script redirects the output to a log file, you cannot follow the progress on the command window or terminal window. The process is complete when the prompt returns.

   On Microsoft Windows:

   BASE_DIR\psft_puppet_apply.cmd

   On Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris:

   *BASE_DIR/*psft_puppet_apply.sh

   The psft_puppet_apply.<*ext*> script performs these actions:

   - Sets the required PATH, library path, and PYTHON path.
   - Runs the `puppet apply` command to set up the PeopleSoft environment using the values in psft_customizations.yaml and the generated YAML files.

As mentioned, the values in psft_customizations.yaml override those in the generated YAML files.

- Saves the log file as *BASE_DIR*/psft_dpk_setup_apply.log.

5. If you want to exclude the Puppet debug messages from the log file, run the script with the nodebug option:

Note. You must run the script as instructed by the script message. Do not copy the psft_puppet_apply script into a different *BASE_DIR* to run.

On Microsoft Windows:

```
BASE_DIR\psft_puppet_apply.cmd --nodebug
```

On Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris:

```
BASE_DIR/psft_puppet_apply.sh --nodebug
```

Note that you can run the `puppet apply` command directly, but Oracle recommends that you use the script provided, which sets the required environment variables to specify the locations for the Puppet software and the YAML files. Oracle also recommends that you do not run `puppet apply –debug`.

Chapter 5

Using and Maintaining the PeopleSoft Environment

This chapter discusses:

- Using the PeopleSoft Installation
- Working with PeopleSoft Utilities and Programs for Root Deployments on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, and Solaris
- Setting Environment Variables for the Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris
- Removing a Deployed PeopleSoft Environment

Task 5-1: Using the PeopleSoft Installation

This section discusses:

- Accessing the PeopleSoft Environment
- Reviewing the Deployment File System
- Reviewing the DPK-Created Users for Root Deployments on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, and Solaris

Task 5-1-1: Accessing the PeopleSoft Environment

To sign in to the deployed PeopleSoft environment in a browser (that is, use the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture, or PIA), use a URL with this format:

http://<host_name>:<http_port>/<PIA_site_name>/signon.html

For example, for a deployment with the default port, 8000, and default PIA site name, ps, the URL would be http://server1.example.com:8000/ps/signon.html.

See the PeopleSoft Hosted Online Help, http://www.peoplesoftonlinehelp.com, for information on working with the components in a PeopleSoft installation.

Task 5-1-2: Reviewing the Deployment File System

The PeopleSoft installation deployed by the PeopleSoft DPKs sets up an environment comprised of several directories. This table lists the directories with the location, contents of the directory, and the owner.

Directory	Description	Default Location	Access
PS_HOME	*PS_HOME* is a secure location for the PeopleTools binary installation files.	<*BASE_DIR*>/pt/ps_home <*ptools_patch_ver*> The descriptor <*ptools_patch_ver*> is the PeopleSoft PeopleTools full release, for example 8.58.01.	This directory can only be written to by the PeopleSoft administrator, psadm1 (Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris).

Directory	Description	Default Location	Access
PS_CFG_HOME	The *PS_CFG_HOME* location holds the configuration and log files for the PeopleSoft Application Server and Process Scheduler server domains.	• On Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, when deploying as the root user, <*USER_HOME*>/psadm2/psft/pt/<*ptools_major_ver*>. You supply the location for the *USER_HOME* when you run the DPK setup script. The default value is /home. • On Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, when deploying as a non-root user, <*prompted_ps_cfg_home*>/psft/pt/<*ptools_major_ver*> You supply the location for *prompted_ps_cfg_home* when you run the DPK setup script. • On Microsoft Windows, C:\%USERPROFILE%\psft\pt\<*ptools_major_ver*> For example, if the USERPROFILE environment variable is C:\Users\username, the location is C:\Users\username\psft\pt\8.58. The descriptor <*ptools_major_ver*> is the PeopleSoft PeopleTools major release without patch numbers; for example, 8.58.	This directory is owned by psadm2 (Linux, AIX, HP-UX, Solaris).

Directory	Description	Default Location	Access
Web server (PIA) installation	The web server (PIA) configuration files are located in *PS_CFG_HOME/*webserv.	• On Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, when deploying as the root user, <*USER_HOME*>/psadm2/psft/pt/<*ptools_major_ver*>/webserv You supply the location for the *USER_HOME* when you run the DPK setup script. The default value is /home. • On Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, when deploying as a non-root user, <*prompted_ps_cfg_home*>/psft/pt/<*ptools_major_ver*>/webserv You supply the location for *prompted_ps_cfg_home* when you run the DPK setup script. • On Microsoft Windows, C:\%USERPROFILE%\psft\pt\<*ptools_major_ver*>\webserv For example, if the USERPROFILE environment variable is C:\Users\username, the location is C:\Users\username\psft\pt\8.58\webserv. The descriptor <*ptools_major_ver*> is the PeopleSoft PeopleTools major release without patch numbers; for example, 8.58.	This directory is owned by psadm2 (Linux, AIX, HP-UX, Solaris).
PS_APP_HOME	The *PS_APP_HOME* location holds the PeopleSoft application installation files.	*BASE_DIR*/pt/<*Product*>_app_home The descriptor <*Product*> is an abbreviation for the PeopleSoft application, such as hcm for PeopleSoft Human Capital Management	This directory can only be written to by psadm3 (Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris).

Directory	Description	Default Location	Access
ORACLE_HOME (Oracle RDBMS software)	This directory includes the Oracle RDBMS database server and client connectivity software, including the SQL*Plus program. The Oracle RDBMS client installation is the 64-bit client used by PeopleSoft PeopleTools to connect from the PeopleSoft Application Server and Process Scheduler domains to the PeopleTools Database. **Note.** The default listener port is 1521.	*BASE_DIR*/db/oracle-server	This directory is owned by user oracle2 (Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris).
Oracle WebLogic	This directory includes the installation files for the Oracle WebLogic web server. **Note.** The configuration files for the PIA domain are located in *PS_CFG_HOME/*webserv.	*BASE_DIR*/pt/bea/wlserver	This directory is owned by psadm1 (Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris).
Oracle Tuxedo	This directory includes the installation files for Oracle Tuxedo.	*BASE_DIR*/pt/bea/tuxedo	This directory is owned by psadm1 (Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris).
PeopleSoft database files (on Oracle RDBMS)	This directory includes the Oracle database files and tables for the PeopleSoft application.	*BASE_DIR*/db/oradata	The owner of the database tables is oracle2 and its group is oinstall (Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris). **Note.** This is different from the users for the PeopleSoft installation and configuration.

See Also

PeopleTools: System and Server Administration, "Securing PS_HOME and PS_CFG_HOME"

Task 5-1-3: Reviewing the DPK-Created Users for Root Deployments on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, and Solaris

When deploying on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, and Solaris as the root user, the deployed configuration includes the default users and default passwords described in the following table.

Important! All of the passwords for the DPK-created users are set to expire immediately. On the first login of one of the DPK-created users, the system will prompt you to provide new passwords.

In the case of the passwords that expire immediately, such as those for psadm1 and so on, if you do not log in as the user specified in this table and change the password, the default passwords documented here remain in effect.

New passwords must include the following characteristics:

- At least 14 characters long
- At least one digit (0–9)
- At least one special character (for example, * or #)
- At least one lowercase letter (a–z)
- At least one uppercase letter (A–Z)

User Name	Default Password	Home Directory	Role Definition
psadm1	0radmin (the first character is the number zero)	*USER_HOME*/psadm1 You supply the location for the *USER_HOME* when you run the DPK setup script. The default value is /home.	The PeopleSoft installation administrator who owns *PS_HOME*. This user cannot write into *PS_CFG_HOME*.
psadm2	0radmin (the first character is the number zero)	*USER_HOME*/psadm2 You supply the location for the *USER_HOME* when you run the DPK setup script. The default value is /home.	The PeopleTools domain user who creates and configures the Application Server domain, Process Scheduler (batch server) domain, and the PIA. This user cannot write to *PS_HOME*, but has read-execute access.
psadm3	0radmin (the first character is the number zero)	*USER_HOME*/psadm3 You supply the location for the *USER_HOME* when you run the DPK setup script. The default value is /home.	The PeopleSoft installation administrator who owns *PS_APP_HOME*.
oracle2	oracle	*USER_HOME*/oracle2 You supply the location for the *USER_HOME* when you run the DPK setup script. The default value is /home.	The Oracle Database Server user name.

User Name	Default Password	Home Directory	Role Definition
esadm1	0radmin (the first character is the number zero)	*USER_HOME/*esadm1 You supply the location for the *USER_HOME* when you run the DPK setup script. The default value is /home.	The Elasticsearch DPK user **Note.** This is not the same as the esadmin administrator, which is used in configuring a search instance.

Note. The Elasticsearch DPK user, esadm1, is deployed for the Native OS for Linux, AIX, HP-UX, and Solaris DPKs, as well as the VirtualBox DPK. However, Elasticsearch is installed and configured only as part of the VirtualBox DPK deployment.

See Also

"Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations," Preparing the Customization File for Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris Users

Task 5-2: Working with PeopleSoft Utilities and Programs for Root Deployments on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, and Solaris

When you run the DPK setup script with the default initialization, the script installs, configures and starts a single Application Server, a single Process Scheduler, and a single PIA domain. After the root user completes the deployment of the PeopleSoft environment using the DPK setup script *DPK_INSTALL/*setup/psft-dpk-setup.sh, in order to carry out operations on the PeopleSoft environment such as stopping and starting the DPK-created domains, or creating additional domains with PSADMIN, the root user must start a new shell session, and sign in with the DPK-created user psadm2.

See *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration* for information on working with PeopleSoft domains.

The first time that you sign in as user psadm2, you are prompted to change the default password. You must start the session again and sign in with the new password. When you first sign in, the system sources the *PS_HOME/*psconfig.sh script. Sourcing the psconfig.sh script sets environment variables such as TUXDIR, PATH, and LD_LIBRARY_PATH, which are needed to run PeopleSoft utilities and programs. Sourcing the psconfig.sh script sets the environment variables for the current session in the current shell, so that the programs and utilities you run in that shell inherit the environment variables.

Similarly, to carry out operations using programs owned by the DPK-created users psadm1 or psadm3, sign in to a shell as those users.

See Reviewing the DPK-Created Users for Root Deployment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, and Solaris.

Task 5-3: Setting Environment Variables for the Non-Root User on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris

This section discusses:

- Sourcing the psft_env.sh Script

- Creating a psft_env.sh Script

Task 5-3-1: Sourcing the psft_env.sh Script

When you use the DPK setup script with the default initialization, the script installs, configures and starts a single Application Server, a single Process Scheduler, and a single PIA domain.

When a non-root user deploys the PeopleSoft environment, as part of the deployment, the DPK setup script sources a shell script that sets environment variables, such as TUXDIR, PATH, and LD_LIBRARY_PATH, which are needed to run PeopleSoft utilities and programs.

See *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration* for information on working with PeopleSoft domains.

After the non-root user completes the deployment of the PeopleSoft environment using the DPK setup script *DPK_INSTALL/*setup/psft-dpk-setup.sh, in order to carry out operations on the PeopleSoft environment such as stopping and starting the DPK-created domains, creating additional domains with PSADMIN, or running Application Engine programs, the non-root user must source the script *BASE_DIR/*pt/psft_env.sh. For example, use the following command:

```
source BASE_DIR/pt/psft_env.sh
```

Note. If you are performing a deployment using the `deploy_only` option, see the next section.

Note that it is important to source the shell script (`source BASE_DIR/pt/psft_env.sh`), rather than simply running it (`BASE_DIR/pt/psft_env.sh`) in order for the environment variables to persist in the current shell. See your operating system documentation for the correct command to source the script.

Sourcing the psft_env.sh script sets the environment variables for the current session in the current shell, so that the programs and utilities you run in that shell inherit the environment variables. You must source the script and run the PeopleSoft utilities and programs from the same *BASE_DIR.* That is, the environment variables apply only to the programs in the *PS_HOME* installed under the *BASE_DIR* from which you run the script.

If your environment includes more than one deployment, be sure to source *BASE_DIR/*pt/psft_env.sh as needed in separate shells for each *BASE_DIR.*

The psft_env.sh script points to default or user-specified installation locations as set up by the DPK setup script. See Reviewing the Deployment File System for default locations. Here is a summary of the environment variables set by the *BASE_DIR/*pt/psft_env.sh script:

- The script sets a pseudo random number generator to avoid getting stuck in entropy collection for the default random number generation.
- The script sets the TUXDIR, PATH, and LD_LIBRARY_PATH environment variables to point to the Tuxedo installation.
- The script sets the TNS_ADMIN, ORACLE_HOME, and LD_LIBRARY_PATH environment variables to point to the installations of the Oracle database and Oracle database client.
- The script sets language/locale.
- The script sets *PS_CFG_HOME.*
- The script adds the *PS_HOME/*appserv and *PS_HOME/*setup directories to the PATH.
- The script sources the *PS_HOME/*psconfig.sh script.

  The psconfig.sh script was used previously to set environment variables for non-DPK installations. Because it is included in the *BASE_DIR/*pt/psft_env.sh script, you do not need to source psconfig.sh separately.

Task 5-3-2: Creating a psft_env.sh Script

If you are running as a non-root user, the *BASE_DIR*/pt/psft_env.sh script will not be available if you run the DPK setup script using one of the `deploy_only` options. For example:

- `psft-dpk-setup.sh --env_type midtier --deploy_only`
- `psft-dpk-setup.sh --env_type midtier --deploy_only --deploy_type tools_home`
- `psft-dpk-setup.sh --env_type midtier --deploy_only --deploy_type app_home`
- `psft-dpk-setup.sh --env_type midtier --deploy_only --deploy_type app_and_tools_home`

In this case, the *BASE_DIR*/pt/psft_env.sh file is not installed automatically. You must create and run the script to set the required environment variables.

Use the following as a template, and make the necessary modifications for your environment.

In this example, <BASE_DIR> refers to the DPK deployment location, and <psftsuser> is the non-root user.

```
# User specific aliases and functions
export _JAVA_OPTIONS=-Djava.security.egd=file:/dev/./urandom


export TNS_ADMIN=<BASE_DIR>/db
export ORACLE_HOME=<BASE_DIR>/pt/oracle-client/12.1.0.2
export LD_LIBRARY_PATH=$ORACLE_HOME/lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
export PATH=.:$ORACLE_HOME/bin:$ORACLE_HOME/OPatch:$ORACLE_HOME/perl/bin:⇒
$PATH

TUXDIR=<BASE_DIR>/pt/bea/tuxedo
if [ -d $TUXDIR ]; then
  export TUXDIR=$TUXDIR/tuxedo12.2.2.0.0
  export PATH=$TUXDIR/bin:$PATH
  export LD_LIBRARY_PATH=$TUXDIR/bin:$TUXDIR/lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
fi

export PATH=<BASE_DIR>/pt/ps_home8.58.04/appserv: <BASE_DIR>/pt/ps_⇒
home8.58.04/setup:$PATH

export LANG=C
if [ -d <BASE_DIR>/pt/ps_home8.58.04 ]; then
CWD=$PWD
cd <BASE_DIR>/pt/ps_home8.58.04 && . psconfig.sh
cd $CWD
fi
export PS_CFG_HOME=/home/<psftuser>/pscfg_pt85804_lnx
```

Save the file as psft_env.sh in *BASE_DIR*/pt, and source it to set the environment variables. For example, use this command:

```
source BASE_DIR/pt/psft_env.sh
```

Task 5-4: Removing a Deployed PeopleSoft Environment

This section discusses:

- Understanding the Removal Process
- Using the DPK Setup Script to Remove the PeopleSoft Environment on Microsoft Windows
- Using the DPK Setup Script to Remove the PeopleSoft Environment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris
- Using the DPK Setup Script to Remove the PeopleSoft Environment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as a Non-Root User
- Using the psft_puppet_apply.cmd Script to Remove the PeopleSoft Environment on Microsoft Windows
- Using the psft_puppet_apply.sh Script to Remove the PeopleSoft Environment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris
- Manually Removing the PeopleSoft Environment on Microsoft Windows
- Manually Removing the PeopleSoft Environment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris

Understanding the Removal Process

There will be times when an existing PeopleSoft environment needs to be completely removed. For example, applying a new PeopleSoft PeopleTools patch requires that an existing environment be cleaned up and a new one created. The cleanup that you perform with the DPK setup script conducts an orderly shutdown and removal of all the configured runtime domains — Application Server, Process Scheduler, and PIA domains. Additionally, it will remove all the deployed components. You can use the PeopleSoft DPK setup script cleanup for environments created with the default initialization or with the psft_customizations.yaml file.

Note. The Puppet software that is installed by the DPK setup script is not removed by the cleanup process.

In some cases the DPK setup script cleanup process may not remove all of the components. If that is the case, try one of the other methods described in this section.

Task 5-4-1: Using the DPK Setup Script to Remove the PeopleSoft Environment on Microsoft Windows

Use these steps to remove a deployed PeopleSoft environment using the PeopleSoft DPK setup script on Microsoft Windows:

1. Open a command prompt window; for example:
   - Select Start, and navigate to Accessories, Command Prompt.
   - Right-click and select Run as Administrator.
2. Go to *DPK_INSTALL*\setup and run one of the following commands:

   ```
   psft-dpk-setup.bat --cleanup
   ```

   If you deployed the environment using the use_alternate_puppet_install option, use this command:

   ```
   psft-dpk-setup.bat --cleanup --use_alternate_puppet_install
   ```

3. Specify the base directory *(BASE_DIR)* that you want to remove.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft Base Folder specified during setup:
```

You see this prompt only when there is more than one deployment. For example:

- You carried out deployment A followed by deployment B.
- You removed the second deployment B. For the cleanup of deployment B, you do not see this prompt for the *BASE_DIR*.
- You run the script a second time. At the prompt, specify the *BASE_DIR* for deployment A.

4. Wait until the process is complete.

   The DPK setup script displays [OK] for each step of the process, and [FAILED] if any of the steps are not successful.

5. Review the cleanup log file in *DPK_INSTALL*\setup.
6. After completing these steps, verify that the DPK installation directories *(BASE_DIR/*pt and *BASE_DIR/*db) have been cleared.

   The cleanup process does not remove the *BASE_DIR/*dpk directory. Do not remove it manually if you want to use the psft_apply_puppet.sh process.

7. Verify that any services have been removed in the Microsoft Windows Services dialog box.
8. If any files or services remain, the cleanup process was not successful. Try running the process again, and if it is still not successful, you may need to carry out advanced cleanup.

See Manually Removing the PeopleSoft Environment on Microsoft Windows.

Task 5-4-2: Using the DPK Setup Script to Remove the PeopleSoft Environment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris

Use these steps to remove a deployed PeopleSoft environment using the PeopleSoft DPK setup script on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris:

1. Open a terminal window as a user with root permission.
2. Go to *DPK_INSTALL*\setup and run one of the following commands:

   ```
   sh psft-dpk-setup.sh --cleanup
   ```

   If you deployed the environment using the use_alternate_puppet_install option, use this command:

   ```
   sh psft-dpk-setup.sh --cleanup --use_alternate_puppet_install
   ```

3. Specify the base directory *(BASE_DIR)* that you want to remove.

   ```
   Enter the PeopleSoft Base Folder specified during setup:
   ```

   You see this prompt only when there is more than one deployment. For example:

   - You carried out deployment A followed by deployment B.
   - You removed the second deployment B. For the cleanup of deployment B, you do not see this prompt for the *BASE_DIR*.
   - You run the script a second time. At the prompt, specify the *BASE_DIR* for deployment A.

4. Wait until the process is complete.

   The DPK setup script displays [OK] for each step of the process, and [FAILED] if any of the steps are not successful.

5. Review the cleanup log file.

If you deployed as root, the cleanup log file is in *DPK_INSTALL/*setup.

6. Verify that the DPK installation directories *(BASE_DIR/*pt and *BASE_DIR/*db) have been cleared.

   The cleanup process does not remove the *BASE_DIR/*dpk directory. Do not remove it manually if you want to use the psft_apply_puppet.sh process.

7. Check for leftover processes. If anything remains, the cleanup process was not successful.
8. Try running the cleanup process again, and if it is still not successful, you may need to carry out advanced cleanup.

See Manually Removing the PeopleSoft Environment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris.

Task 5-4-3: Using the DPK Setup Script to Remove the PeopleSoft Environment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris as a Non-Root User

If you deployed as a non-root user, after you use the `./psft-dpk-setup.sh --cleanup` command, you can find the cleanup log file in a directory of the deploying user's home directory, *USER_HOME.* The log file is appended with a process ID. For example, if the home directory is /opt/userhome and the PID is 1234, the cleanup log is /opt/userhome/psft_dpk_work/psft_dpk_setup_cleanup_1234.log.

If more than one non-root user deploys from the same *DPK_INSTALL,* the cleanup process will prompt for the correct *BASE_DIR.*

Task 5-4-4: Using the psft_puppet_apply.cmd Script to Remove the PeopleSoft Environment on Microsoft Windows

If the cleanup procedure using the DPK setup script was not entirely successful, the *BASE_DIR* folders may not be entirely cleared, or you may have trouble when carrying out another deployment. In case of a failed deployment, try running the psft_puppet_apply.cmd script as described here. This script sets environment variables and then runs the `puppet apply` command to remove the PeopleSoft environment.

To remove the environment on Microsoft Windows:

1. Run the command `psft-dpk-setup.bat --cleanup`.
2. If the script fails, you should see a message similar to the following:.

```
The initialization of PeopleSoft environment setup failed. Check the
log file [C:\DPK_INSTALL\setup\psft_dpk_setup.log] for the errors.
After correcting the errors, run the following commands to continue
with the setup of PeopleSoft environment.

Start a cmd window as Administrator and run BASE_DIR\psft_puppet_⇒
apply.cmd
```

   Leave the command window open while you complete the next step.

3. Open the file *BASE_DIR*\dpk\puppet\production\data\defaults.yaml in a text editor, such as Notepad.
4. Change the value of the `ensure` attribute from `present` to `absent`.

   Save and close the defaults file.

5. Follow the instructions from step 2 to run the psft_puppet_apply.cmd script.

Task 5-4-5: Using the psft_puppet_apply.sh Script to Remove the PeopleSoft Environment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris

If the cleanup procedure using the DPK setup script was not entirely successful, the *BASE_DIR* folders may not be entirely cleared, or you may have trouble when carrying out another deployment. In case of a failed deployment, try running the psft_puppet_apply.sh script as described here. This script sets environment variables and then runs the `puppet apply` command to remove the PeopleSoft environment.

To remove the environment with the psft_puppet_apply.sh script on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris:

1. Run the command `./psft-dpk-setup.sh --cleanup`.
2. If the script fails, you should see a message similar to the following:.

   ```
   The initialization of PeopleSoft environment setup failed. Check the
   log file [/opt/DPK_INSTALL/setup/psft_dpk_setup.log] for the errors.
   After correcting the errors, run the following commands to continue
   with the setup of PeopleSoft environment.

   From the shell, run BASE_DIR/psft_puppet_apply.sh
   ```

   Leave the shell window open while you complete the next step.
3. Open the file *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data/defaults.yaml in a text editor, such as vi.
4. Change the value of the `ensure` attribute from `present` to `absent`.

   Save and close the defaults.yaml file.
5. Follow the instructions from step 2 to run the psft_puppet_apply.sh script.

Task 5-4-6: Manually Removing the PeopleSoft Environment on Microsoft Windows

This section includes advanced steps to be used only if the cleanup procedures using the DPK setup script or psft_puppet_apply script in this section failed, or if you were not able to use the previous procedures for any reason.

If the cleanup process on Microsoft Windows was not totally successful, the *BASE_DIR* folders may not be entirely cleared, or you may have trouble when carrying out another deployment. Before carrying out the advanced steps in this section:

1. Run the command `psft-dpk-setup.bat --cleanup`.
2. If the script displays a FAILED message, run it again.
3. If it succeeds, check the *BASE_DIR* folders to be sure everything has been deleted.
4. If the *BASE_DIR* folders are not clear, or if a subsequent deployment is not successful, carry out the steps below.

For the advanced manual cleanup on Microsoft Windows, there are several steps. The steps in this section should be performed by someone familiar with modifying the Microsoft Windows registry. Depending upon where the cleanup process failed, some of the items mentioned in these steps may have already been removed. The user should remove whatever remains in this order:

1. Start the Microsoft Windows Services utility.
2. Stop the services OracleServiceCDB<*Product*> (for example, OracleServiceCDBFSCM) and OracleOraDB19cHomeTNSListener<*Listener_Name*> (for example,

OracleOraDB19cHomeTNSListenerpsft_listener) by highlighting the names, right-clicking and selecting Stop.

Note. If your database is not on an Oracle platform, the references to the Oracle database services here are not applicable.

Note. When you stop the service for the CDB (Oracle container database), you may see a message informing you that it will also stop the services for the PeopleSoft application server and Process Scheduler domains that were deployed for that database.

3. Stop the services for the PeopleSoft application server, Process Scheduler, and PeopleSoft PIA domains, if necessary.
4. Open a command prompt, running as administrator, and remove the two database services and the PeopleSoft domains services with the commands:

```
sc delete OracleServiceCDB<Product>
sc delete OracleOraDB19cHomeTNSListener<Listener_Name>

sc delete PsftAppServerDomain<Appserver_domain_name>Service
sc delete PsftPrcsDomain<ProcSched_domain_name>Service
sc delete PsftPIADomain<PIA_domain_name>Service
```

5. In the Services window, stop ORACLE ProcMGR V12.2.2.0.0_VS2017 and TListen 12.2.2.0.0_VS2017(Port3050) by highlighting the names, right-clicking and selecting Stop.
6. In the Services window, right-click each of the services in step 5, select Properties, and copy the correct service name (rather than the alias).
7. Open a command prompt and remove the two preceding services with the command:

```
sc delete <service_name>
```

8. Open the Microsoft Windows registry; for example, select Start, Run, and enter regedit.
9. In the Registry Editor, locate the HKLM\SOFTWARE\ORACLE folder.

   Select the following keys and verify that they contain references to the DPK installation locations in *BASE_DIR*:

   - KEY_OraDB19cHome *(BASE_DIR*\db by default)
   - KEY_OraTux1222Home (*BASE_DIR*\pt\bea\tuxedo by default)
   - KEY_OraWL12213Home *(BASE_DIR*\pt\bea by default)

10. In the Registry Editor, locate the HKLM\SOFTWARE\ORACLE\TUXEDO folder.

    Select the 12.2.2.0.0_VS2017 key and verify that it contains references to the DPK installation locations in *BASE_DIR (BASE_DIR*\pt\bea\tuxedo by default).

11. In the Registry Editor, only for the keys from step 9 and 10 that reference the DPK installation locations, right-click and select Delete.
12. Close the Registry Editor window.
13. Open the file C:\Program Files\Oracle\Inventory\ContentsXML\inventory.xml in a text editor.
14. Locate the lines that reference the DPK deployment:

Note. This sample has been formatted for readability.

```
<HOME NAME="OraWL12213Home" LOC="C:/psft/pt/bea" TYPE="O" IDX="16"/>
```

```
<HOME NAME="OraTux1222Home" LOC="C:\psft\pt\bea\tuxedo" TYPE="O"
IDX="17"/>
<HOME NAME="OraDB19cHome" LOC="C:\psft\db\oracle-server\19.0.0"
TYPE="O" IDX="18"/>
```

15. Delete only the lines referencing the DPK deployment, and save the file.
16. Remove everything under the *BASE_DIR* folder *(BASE_DIR*\db, *BASE_DIR*\dpk, and *BASE_DIR*\pt).

    Note. If you performed a customized deployment, back up the psft_customizations.yaml file and any log files, to refer to if necessary. Save them outside of the *BASE_DIR.*

    Note. You may get a message that some of the file names are too big for the recycle bin. Click OK to accept.

17. Remove C:\User\<*username*>\psft\pt\8.58 (PS_CFG_HOME).
18. If you performed a customized deployment that installed software such as Oracle Tuxedo or Oracle WebLogic, or PS_APP_HOME or PS_CFG_HOME, in non-default locations, remove that software manually, unless you need to retain the installations.

    Note. If you want to retain the additional components, do not remove the installation locations. Be sure to use a customized deployment and specify the location of the additional components for any subsequent deployments.

19. Delete any user-defined System environment variables, such as PS_HOME, TUXDIR, PS_CFG_HOME, PS_APP_HOME, ORACLE_HOME, TNS_ADMIN.
20. Completely clean up any DPK install directory that was used for previous DPKs.

    If you do not delete these or move them off the machine, they may be picked up by a subsequent DPK setup process and may cause the new DPK to fail.
21. Check the PATH environment variable, and remove the directories or path associated with the previous DPK deployments.
22. Restart the windows machine to release any caches or processes in the memory.

Task 5-4-7: Manually Removing the PeopleSoft Environment on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris

This section includes advanced steps to be used only if the cleanup procedures using the DPK setup script or psft_puppet_apply script in this section failed, or if you were not able to use the previous procedures for any reason

If the cleanup process on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris was not totally successful, the *BASE_DIR* directories may not be entirely cleared, or you may have trouble when carrying out another deployment. Before carrying out the advanced steps in this section:

1. Run the command `./psft-dpk-setup.sh --cleanup`.
2. If the script displays a FAILED message, run it again.
3. If it succeeds, check the *BASE_DIR* directories to be sure everything has been deleted.
4. If the *BASE_DIR* directories are not clear, or if a subsequent deployment is not successful, try the following steps.

Here are a few things to check for the advanced manual cleanup on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris. Depending upon where the cleanup process failed, some of the items mentioned may have already been removed.

1. Check for left-over PeopleSoft processes.

   ```
   ps -aux|more
   ```

2. Stop the processes using this command with the process ID:

   ```
   kill -9 <PID>
   ```

3. Check for the five PeopleSoft user IDs using these commands

   ```
   id psadm1
   id psadm2
   id psadm3
   id oracle2
   id esadm1
   ```

   When you carry out the cleanup using the DPK setup script, it should remove the PeopleSoft users cleanly. However, if the users' home directory was deleted by mistake before running the cleanup, the user definition may remain. If the commands give an output, it means the user exists.

4. If there are left-over PeopleSoft users, check for running processes associated with the users with this command:

   ```
   ps -ef|grep <user_id>
   ```

5. Stop any running processes associated with the users, if necessary.
6. Delete the users, with this command:

   ```
   userdel -r <user_id>
   ```

7. Remove the PeopleSoft base directory *(BASE_DIR)*.

   Note. If you performed a customized deployment, back up the psft_customizations.yaml file and any log files to refer to if necessary. Save them outside of *BASE_DIR.*

8. If you performed a customized deployment that installed software such as Oracle Tuxedo or Oracle WebLogic, PS_APP_HOME or PS_CFG_HOME, in non-default locations, remove that software manually.

   Note. If you want to retain the additional components, do not remove the installation locations. Be sure to use a customized deployment and specify the location of the additional components for any subsequent deployments.

9. Remove any environment variables referring to the *BASE_DIR* that you removed, or to any of the customized locations (for example, TUXDIR, WL_HOME, BEA_HOME, PS_HOME, PS_CFG_HOME, PS_APP_HOME).
10. Check for leftover directories on AIX.

    On AIX if *BASE_DIR* is on NFS, you may not be able to use the command `rm` to remove the *BASE_DIR*. If so, check for the presence of a directory beginning with ".nfs" in *BASE_DIR*/pt/bea/oui/lib/aix_ppc64. Remove the *BASE_DIR*/pt/bea/oui/lib/aix_ppc64/.nfs*xxx* directory manually before deleting *BASE_DIR*.

Appendix A

Applying PeopleTools Patches Using DPKs

This appendix discusses:

- Reviewing PeopleTools Patch Application Options
- Using Scenario 1
- Using Scenario 2
- Using Scenario 3

Reviewing PeopleTools Patch Application Options

This appendix describes various use cases you may encounter when planning to apply a PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.xx patch using the PeopleSoft PeopleTools deployment packages (DPKs). These use cases assume that you want to apply the patch to an existing PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58 installation.

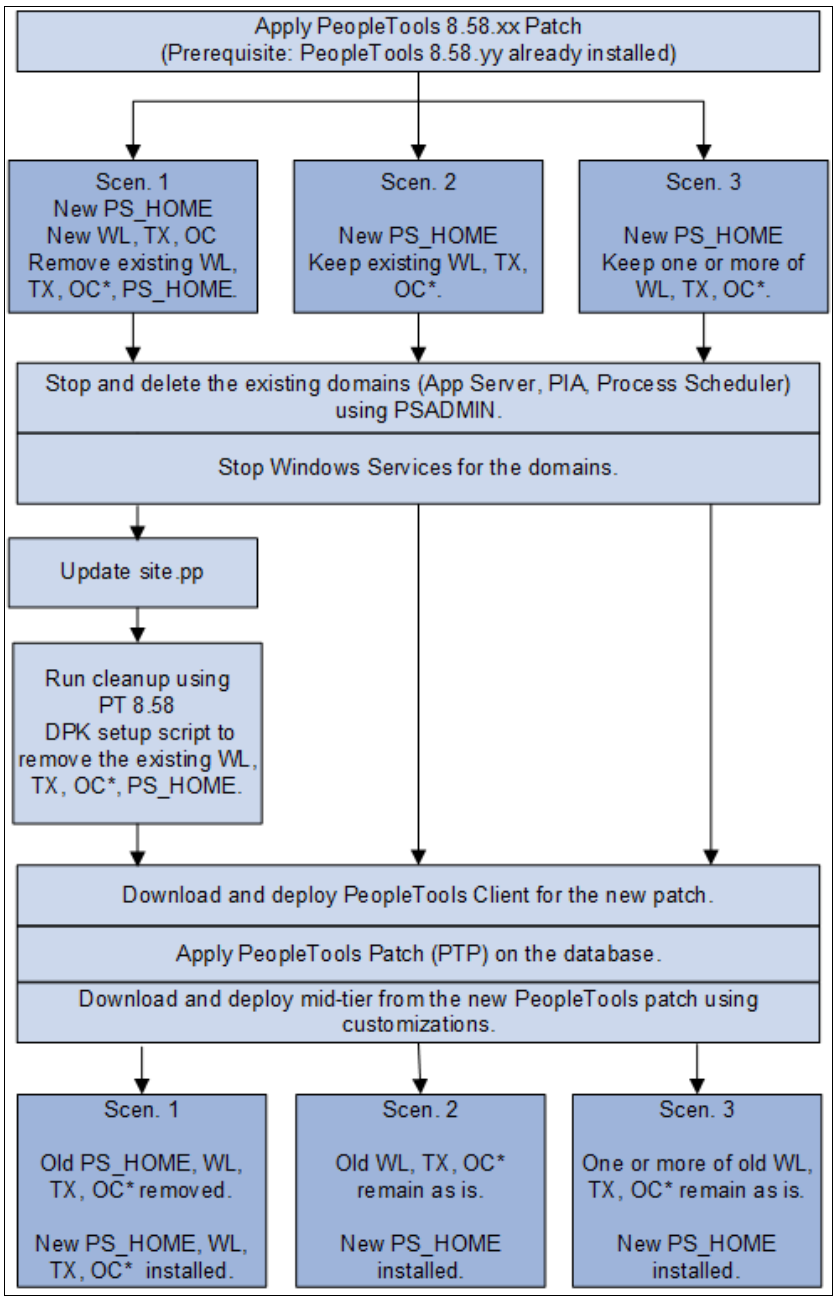
Here are some general recommendations for choosing the method to apply PeopleTools patches:

- If there are any changes to one or more additional software components, such as Oracle WebLogic (WL), Oracle Tuxedo (TX), or Oracle Client (OC), then consider Scenario 3.

  Note. References to deploying or removing Oracle Client (OC) in this section are applicable only if your PeopleSoft environment is installed on an Oracle Database platform. For other RDBMS, disregard the references to Oracle Client.

- If there are no changes to any of the additional software components, Oracle WebLogic, Oracle Tuxedo, or Oracle Client, then consider Scenario 2.

This graphic summarizes the three scenarios for applying PeopleTools Patch (8.58.xx) using DPKs.



Scenarios for applying PeopleTools Patches

OC* indicates that Oracle Client applies only to environments on Oracle RDBMS.

Task A-1: Using Scenario 1

This section discusses:

- Understanding Scenario 1
- Stopping and Deleting the Domains on the Initial Environment

- Stopping the Services for the Domains
- Updating the site.pp File
- Removing the Existing PeopleTools Components
- Downloading and Deploying the PeopleTools Client for the New Release
- Applying the PeopleTools Patch Using Change Assistant
- Deploying the New Release in Mid-Tier Mode
- Preparing psft_customizations.yaml and Completing the Deployment
- Reviewing the Results
- Verifying the Patch Application

Understanding Scenario 1

Scenario 1 assumes that:

- You need a new installation home directory, referred to here as *PS_HOME_NEW*, along with new installations of Oracle WebLogic, Oracle Tuxedo, and Oracle Client.
- You want to discard the existing installation home directory, referred to here as *PS_HOME_INIT* as well as the Oracle WebLogic, Oracle Tuxedo, and Oracle Client installations.
- You have a Microsoft Windows host to install the PeopleTools Client.
- This scenario applies to Linux, AIX, HP-UX, Solaris and Microsoft Windows operating systems.
- Your existing PeopleTools 8.58.<*init*> environment was installed using the PeopleSoft DPKs.

Task A-1-1: Stopping and Deleting the Domains on the Initial Environment

Carry out these steps on the existing PeopleTools 8.58.<*init*> environment (for example, 8.58.01):

If you have not already done so, stop and delete the existing domains running on the initial, existing PeopleTools release, PeopleTools 8.58.<*init*> — Application Server, PIA, and Process Scheduler, using the PSADMIN utility.

See "Using and Maintaining the PeopleSoft Environment," Managing PeopleTools Domains with PSADMIN.

Task A-1-2: Stopping the Services for the Domains

On Microsoft Windows, stop the services for the Application Server, PIA, and Process Scheduler domains:

- Open the Services dialog box, for example by clicking Start and selecting Administrative Tools, Services.
- Right-click on PsftAppServerDomain<*Appserver_domain_name*>Service and select Stop.
- Right-click on PsftPrcsDomain<*ProcSched_domain_name*>Service and select Stop.
- Right-click on PsftPIADomain<*PIA_domain_name*>Service and select Stop.
- Select File, Exit, to close the dialog box.

Task A-1-3: Updating the site.pp File

Carry out these steps on the existing, initial PeopleTools 8.58.<*init*> environment (for example, 8.58.01):

1. Open the site.pp file for editing.

   The site.pp file is installed with the PeopleTools DPKs, and is found in *BASE_DIR/*

dpk/puppet/production/manifests.

2. Verify that the site.pp file includes `pt_tools_deployment`, as shown in the sample below.

Note. There is a space after "include" in these examples.

```
node default {

include ::pt_role::pt_tools_deployment

}
```

Save the file and close.

Task A-1-4: Removing the Existing PeopleTools Components

Carry out these steps on the existing PeopleTools 8.58.<*init*> environment (for example, 8.58.01):

Remove the existing PeopleTools home directory, referred to here as *PS_HOME_INIT,* as well as Oracle WebLogic, Oracle Tuxedo, Oracle Client, and JDK.

See "Using and Maintaining the PeopleSoft Environment," Removing a Deployed PeopleSoft Environment, for details on removing the deployment components and verifying the removal.

- If you retained the downloaded DPKs in the original location, go to the download location, *DPK_INSTALL_INIT*/setup and run the cleanup command.

  On Microsoft Windows, open a command prompt with Run as Administrator and run:

  ```
  psft-dpk-setup.bat --cleanup
  ```

  On Linux, AIX, HP-UX, Solaris, open a terminal window as root and run:

  ```
  ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --cleanup
  ```

- If you did not retain the downloaded DPKs, use the `puppet apply` command or manual methods to remove the existing deployed components.

Note. Verify that the cleanup was complete before proceeding. For more details, refer to the section Removing a Deployed PeopleSoft Environment.

Task A-1-5: Downloading and Deploying the PeopleTools Client for the New Release

On the Microsoft Windows host that you have designated for the PeopleTools Client for the new PeopleTools 8.58.<*new*> patch; for example, PeopleTools 8.58.11:

1. Locate and download the PeopleTools 8.58.<*new*> DPKs for the new release to a directory with sufficient disc space, referred to here as *DPK_INSTALL_NEW*.

   See PeopleTools Patches Home Page, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2062712.2, for links to the most recent patches. For earlier releases, search My Oracle Support, Patches and Updates.

2. In the downloaded DPKs, locate the DPK for the PeopleTools Client for the new PeopleTools 8.58.<*new*> patch, which is the fourth zip file *(Filename*_4of4.zip)

   Copy the DPK to the Microsoft Windows Client machine.

3. To deploy the PeopleTools Client for the new 8.58.<*new*> PeopleTools patch in the Microsoft Windows

Client host, use the instructions for standalone deployment described in this documentation, with the following guidelines.

See "Deploying the PeopleTools Deployment Packages," Deploying the PeopleTools Client in Standalone Mode for detailed steps and explanations.

a. Run `SetupPTClient.bat -t`.

b. Answer yes when asked if you want to deploy PeopleTools client.

c. Specify an installation directory, the RDBMS, and other information for your environment.

   The default installation directory is C:\PT<*release_number*>_Client_<*database_type*>, for example C:\PT8.58.11_Client_ORA.

d. Specify the PeopleTools Patch (2) option at this prompt:

```
Please make your selection for the Tools Client deployment:
1. People Tools Full Upgrade
2. People Tools Patch
3. None of the above
Enter your choice [1-3]: 2
```

e. Answer y (yes) when asked if you want to install Change Assistant:

```
Do you want to install Change Assistant? [Y/N]: y
```

Task A-1-6: Applying the PeopleTools Patch Using Change Assistant

Use the Change Assistant (CA) you installed in the previous section to apply the new PeopleTools 8.58.<*new*> patch database changes. In the current PeopleTools release you can apply all patch database changes for the patch by installing a single PeopleTools change package (PTP) using Change Assistant. By using this new preferred method in PeopleTools 8.58, you can avoid applying the patch manually.

The database changes for the new release patch are delivered in a change package located in the *PS_HOME*/PTP directory in the Change Assistant installation; for example, C:\PT8.58.11_Client_ORA\PTP.

Here is a brief summary of the steps required to apply the change package using the Change Assistant graphical user interface. For detailed steps and explanations, see the PeopleTools product documentation.

See *PeopleTools: Change Assistant and Update Manager,* "Using Change Assistant to Apply PeopleTools Patch."

1. Start Change Assistant from the desktop icon or program menu.
2. Configure the general options and target database definitions.
3. Select Tools, Change Actions.
4. Select Update Manager and click Next.
5. Select Apply a Patch to your Current PeopleTools Release and click Finish.
6. Review the Change Package Settings page and click Next.
7. Select the target database, or if the database has not been defined yet, use the Create button to create the database.
8. Click Next.
9. Select the Change Package for the PeopleTools patch.
10. Click Next.

    Change Assistant performs a PeopleTools patch version check. Review the messages and click Next. A warning is displayed if the selected patch is at the same or a lower level than the installed PeopleTools patch. It is not recommended to re-apply or downgrade PeopleTools patches.

11. The Apply Summary page is displayed; review the summary and click Finish.
12. Change Assistant will load the change package and run the PeopleTools patch job.

    All steps will run unattended and when the last step is complete you will receive a message that there are no more steps to run.

Alternatively, if you have configured a target environment and general options in Change Assistant, you can apply the change package via the command line. To apply the PTP on the command line, use the following command. Specify the target database name, such as HCM92U31 for <*YOUR_TARGET_DB_ENV_NAME*>, and the update ID of the change package for <*patchxxx*>:

```
Changeassistant.bat -MODE UM -ACTION PTPAPPLY -TGTENV <YOUR_TARGET_DB_ENV_⇒
NAME> -UPD <patchxxx>
```

See *PeopleTools: Change Assistant and Update Manager,* "Running Change Assistant Job from the Command Line."

Task A-1-7: Deploying the New Release in Mid-Tier Mode

To install the PeopleTools DPKs for the new PeopleTools 8.58.<*new*> release; for example, PeopleTools 8.58.11:

1. Go to the directory where you downloaded the PeopleTools 8.58.<*new*> DPKs for the new release, referred to here as *DPK_INSTALL_NEW*.

   See Downloading and Deploying the PeopleTools Client for the New Release.
2. Extract the first downloaded DPK zip file, for example, *Filename*_1of4.zip, in the same directory.

   The extraction creates the *DPK_INSTALL_NEW/*setup folder and other files.
3. To set up the PeopleTools mid-tier components for the new PeopleTools 8.58.<*new*> patch release:
   - On Microsoft Windows, open a command prompt with Run as Administrator, go to *DPK_INSTALL_NEW/*setup and run this command:

     ```
     psft-dpk-setup.bat --env_type midtier
     ```
   - On Linux, AIX, HP-UX, Solaris, open a terminal window as root, go to *DPK_INSTALL_NEW/*setup, and run this command:

     ```
     ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --env_type midtier
     ```
4. At the following prompt, enter the full path for a new directory (that is, different from that used for the existing 8.58 installation) for the PeopleSoft base folder (referred to in this documentation as *BASE_DIR_NEW*):

   Note. When entering the path for the base folder, use forward slashes (/). For example, `C:/psft_new`. Enclose any names with special characters in double quotes. Do not use a name for the base folder that begins with a number. On Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, do not end the base directory name with a forward slash (for example, do not enter /ds1/psft/).

   Note. The script progress and validation messages are not included here. See the task Running the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPK Setup Script for Mid-tier Deployment for more details.

   ```
   The base folder is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs. It is also
   used to deploy the PeopleSoft components. This folder should be
   accessible on the Windows VM, must have write permissions and should
   have enough free space.
   ```

```
Enter the PeopleSoft Base Folder: C:/psft_new
Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]:
```

The deployment sets up a new installation home directory, *PS_HOME_NEW* and installs Oracle WebLogic, Oracle Tuxedo, Oracle Client, and JDK under the specified PeopleSoft base folder, *BASE_DIR_NEW/*pt.

5. Specify the information for the database that you want to connect to.
   a. For the database platform, enter ORACLE, MSSQL (Microsoft SQL Server), or DB2ODBC (DB2 for z/OS).

      ```
      Enter the PeopleSoft database platform [ORACLE]:
      ```

   b. Enter *y* (yes) if the database you are connecting to is a Unicode database, or n (no) for a non-Unicode database.

      ```
      Is the PeopleSoft database unicode? [Y|n]:
      ```

   c. Enter the PeopleSoft database name.

      If the database name includes non-alphanumeric characters such as periods, enclose the name in double quotes. For example, "HCM.92".

      ```
      Enter the PeopleSoft database name [HCM92]:
      ```

   d. Enter the database service name.

      Note. The service name is required for Oracle RDBMS.

      For the service name, enter the full name, including the domain, if the database was installed with the domain. Use forward slashes if necessary. If the service name includes non-alphanumeric characters such as periods, enclose the name in double quotes. For example, "HCM.92.example.com". Do not enter an IP address.

      ```
      Enter the PeopleSoft database service name [HCM92]:
      ```

   e. Enter the name of the host where the database is installed, and the port number:

      Use forward slashes if necessary. If the host name includes non-alphanumeric characters such as periods, enclose the name in double quotes. For example, "host.example.com". Do not enter an IP address.

      ```
      Enter the PeopleSoft database host name:
      Enter the PeopleSoft database port [1521]: 1521
      ```

6. Enter the PeopleSoft Connect ID at the following prompt:

   The default is people.

   ```
   Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people]:
   ```

7. Enter a password for the PeopleSoft Connect ID, and enter again on the next line, at the following prompt.

   See E-DPK - Password restrictions are not reflected in the DPK setup script prompts, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2639270.1.

   ```
   Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people] password.
   Ensure that the password meets the length and complexity requirements
   for your database platform:
   Re-Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID password:
   ```

8. Enter the PeopleSoft operator ID, such as PS or VP1.

   ```
   Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [PS]: PS
   ```

9. Enter the password twice for the PeopleSoft operator ID.

```
Enter a new PeopleSoft database Operator ID [PS] password.
Ensure that the password is between 1 and 32 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Operator ID password:
```

10. Enter the Application Server Domain Connection password, following the guidelines in the prompt.

    The window does not display masking characters as you type. There is no default password.

    Note. This is an optional password. If no password is entered, the connection between Web Server and Application Server will not be password protected.

```
[Optional] Enter a new Application Server Domain connection password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the Application Server Domain connection password:
```

11. Enter the password for the PTWEBSERVER web profile user.

```
Enter a new PeopleSoft Web Profile user [PTWEBSERVER] password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 32 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Web Profile user password:
```

12. Enter the Oracle WebLogic Server Admin password, following the guidelines in the prompt.

    The default Oracle WebLogic server administrator is system. The window does not display masking characters as you type. There is no default password.

```
Enter a new WebLogic Server Admin user [system] password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length
with at least one lowercase letter and one uppercase letter. It must⇒
 also
contain one number or one of these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the WebLogic Server Admin user password:
```

13. Enter the Integration Gateway user ID and password at the following prompt.

    The default user ID is administrator.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway user [administrator]:
Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway user [administrator] password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway user password:
```

14. Enter the Integration Gateway keystore password.

    You see this prompt beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.04.

    See the information on using the integrationGateway.properties file and configuring security in the Integration Broker product documentation.

    See *PeopleTools: Integration Broker Administration*, "Configuring Security and General Properties."

```
Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway Keystore password. Ensure
the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
```

```
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway Keystore password:
```

15. If you want to change any of the answers to the previous questions, enter *n* (no) at the following prompt, or enter *y* (yes) to continue:

    ```
    Are you happy with your answers? [y|n]:
    ```

16. Answer *n* (no) to the following prompt:

    ```
    The bootstrap script is ready to deploy and configure the PeopleSoft
    environment using the default configuration defined in the Puppet
    Hiera YAML files. You can proceed by answering 'y' at the following
    prompt. And, if you want to customize the environment by overriding
    the default configuration, you can answer 'n'. If you answer 'n', you
    should follow the instructions in the PeopleSoft Installation Guide
    for creating the customization Hiera YAML file and running the Puppet
    'apply' command directly to continue with the setup of the PeopleSoft
    environment.

    Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]: ⇒
    n

    You have decided not to continue with the default PeopleSoft environment
    setup process. Any customizations to the PeopleSoft environment should
    be done in the Hiera YAML file 'psft_customizations.yaml' and place it
    under [c:\psft\dpk\puppet\production\data] folder. After making the
    necessary customizations, run the following script to continue with
    the setup of PeopleSoft environment.

    Start a cmd window as Administrator and run C:\psft\psft_puppet_⇒
    apply.cmd

    Exiting the PeopleSoft environment setup process.
    ```

    The script stops.

17. Complete the instructions in the next section to prepare the psft_customizations.yaml file and complete the initialization.

See Also

"Deploying the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Deployment Packages," Running the DPK Setup Script for Mid-tier Deployment.

Task A-1-8: Preparing psft_customizations.yaml and Completing the Deployment

Carry out these steps from the PeopleTools 8.58.<*new*> environment, installed in the previous section (for example, 8.58.11). Create or edit a psft_customizations.yaml file, and complete the initialization using the psft_puppet_apply script.

See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations."

The documentation lists several types of customizations you can use for your environment. For this scenario, it is important that you include the location for an existing *PS_APP_HOME* (if you have one) to be associated with the *PS_HOME* in the psft_customizations.yaml file.

Here is a sample psft_customizations.yaml file that specifies the location for an existing *PS_APP_HOME* location which will be associated to *PS_HOME* during the deployment process:

Note. Be sure to retain the spacing and indentation as shown in this sample.

```
---
ps_apphome_location: c:/fscm_app_home
ps_app_home:
  db_type: "%{hiera('db_platform')}"
  location: "%{hiera('ps_apphome_location')}"
```

Complete the initialization using the psft_puppet_apply script as described in the documentation.

See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations."

Task A-1-9: Reviewing the Results

After completing the steps above:

- *PS_HOME*, Oracle WebLogic, Oracle Tuxedo, and the Oracle Client from the initial environment have been removed.
- There are new installations of *PS_HOME*, Oracle WebLogic, Oracle Tuxedo, and the Oracle Client.
- The Application Server, Process Scheduler, and PIA domains have been configured.

After applying the PeopleTools patch, review the patch's readme.txt for any manual configuration instructions that may be needed for your particular environment.

Task A-1-10: Verifying the Patch Application

Your host should have initialized successfully and started participating in your PeopleSoft environment. Many of the steps that you should take to verify this or diagnose problems will be the same for Microsoft Windows, Linux, AIX, HP-UX, and Solaris hosts.

1. Verify that you can sign in to PeopleSoft:

   Start a browser and sign on to the PeopleSoft Application with the URL http://<*hostname*>:<*pia_http_port*>/ps/signon.html.
2. If you do not see the log in page, verify that the environment can be reached from your machine using a utility such as ping.
3. If your host can be pinged, verify that the PIA domain is running in the following step.
4. Verify that Application Server, Process Scheduler and PIA domains have started:
   a. On Linux, AIX, HP-UX, Solaris , using an SSH client, log in as the psadm2 user.

      On Microsoft Windows, open a command prompt with Run as Administrator.
   b. Start the psadmin utility by typing `psadmin` at the command prompt.

      When logged in as the psadm2 user the environment variables for PeopleSoft administration are set as part of the psadm2 user's log-in profile.
   c. Use the PSADMIN menus for the Application Server, Process Scheduler, and Web server (PIA) to verify the status of each of the installed components.

d. If one or more of the components has not started, examine the log files for the required PeopleSoft component to establish what has caused the component to not start.

   The log files are in the default locations for each of the PeopleSoft components.

5. To verify the *PS_APP_HOME* location, check the value of the PS_APP_HOME environment variable.

   On Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, the environment variable is found in the .profile file for the psadm2 user. Use the following command on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris to check the environment variable:

   ```
   export PS_APP_HOME=/home/fscm_app_home
   ```

   On Microsoft Windows, open the System Properties dialog box and click Environment Variables.

6. You can review the psprcs.cfg file to verify that the SQR section includes a path for PS_APP_HOME.

   ```
   [SQR]
   ;=================================================================⇒
   ==
   ; Settings for SQR Software
   ;=================================================================⇒
   ==
   SQRBIN=%PS_HOME%/bin/sqr/ORA/bin
   PSSQRFLAGS=-ZIF%PS_HOME%/sqr/pssqr%LANGUAGECD%.unx
   Print Log=N
   Enhanced HTML=N
   PSSQR=%PS_APP_HOME%/sqr:%PS_HOME%/sqr
   ```

   See *PeopleTools: Process Scheduler*, "Using the PSADMIN for the Process Scheduler Configuration File."

Task A-2: Using Scenario 2

This section discusses:

- Understanding Scenario 2
- Stopping and Deleting the Domains on the Initial Environment
- Stopping the Services for the Domains
- Downloading and Deploying the PeopleTools Client for the New Release
- Applying the PeopleTools Patch Using Change Assistant
- Deploying the New Release in Mid-tier Mode
- Preparing psft_customizations.yaml and Completing the Deployment
- Reviewing the Results
- Verifying the Patch Application

Understanding Scenario 2

Scenario 2 assumes that:

- You want to install only the new patch release *PS_HOME*
- You want to retain the existing installations of Oracle WebLogic, Oracle Tuxedo, and Oracle Client.
- This scenario applies to Linux, AIX, HP-UX, Solaris, and Microsoft Windows operating systems.

Task A-2-1: Stopping and Deleting the Domains on the Initial Environment

Carry out these steps on the existing PeopleTools 8.58.<*init*> environment (for example, 8.58.01):

If you have not already done so, stop and delete the existing domains running on the initial, existing PeopleTools release, PeopleTools 8.58.<*init*> — Application Server, PIA, and Process Scheduler, using the PSADMIN utility.

See "Using and Maintaining the PeopleSoft Environment," Managing PeopleTools Domains with PSADMIN.

Task A-2-2: Stopping the Services for the Domains

On Microsoft Windows, stop the services for the Application Server, PIA, and Process Scheduler domains:

- Open the Services dialog box, for example by clicking Start and selecting Administrative Tools, Services.
- Right-click on PsftAppServerDomain<*Appserver_domain_name*>Service and select Stop.
- Right-click on PsftPrcsDomain<*ProcSched_domain_name*>Service and select Stop.
- Right-click on PsftPIADomain<*PIA_domain_name*>Service and select Stop.
- Select File, Exit, to close the dialog box.

Task A-2-3: Downloading and Deploying the PeopleTools Client for the New Release

On the Microsoft Windows host that you have designated for the PeopleTools Client for the new PeopleTools 8.58.<*new*> patch; for example, PeopleTools 8.58.11:

1. Locate and download the PeopleTools 8.58.<*new*> DPKs for the new release to a directory with sufficient disc space, referred to here as *DPK_INSTALL_NEW*.

   See PeopleTools Patches Home Page, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2062712.2, for links to the most recent patches. For earlier releases, search My Oracle Support, Patches and Updates.

2. In the downloaded DPKs, locate the DPK for the PeopleTools Client for the new PeopleTools 8.58.<*new*> patch, which is the fourth zip file *(Filename*_4of4.zip)

   Copy the DPK to the Microsoft Windows Client machine.

3. To deploy the PeopleTools Client for the new 8.58.<*new*> PeopleTools patch in the Microsoft Windows Client host, use the instructions for standalone deployment described in this documentation, with the following guidelines.

   See "Deploying the PeopleTools Deployment Packages," Deploying the PeopleTools Client in Standalone Mode for detailed steps and explanations.

   a. Run `SetupPTClient.bat -t`.

   b. Answer yes when asked if you want to deploy PeopleTools client.

   c. Specify an installation directory, the RDBMS, and other information for your environment.

      The default installation directory is C:\PT<*release_number*>_Client_<*database_type*>, for example C:\PT8.58.11_Client_ORA.

   d. Specify the PeopleTools Patch (2) option at this prompt:

```
Please make your selection for the Tools Client deployment:
1. People Tools Full Upgrade
2. People Tools Patch
3. None of the above
```

```
Enter your choice [1-3]: 2
```

e. Answer y (yes) when asked if you want to install Change Assistant:

```
Do you want to install Change Assistant? [Y/N]: y
```

Task A-2-4: Applying the PeopleTools Patch Using Change Assistant

Use the Change Assistant (CA) you installed in the previous section to apply the new PeopleTools 8.58.<*new*> patch database changes. In the current PeopleTools release you can apply all patch database changes for the patch by installing a single PeopleTools change package (PTP) using Change Assistant. By using this new preferred method in PeopleTools 8.58, you can avoid applying the patch manually.

The database changes for the new release patch are delivered in a change package located in the *PS_HOME*/PTP directory in the Change Assistant installation; for example, C:\PT8.58.11_Client_ORA\PTP.

Here is a brief summary of the steps required to apply the change package using the Change Assistant graphical user interface. For detailed steps and explanations, see the PeopleTools product documentation.

See *PeopleTools: Change Assistant and Update Manager,* "Using Change Assistant to Apply PeopleTools Patch."

1. Start Change Assistant from the desktop icon or program menu.
2. Configure the general options and target database definitions.
3. Select Tools, Change Actions.
4. Select Update Manager and click Next.
5. Select Apply a Patch to your Current PeopleTools Release and click Finish.
6. Review the Change Package Settings page and click Next.
7. Select the target database, or if the database has not been defined yet, use the Create button to create the database.
8. Click Next.
9. Select the Change Package for the PeopleTools patch.
10. Click Next.

    Change Assistant performs a PeopleTools patch version check. Review the messages and click Next. A warning is displayed if the selected patch is at the same or a lower level than the installed PeopleTools patch. It is not recommended to re-apply or downgrade PeopleTools patches.
11. The Apply Summary page is displayed; review the summary and click Finish.
12. Change Assistant will load the change package and run the PeopleTools patch job.

    All steps will run unattended and when the last step is complete you will receive a message that there are no more steps to run.

Alternatively, if you have configured a target environment and general options in Change Assistant, you can apply the change package via the command line. To apply the PTP on the command line, use the following command, edited for your environment:

```
Changeassistant.bat -MODE UM -ACTION PTPAPPLY -TGTENV <YOUR_TARGET_DB_ENV_⇒
NAME_LIKE_PT856TST> -UPD <patchxxx>
```

See *PeopleTools: Change Assistant and Update Manager,* "Running Change Assistant Job from the Command Line."

Task A-2-5: Deploying the New Release in Mid-tier Mode

To install the PeopleTools DPKs for the new PeopleTools 8.58.<*new*> release; for example, PeopleTools 8.58.11:

1. Go to the directory where you downloaded the PeopleTools 8.58.<*new*> DPKs for the new release, referred to here as *DPK_INSTALL_NEW*.

   See Downloading and Deploying the PeopleTools Client for the New Release.

2. Extract the first downloaded DPK zip file, for example, *Filename*_1of4.zip, in the same directory.

   The extraction creates the *DPK_INSTALL_NEW/*setup folder and other files.

3. To set up the PeopleTools server for the new PeopleTools 8.58.<*new*> patch release:

   - On Microsoft Windows, open a command prompt with Run as Administrator, go to *DPK_INSTALL_NEW/*setup and run this command:

     ```
     psft-dpk-setup.bat --env_type midtier
     ```

   - On Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, open a terminal window as root, go to *DPK_INSTALL_NEW/*setup, and run this command:

     ```
     ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --env_type midtier
     ```

4. At the following prompt, enter the full path for a new directory (that is, different from that used for the existing 8.58 installation) for the PeopleSoft base folder (referred to in this documentation as *BASE_DIR_NEW*):

   Note. When entering the path for the base folder, use forward slashes (/). For example, `C:/psft_new`. Enclose any names with special characters in double quotes. Do not use a name for the base folder that begins with a number. On Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, do not end the base directory name with a forward slash (for example, do not enter /ds1/psft/).

   Note. The script progress and validation messages are not included here. See the task Running the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPK Setup Script for Mid-tier Deployment for more details.

   ```
   The base folder is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs. It is also
   used to deploy the PeopleSoft components. This folder should be
   accessible on the Windows VM, must have write permissions and should
   have enough free space.

   Enter the PeopleSoft Base Folder: C:/psft_new
   Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]:
   ```

   The deployment sets up a new installation home directory, *PS_HOME_NEW* and installs Oracle WebLogic, Oracle Tuxedo, Oracle Client, and JDK under the specified PeopleSoft base folder, *BASE_DIR_NEW/*pt.

5. Specify the information for the database that you want to connect to.

   a. For the database platform, enter ORACLE, MSSQL (Microsoft SQL Server), or DB2ODBC (DB2 for z/OS).

      ```
      Enter the PeopleSoft database platform [ORACLE]:
      ```

   b. Enter *y* (yes) if the database you are connecting to is a Unicode database, or n (no) for a non-Unicode database.

      ```
      Is the PeopleSoft database unicode? [Y|n]:
      ```

c. Enter the PeopleSoft database name.

If the database name includes non-alphanumeric characters such as periods, enclose the name in double quotes. For example, "HCM.92".

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database name [HCM92]:
```

d. Enter the database service name.

Note. The service name is required for Oracle RDBMS.

For the service name, enter the full name, including the domain, if the database was installed with the domain. Use forward slashes if necessary. If the service name includes non-alphanumeric characters such as periods, enclose the name in double quotes. For example, "HCM.92.example.com". Do not enter an IP address.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database service name [HCM92]:
```

e. Enter the name of the host where the database is installed, and the port number:

Use forward slashes if necessary. If the host name includes non-alphanumeric characters such as periods, enclose the name in double quotes. For example, "host.example.com". Do not enter an IP address.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database host name:
Enter the PeopleSoft database port [1521]: 1521
```

6. Enter the PeopleSoft Connect ID at the following prompt:

The default is people.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people]:
```

7. Enter a password for the PeopleSoft Connect ID, and enter again on the next line, at the following prompt.

See E-DPK - Password restrictions are not reflected in the DPK setup script prompts, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2639270.1.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people] password.
Ensure that the password meets the length and complexity requirements
for your database platform:
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID password:
```

8. Enter the PeopleSoft operator ID, such as PS or VP1.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [PS]:
```

9. Enter the password twice for the PeopleSoft operator ID.

```
Enter a new PeopleSoft database Operator ID [PS] password.
Ensure that the password is between 1 and 32 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Operator ID password:
```

10. Enter the Application Server Domain Connection password, following the guidelines in the prompt.

The window does not display masking characters as you type. There is no default password.

Note. This is an optional password. If no password is entered, the connection between Web Server and Application Server will not be password protected.

```
[Optional] Enter a new Application Server Domain connection password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
```

```
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the Application Server Domain connection password:
```

11. Enter the password for the PTWEBSERVER web profile user.

```
Enter a new PeopleSoft Web Profile user [PTWEBSERVER] password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 32 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Web Profile user password:
```

12. Enter the Oracle WebLogic Server Admin password, following the guidelines in the prompt.

    The default Oracle WebLogic server administrator is system. The window does not display masking characters as you type. There is no default password.

```
Enter a new WebLogic Server Admin user [system] password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length
with at least one lowercase letter and one uppercase letter. It must⇒
 also
contain one number or one of these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the WebLogic Server Admin user password:
```

13. Enter the Integration Gateway user ID and password at the following prompt.

    The default user ID is administrator.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway user [administrator]:
Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway user [administrator] password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway user password:
```

14. Enter the Integration Gateway keystore password.

    You see this prompt beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.04.

    See the information on using the integrationGateway.properties file and configuring security in the Integration Broker product documentation.

    See *PeopleTools: Integration Broker Administration*, "Configuring Security and General Properties."

```
Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway Keystore password. Ensure
the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway Keystore password:
```

15. If you want to change any of the answers to the previous questions, enter *n* (no) at the following prompt, or enter *y* (yes) to continue:

```
Are you happy with your answers? [y|n]:
```

16. Answer *n* (no) to the following prompt:

```
The bootstrap script is ready to deploy and configure the PeopleSoft
environment using the default configuration defined in the Puppet
Hiera YAML files. You can proceed by answering 'y' at the following
prompt. And, if you want to customize the environment by overriding
the default configuration, you can answer 'n'. If you answer 'n', you
should follow the instructions in the PeopleSoft Installation Guide
for creating the customization Hiera YAML file and running the Puppet
```

```
'apply' command directly to continue with the setup of the PeopleSoft
environment.

Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]: ⇒
n

You have decided not to continue with the default PeopleSoft environment
setup process. Any customizations to the PeopleSoft environment should
be done in the Hiera YAML file 'psft_customizations.yaml' and place it
under [c:\psft\dpk\puppet\production\data] folder. After making the
necessary customizations, run the following script to continue with
the setup of PeopleSoft environment.

Start a cmd window as Administrator and run C:\psft\psft_puppet_⇒
apply.cmd

Exiting the PeopleSoft environment setup process.
```

The script stops.

17. Complete the instructions in the next section to prepare the psft_customizations.yaml file and complete the initialization.

See Also

"Deploying the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Deployment Packages," Running the DPK Setup Script for Mid-tier Deployment.

Task A-2-6: Preparing psft_customizations.yaml and Completing the Deployment

Carry out these steps from the PeopleTools 8.58.<*new*> environment, installed in the previous section (for example, 8.58.11). Create or edit a psft_customizations.yaml file, and complete the initialization using the psft_puppet_apply script.

See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations."

The documentation lists several types of customizations you can use for your environment. For this scenario, it is important that you include the following in the psft_customizations.yaml file:

- Location for an existing *PS_APP_HOME* (if you have one) to be associated with the *PS_HOME*.
- Existing installation locations for Oracle WebLogic, Oracle Tuxedo and Oracle Database client.

Here is a sample psft_customizations.yaml file that specifies the location for the Oracle WebLogic, Oracle Tuxedo, and Oracle Database client. This customization also specifies an existing *PS_APP_HOME* location which will be associated to *PS_HOME* during the deployment process.

Note. The Oracle Database client entry applies only to environments on Oracle RDBMS.

Note. . Be sure to retain the spacing and indentation as shown in this sample.

```
---
oracle_client_location:  C:/Oracle/Oracle-Client
oracle_client:
```

```
  location: C:/Oracle/Oracle-Client

jdk_location:  C:/Oracle/JDK
jdk:
  location:  C:/Oracle/JDK

weblogic_location: C:/Oracle/weblogic
weblogic:
  location: C:/Oracle/weblogic

tuxedo_location: C:/Oracle/weblogic/tuxedo
tuxedo:
 location: C:/Oracle/weblogic/tuxedo

ps_apphome_location: c:/fscm_app_home
ps_app_home:
  db_type: "%{hiera('db_platform')}"
  location: "%{hiera('ps_apphome_location')}"
```

Complete the initialization using the psft_puppet_apply script as described in the documentation.

See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations."

Task A-2-7: Reviewing the Results

After completing the steps above:

- *PS_HOME_INIT*, Oracle WebLogic, Oracle Tuxedo, and the Oracle Client from the initial environment remain as is.
- The Application Server, Process Scheduler, and PIA domains are configured.
- There is new installation of *PS_HOME_NEW*.

After applying the PeopleTools patch, review the patch's readme.txt for any manual configuration instructions that may be needed for your particular environment.

Task A-2-8: Verifying the Patch Application

Your host should have initialized successfully and started participating in your PeopleSoft environment. Many of the steps that you should take to verify this or diagnose problems will be the same for Microsoft Windows, Linux, AIX, HP-UX, and Solaris hosts.

1. Verify that you can sign in to PeopleSoft:

   Start a browser and sign on to the PeopleSoft Application with the URL http://<*hostname*>:<*pia_http_port*>/ps/signon.html.
2. If you do not see the log in page, verify that the environment can be reached from your machine using a utility such as ping.
3. If your host can be pinged, verify that the PIA domain is running in the following step.
4. Verify that Application Server, Process Scheduler and PIA domains have started:
   a. On Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, using an SSH client, log in as the psadm2 user.

      On Microsoft Windows, open a command prompt with Run as Administrator.
   b. Start the psadmin utility by typing `psadmin` at the command prompt.

When logged in as the psadm2 user the environment variables for PeopleSoft administration are set as part of the psadm2 user's log-in profile.

c. Use the PSADMIN menus for the Application Server, Process Scheduler, and Web server (PIA) to verify the status of each of the installed components.

d. If one or more of the components has not started, examine the log files for the required PeopleSoft component to establish what has caused the component to not start.

The log files are in the default locations for each of the PeopleSoft components.

5. To verify the *PS_APP_HOME* location, check the value of the PS_APP_HOME environment variable.

On Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, the environment variable is found in the .profile file for the psadm2 user. Use the following command on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris to check the environment variable:

```
export PS_APP_HOME=/home/fscm_app_home
```

On Microsoft Windows, open the System Properties dialog box and click Environment Variables.

6. You can review the psprcs.cfg file to verify that the SQR section includes a path for PS_APP_HOME.

```
[SQR]
;=========================================================================⇒
==
; Settings for SQR Software
;=========================================================================⇒
==
SQRBIN=%PS_HOME%/bin/sqr/ORA/bin
PSSQRFLAGS=-ZIF%PS_HOME%/sqr/pssqr%LANGUAGECD%.unx
Print Log=N
Enhanced HTML=N
PSSQR=%PS_APP_HOME%/sqr:%PS_HOME%/sqr
```

See *PeopleTools: Process Scheduler,* "Using the PSADMIN for the Process Scheduler Configuration File."

Task A-3: Using Scenario 3

This section discusses:

- Understanding Scenario 3
- Stopping and Deleting the Domains on the Initial Environment
- Stopping the Services for the Domains
- Downloading and Deploying the PeopleTools Client for the New Release
- Applying the PeopleTools Patch Using Change Assistant
- Deploying the New Release in Mid-tier Mode
- Preparing psft_customizations.yaml and Completing the Deployment
- Reviewing the Results
- Verifying the Patch Application

Understanding Scenario 3

Scenario 3 assumes that:

- You want to install only the new patch release *PS_HOME*
- You want to retain one or more of the existing installations of Oracle WebLogic, Oracle Tuxedo, or Oracle Client.
- This scenario applies to Linux, AIX, HP-UX, Solaris, and Microsoft Windows operating systems.

Task A-3-1: Stopping and Deleting the Domains on the Initial Environment

Carry out these steps on the existing PeopleTools 8.58.<*init*> environment (for example, 8.58.01):

If you have not already done so, stop and delete the existing domains running on the initial, existing PeopleTools release, PeopleTools 8.58.<*init*> — Application Server, PIA, and Process Scheduler, using the PSADMIN utility.

See "Using and Maintaining the PeopleSoft Environment," Managing PeopleTools Domains with PSADMIN.

Task A-3-2: Stopping the Services for the Domains

On Microsoft Windows, stop the services for the Application Server, PIA, and Process Scheduler domains:

- Open the Services dialog box, for example by clicking Start and selecting Administrative Tools, Services.
- Right-click on PsftAppServerDomain<*Appserver_domain_name*>Service and select Stop.
- Right-click on PsftPrcsDomain<*ProcSched_domain_name*>Service and select Stop.
- Right-click on PsftPIADomain<*PIA_domain_name*>Service and select Stop.
- Select File, Exit, to close the dialog box.

Task A-3-3: Downloading and Deploying the PeopleTools Client for the New Release

On the Microsoft Windows host that you have designated for the PeopleTools Client for the new PeopleTools 8.58.<*new*> patch; for example, PeopleTools 8.58.11:

1. Locate and download the PeopleTools 8.58.<*new*> DPKs for the new release to a directory with sufficient disc space, referred to here as *DPK_INSTALL_NEW*.

   See PeopleTools Patches Home Page, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2062712.2, for links to the most recent patches. For earlier releases, search My Oracle Support, Patches and Updates.

2. In the downloaded DPKs, locate the DPK for the PeopleTools Client for the new PeopleTools 8.58.<*new*> patch, which is the fourth zip file *(Filename*_4of4.zip)

   Copy the DPK to the Microsoft Windows Client machine.

3. To deploy the PeopleTools Client for the new 8.58.<*new*> PeopleTools patch in the Microsoft Windows Client host, use the instructions for standalone deployment described in this documentation, with the following guidelines.

   See "Deploying the PeopleTools Deployment Packages," Deploying the PeopleTools Client in Standalone Mode for detailed steps and explanations.

   a. Run `SetupPTClient.bat -t`.

   b. Answer yes when asked if you want to deploy PeopleTools client.

   c. Specify an installation directory, the RDBMS, and other information for your environment.

      The default installation directory is C:\PT<*release_number*>_Client_<*database_type*>, for example C:\PT8.58.11_Client_ORA.

d. Specify the PeopleTools Patch (2) option at this prompt:

```
Please make your selection for the Tools Client deployment:
1. People Tools Full Upgrade
2. People Tools Patch
3. None of the above
Enter your choice [1-3]: 2
```

e. Answer y (yes) when asked if you want to install Change Assistant:

```
Do you want to install Change Assistant? [Y/N]: y
```

Task A-3-4: Applying the PeopleTools Patch Using Change Assistant

Use the Change Assistant (CA) you installed in the previous section to apply the new PeopleTools 8.58.<*new*> patch database changes. In the current PeopleTools release you can apply all patch database changes for the patch by installing a single PeopleTools change package (PTP) using Change Assistant. By using this new preferred method in PeopleTools 8.58, you can avoid applying the patch manually.

The database changes for the new release patch are delivered in a change package located in the *PS_HOME*/PTP directory in the Change Assistant installation; for example, C:\PT8.58.11_Client_ORA\PTP.

Here is a brief summary of the steps required to apply the change package using the Change Assistant graphical user interface. For detailed steps and explanations, see the PeopleTools product documentation.

See *PeopleTools: Change Assistant and Update Manager,* "Using Change Assistant to Apply PeopleTools Patch."

1. Start Change Assistant from the desktop icon or program menu.
2. Configure the general options and target database definitions.
3. Select Tools, Change Actions.
4. Select Update Manager and click Next.
5. Select Apply a Patch to your Current PeopleTools Release and click Finish.
6. Review the Change Package Settings page and click Next.
7. Select the target database, or if the database has not been defined yet, use the Create button to create the database.
8. Click Next.
9. Select the Change Package for the PeopleTools patch.
10. Click Next.

    Change Assistant performs a PeopleTools patch version check. Review the messages and click Next. A warning is displayed if the selected patch is at the same or a lower level than the installed PeopleTools patch. It is not recommended to re-apply or downgrade PeopleTools patches.
11. The Apply Summary page is displayed; review the summary and click Finish.
12. Change Assistant will load the change package and run the PeopleTools patch job.

    All steps will run unattended and when the last step is complete you will receive a message that there are no more steps to run.

Alternatively, if you have configured a target environment and general options in Change Assistant, you can apply the change package via the command line. To apply the PTP on the command line, use the following command. Specify the target database name, such as HCM92U31, for <*YOUR_TARGET_DB_ENV_NAME*>, and the update ID of the change package for <*patchxxx*>.

```
Changeassistant.bat -MODE UM -ACTION PTPAPPLY -TGTENV <YOUR_TARGET_DB_ENV_⇒
NAME> -UPD <patchxx>
```

See *PeopleTools: Change Assistant and Update Manager,* "Running Change Assistant Job from the Command Line."

Task A-3-5: Deploying the New Release in Mid-tier Mode

To install the PeopleTools DPKs for the new PeopleTools 8.58.<*new*> release; for example, PeopleTools 8.58.11:

1. Go to the directory where you downloaded the PeopleTools 8.58.<*new*> DPKs for the new release, referred to here as *DPK_INSTALL_NEW*.

   See Downloading and Deploying the PeopleTools Client for the New Release.

2. Extract the first downloaded DPK zip file, for example, *Filename*_1of4.zip, in the same directory.

   The extraction creates the *DPK_INSTALL_NEW/*setup folder and other files.

3. To set up the PeopleTools server for the new PeopleTools 8.58.<*new*> patch release:

   - On Microsoft Windows, open a command prompt with Run as Administrator, go to *DPK_INSTALL_NEW/*setup and run this command:

     ```
     psft-dpk-setup.bat --env_type midtier
     ```

   - On Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, open a terminal window as root, go to *DPK_INSTALL_NEW/*setup, and run this command:

     ```
     ./psft-dpk-setup.sh --env_type midtier
     ```

4. At the following prompt, enter the full path for a new directory (that is, different from that used for the existing 8.58 installation) for the PeopleSoft base folder (referred to in this documentation as *BASE_DIR_NEW*):

   Note. When entering the path for the base folder, use forward slashes (/). For example, `C:/psft_new`. Enclose any names with special characters in double quotes. Do not use a name for the base folder that begins with a number. On Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, do not end the base directory name with a forward slash (for example, do not enter /ds1/psft/).

   Note. The script progress and validation messages are not included here. See the task Running the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPK Setup Script for Mid-tier Deployment for more details.

   ```
   The base folder is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs. It is also
   used to deploy the PeopleSoft components. This folder should be
   accessible on the Windows VM, must have write permissions and should
   have enough free space.

   Enter the PeopleSoft Base Folder: C:/psft_new
   Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]:
   ```

   The deployment sets up a new installation home directory, *PS_HOME_NEW* and installs Oracle WebLogic, Oracle Tuxedo, Oracle Client, and JDK under the specified PeopleSoft base folder, *BASE_DIR_NEW/*pt.

5. Specify the information for the database that you want to connect to.

   a. For the database platform, enter ORACLE, MSSQL (Microsoft SQL Server), or DB2ODBC (DB2 for z/OS).

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database platform [ORACLE]:
```

b. Enter *y* (yes) if the database you are connecting to is a Unicode database, or n (no) for a non-Unicode database.

```
Is the PeopleSoft database unicode? [Y|n]:
```

c. Enter the PeopleSoft database name.

If the database name includes non-alphanumeric characters such as periods, enclose the name in double quotes. For example, "HCM.92".

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database name [HCM92]:
```

d. Enter the database service name.

Note. The service name is required for Oracle RDBMS.

For the service name, enter the full name, including the domain, if the database was installed with the domain. Use forward slashes if necessary. If the service name includes non-alphanumeric characters such as periods, enclose the name in double quotes. For example, "HCM.92.example.com". Do not enter an IP address.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database service name [HCM92]:
```

e. Enter the name of the host where the database is installed, and the port number:

Use forward slashes if necessary. If the host name includes non-alphanumeric characters such as periods, enclose the name in double quotes. For example, "host.example.com". Do not enter an IP address.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database host name:
Enter the PeopleSoft database port [1521]: 1521
```

6. Enter the PeopleSoft Connect ID at the following prompt:

The default is people.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people]:
```

7. Enter a password for the PeopleSoft Connect ID, and enter again on the next line, at the following prompt.

See E-DPK - Password restrictions are not reflected in the DPK setup script prompts, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2639270.1.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people] password.
Ensure that the password meets the length and complexity requirements
for your database platform:
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID password:
```

8. Enter the PeopleSoft operator ID, such as PS or VP1.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [PS]:
```

9. Enter the password twice for the PeopleSoft operator ID, .

```
Enter a new PeopleSoft database Operator ID [PS] password.
Ensure that the password is between 1 and 32 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Operator ID password:
```

10. Enter the Application Server Domain Connection password, following the guidelines in the prompt.

The window does not display masking characters as you type. There is no default password.

Note. This is an optional password. If no password is entered, the connection between Web Server and Application Server will not be password protected.

```
[Optional] Enter a new Application Server Domain connection password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length:.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the Application Server Domain connection password:
```

11. Enter the password for the PTWEBSERVER web profile user.

```
Enter a new PeopleSoft Web Profile user [PTWEBSERVER] password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 32 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Web Profile user password:
```

12. Enter the Oracle WebLogic Server Admin password, following the guidelines in the prompt.

    The default Oracle WebLogic server administrator is system. The window does not display masking characters as you type. There is no default password.

```
Enter a new WebLogic Server Admin user [system] password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length
with at least one lowercase letter and one uppercase letter. It must⇒
 also
contain one number or one of these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the WebLogic Server Admin user password:
```

13. Enter the Integration Gateway user ID and password at the following prompt.

    The default user ID is administrator.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway user [administrator]:
Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway user [administrator] password.
Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway user password:
```

14. Enter the Integration Gateway keystore password.

    You see this prompt beginning with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.04.

    See the information on using the integrationGateway.properties file and configuring security in the Integration Broker product documentation.

    See *PeopleTools: Integration Broker Administration,* "Configuring Security and General Properties."

```
Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway Keystore password. Ensure
the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway Keystore password:
```

15. If you want to change any of the answers to the previous questions, enter *n* (no) at the following prompt, or enter *y* (yes) to continue:

```
Are you happy with your answers? [y|n]:
```

16. Answer *n* (no) to the following prompt:

```
The bootstrap script is ready to deploy and configure the PeopleSoft
environment using the default configuration defined in the Puppet
```

```
Hiera YAML files. You can proceed by answering 'y' at the following
prompt. And, if you want to customize the environment by overriding
the default configuration, you can answer 'n'. If you answer 'n', you
should follow the instructions in the PeopleSoft Installation Guide
for creating the customization Hiera YAML file and running the Puppet
'apply' command directly to continue with the setup of the PeopleSoft
environment.

Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]: ⇒
n

You have decided not to continue with the default PeopleSoft environment
setup process. Any customizations to the PeopleSoft environment should
be done in the Hiera YAML file 'psft_customizations.yaml' and place it
under [c:\psft\dpk\puppet\production\data] folder. After making the
necessary customizations, run the following script to continue with
the setup of PeopleSoft environment.

Start a cmd window as Administrator and run C:\psft\psft_puppet_⇒
apply.cmd

Exiting the PeopleSoft environment setup process.
```

The script stops.

17. Complete the instructions in the next section to prepare the psft_customizations.yaml file and complete the initialization.

See Also

"Deploying the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Deployment Packages," Running the DPK Setup Script for Mid-Tier Deployment.

Task A-3-6: Preparing psft_customizations.yaml and Completing the Deployment

Carry out these steps from the PeopleTools 8.58.<*new*> environment, installed in the previous section (for example, 8.58.11). Create or edit a psft_customizations.yaml file, and complete the initialization using the psft_puppet_apply script.

See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations."

The documentation lists several types of customizations you can use for your environment. For this scenario, it is important that you include the following in the psft_customizations.yaml file:

- Location for an existing *PS_APP_HOME* (if you have one) to be associated with the *PS_HOME*.
- Existing installation locations for one or more of the components that you want to retain; that is, Oracle WebLogic, Oracle Tuxedo or Oracle Database client.

Here is a sample psft_customizations.yaml file that specifies the location for Oracle WebLogic and Oracle Tuxedo, so that these components will be retained and not redeployed. Since the Oracle Database client and JDK are not specified, they will be deployed fresh.

This customization also specifies an existing *PS_APP_HOME* location which will be associated to *PS_HOME* during the deployment process.

Note. Be sure to retain the spacing and indentation as shown in this sample.

```
---
weblogic_location: C:/MyCurrentWeblogicLocation/weblogic
weblogic:
  location: C:/MyCurrentWeblogicLocation/weblogic

tuxedo_location: C:/MyCurrentTuxedoLocation/weblogic/tuxedo
tuxedo:
  location: C:/MyCurrentTuxedoLocation/weblogic/tuxedo

ps_apphome_location: c:/MyCurrentAppHomeLocation/fscm_app_home
ps_app_home:
  db_type: "%{hiera('db_platform')}"
  location: "%{hiera('ps_apphome_location')}"
```

Complete the initialization using the psft_puppet_apply script as described in the documentation.

See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations."

Task A-3-7: Reviewing the Results

After completing the steps above:

- One or more of the Oracle WebLogic, Oracle Tuxedo, and the Oracle Client installations from the initial environment have been retained, as specified by the psft_customizations.yaml file.
- The Application Server, Process Scheduler, and PIA domains have been configured.
- There is new *PS_HOME_NEW* installation in the same location as the initial *PS_HOME_INIT*.

After applying the PeopleTools patch, review the patch's readme.txt for any manual configuration instructions that may be needed for your particular environment.

Task A-3-8: Verifying the Patch Application

Your host should have initialized successfully and started participating in your PeopleSoft environment. Many of the steps that you should take to verify this or diagnose problems will be the same for Microsoft Windows, Linux, AIX, HP-UX, and Solaris hosts.

1. Verify that you can sign in to PeopleSoft.

   Start a browser and sign on to the PeopleSoft Application with the URL http://<*hostname*>:<*pia_http_port*>/ps/signon.html.
2. If you do not see the log in page, verify that the environment can be reached from your machine using a utility such as ping.
3. If your host can be pinged, verify that the PIA domain is running in the following step.
4. Verify that Application Server, Process Scheduler and PIA domains have started:
   a. On Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, using an SSH client, log in as the psadm2 user.

      On Microsoft Windows, open a command prompt with Run as Administrator.
   b. Start the psadmin utility by typing `psadmin` at the command prompt.

When logged in as the psadm2 user the environment variables for PeopleSoft administration are set as part of the psadm2 user's log-in profile.

c. Use the PSADMIN menus for the Application Server, Process Scheduler, and Web server (PIA) to verify the status of each of the installed components.

d. If one or more of the components has not started, examine the log files for the required PeopleSoft component to establish what has caused the component to not start.

The log files are in the default locations for each of the PeopleSoft components.

5. To verify the *PS_APP_HOME* location, check the value of the PS_APP_HOME environment variable.

On Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, the environment variable is found in the .profile file for the psadm2 user. Use the following command on Linux, AIX, or Solaris to check the environment variable:

```
export PS_APP_HOME=/home/fscm_app_home
```

On Microsoft Windows, open the System Properties dialog box and click Environment Variables.

6. You can review the psprcs.cfg file to verify that the SQR section includes a path for PS_APP_HOME.

```
[SQR]
;=============================================================================⇒
==
; Settings for SQR Software
;=============================================================================⇒
==
SQRBIN=%PS_HOME%/bin/sqr/ORA/bin
PSSQRFLAGS=-ZIF%PS_HOME%/sqr/pssqr%LANGUAGECD%.unx
Print Log=N
Enhanced HTML=N
PSSQR=%PS_APP_HOME%/sqr:%PS_HOME%/sqr
```

See *PeopleTools: Process Scheduler,* "Using the PSADMIN for the Process Scheduler Configuration File."

Appendix B

Performing a PeopleTools-Only Upgrade Using the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs

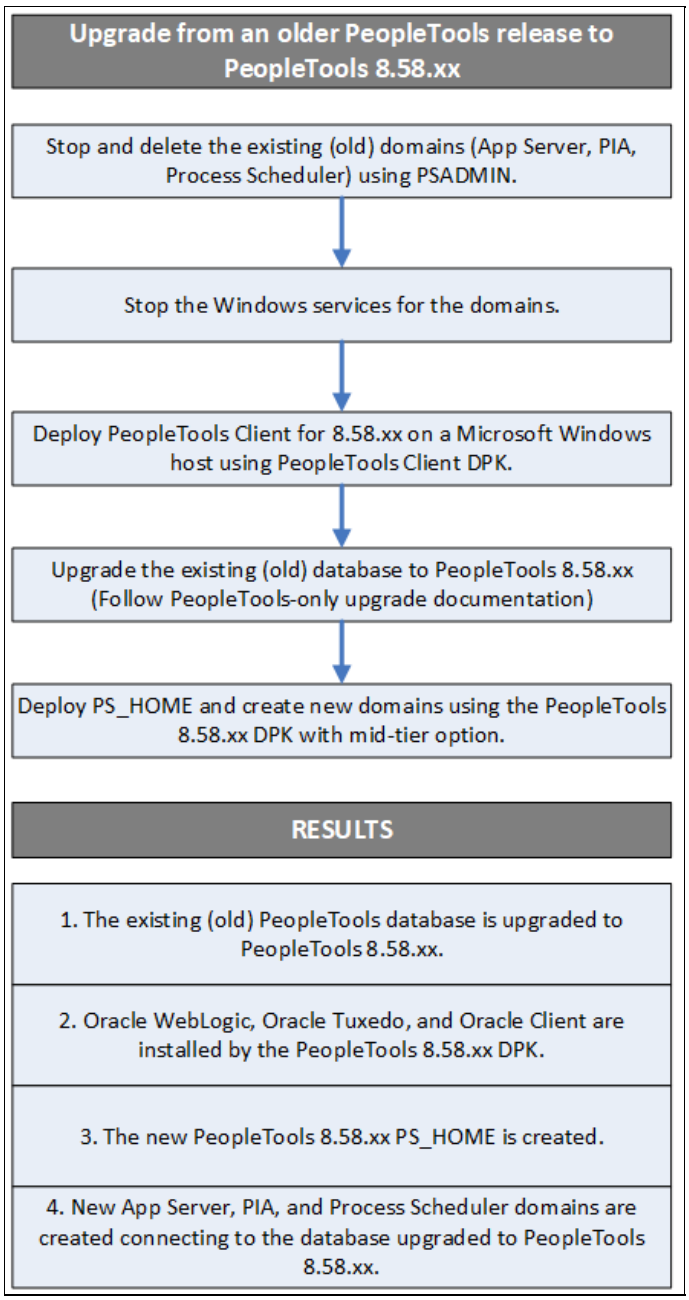
This appendix discusses:

- Understanding the PeopleTools-Only Upgrade Using the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs
- Performing the PeopleTools-Only Upgrade Using DPKs
- Reviewing the Results of the PeopleTools-Only Upgrade Using DPKs

Understanding the PeopleTools-Only Upgrade Using the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs

Use these steps to perform a PeopleTools-only upgrade to PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.xx, using the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Deployment Packages (DPKs). The PeopleTools Client DPK is used first to deploy the PeopleTools Client, which includes the installation of Change Assistant. Subsequently, the PeopleTools DPKs are used to install mid-tier components and the *PS_HOME* for the new release.

This diagram summarizes the scenario for performing a PeopleTools-only upgrade to PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58.xx using DPKs:



PeopleTools-only upgrade using DPKs

This scenario assumes that:

- You want to upgrade to PeopleTools 8.58.xx.
- Your operating system is AIX, Linux, HP-UX, Microsoft Windows or Solaris.

Task B-1: Performing the PeopleTools-Only Upgrade Using DPKs

To use the DPKs to perform a PeopleTools-only upgrade:

1. Stop and delete the domains for the existing (old) release.

   Stop and delete the existing Application Server, PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture (PIA), and Process Scheduler domains for the old release using the PSADMIN utility.

   See *PeopleTools System and Server Administration*, "Using PSADMIN Command-Line Interface."

2. On Microsoft Windows, stop the services for the domains, as follows:
   a. Open the Services dialog box, for example by clicking Start and selecting Administrative Tools, Services.
   b. Right-click the PsftAppServerDomain<Appserver_domain_name>Service and select Stop.
   c. Right-click the PsftPrcsDomain<ProcSched_domain_name>Service and select Stop.
   d. Right-click the PsftPIADomain<PIA_domain_name>Service and select Stop.
   e. Select File, Exit, to close the dialog box.
3. Deploy PeopleTools Client for 8.58.xx on Microsoft Windows host using the PeopleTools Client DPK, as follows.
   a. Download the PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58 DPK from My Oracle Support.

      Go to the PeopleTools Patches Home Page, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2062712.2, and locate the link for the PeopleTools DPKs for the new release. The fourth zip file (for example, PEOPLETOOLS-WIN-8.58.xx_4of4.zip) includes the DPK for the PeopleTools Windows Client.

   b. Install the PeopleTools 8.58.xx client using the fourth DPK zip file (PeopleTools Client DPK).

      See "Deploying the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Deployment Packages," Deploying the PeopleTools Client DPK.

      Note. The PeopleTools-only Upgrade change package is delivered with the PeopleTools Windows Client DPK and the PeopleTools server DPKs.

      ---

   c. During the deployment, select these options:

      Choose "PeopleTools Full Upgrade."

      Choose the option to install Change Assistant.
4. Upgrade the PeopleTools database running on the existing (old) release.
   a. Configure the database setup in Change Assistant for the database that needs to be upgraded.

      See *PeopleTools Change Assistant and Update Manager*, "Using Change Assistant to Upgrade PeopleTools."

      See the upgrade document *Getting Started on Your PeopleTools Upgrade* for your new PeopleTools release on the PeopleTools 8.58 Upgrade Home Page.

   b. Follow the PeopleTools-only upgrade instructions for upgrading the database to the new PeopleTools release.

      See the PeopleTools Upgrade Documentation for your new PeopleTools release on the PeopleTools 8.58 Upgrade Home Page.
5. Deploy *PS_HOME* and create new domains using the PeopleTools 8.58.xx DPK with mid-tier option.

   Perform this step if you did not already do it as directed in the PeopleTools upgrade documentation.

   For this upgrade process, it is required that you use the component software that is installed by the PeopleTools DPK for Oracle Tuxedo, Oracle WebLogic, and Oracle Database Client. Do not use existing installations of Oracle Tuxedo, Oracle WebLogic, and Oracle Database Client.

Note. If the server where you plan to deploy *PS_HOME* and mid-tier components is a Microsoft Windows OS, uninstall any existing Oracle Tuxedo installations on the server.

To install the new release *PS_HOME* and create new domains connecting to the database upgraded to PeopleTools 8.58.xx, run the DPK setup script with these options:

- Specify a new PeopleSoft base folder (referred to as *BASE_DIR* in the documentation). This will set up a new *PS_HOME* for the new PeopleTools release as <*BASE_DIR*>/pt/ps_home<*patch_release*>.
- Use these script options to deploy PS_HOME and create new domains:

  Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris: `./psft-dpk-setup.sh --env_type midtier`

  Microsoft Windows: `psft-dpk-setup.bat --env_type midtier`

Task B-2: Reviewing the Results of the PeopleTools-Only Upgrade Using DPKs

After you complete the steps above:

- The PeopleTools database is upgraded to 8.58.xx.
- The Oracle WebLogic, Oracle Tuxedo, and Oracle Client from the PeopleTools 8.58.xx are installed.
- The *PS_HOME* from the old (existing) PeopleTools release remains as is.
- The new PeopleTools 8.58.xx *PS_HOME* is created.
- New Application Server, PIA, and Process Scheduler domains are created connecting to the database upgraded to PeopleTools 8.58.xx.

Appendix C

Installing PeopleSoft Change Assistant

This appendix discusses:

- Understanding PeopleSoft Change Assistant
- Using the Change Assistant Setup Script to Install, Upgrade, or Uninstall
- Configuring and Using PeopleSoft Change Assistant
- Validating Change Assistant Settings

Understanding PeopleSoft Change Assistant

Oracle's PeopleSoft Change Assistant is a standalone tool, provided with PeopleSoft PeopleTools, that enables you to assemble and organize the steps necessary to apply patches and fixes for maintenance updates as well as perform PeopleSoft upgrades. You use different modes of Change Assistant to carry out maintenance both for PeopleSoft applications using the PeopleSoft Update Manager, and those using the classic patching method.

To take advantage of all of the Change Assistant features, you must install on a Microsoft Windows-based operating system. On Linux, you can use a command-line version of Change Assistant, and run in Update Manager mode only.

When you run the setup script for the PeopleTools Client DPK, you can choose to install Change Assistant as part of the client installation. If you need to install, upgrade, or remove Change Assistant independently of the PeopleTools Client DPK deployment, use the instructions in this chapter.

See "Deploying the PeopleTools Client DPK."

For the current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release, the Change Assistant installation includes the following features:

- You can run the setup.bat script located in *PS_HOME*\setup\PsCA to install, update, or remove Change Assistant.

  The *PS_HOME*/setup/PsCA directory includes setup.bat and a sample response file, resp_file.txt. The *PS_HOME*/setup/PsCA folder is available in both the PeopleTools Client DPK deployment and PeopleTools DPK server deployments.

  Note. The *PS_HOME*\setup\PsCA directory includes scripts and files that are reserved for use by the software. You can ignore these files, including silentInstall.bat and CA-silentInstall-response-file.txt.

- You must run from *PS_HOME*/setup/PsCA.

  Do not copy the PsCA folder alone to another location and try to install.

- You can specify the installation location on the command line, in response to the script prompts, or in a text file.

  If you do not supply the installation location, the script prompts you for the necessary information. To upgrade or remove an existing installation, you run the script with no options, and the script prompts you for the necessary information.

- You can install multiple instances of Change Assistant from the current release on one physical machine.

  Note. Multiple instances of Change Assistant can run in parallel on the same machine. However, when configuring Change Assistant, for example to set up update or upgrade jobs, you cannot run multiple instances against the same target database. That is, you cannot specify the same target database on different Change Assistant instances.

  See *PeopleTools: Change Assistant and Update Manager,* "Running Multiple Instances of Change Assistant."

- You must remove installations of Change Assistant from PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.55 or earlier before installing from the current release. Change Assistant from PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58 cannot coexist with that from earlier releases.
- You must install each Change Assistant instance in a separate installation location.
- You can remove or upgrade each Change Assistant instance separately.
- When you remove an installation instance, you have the option to save the existing configuration information in a group of files gathered in a zip archive. You can configure Change Assistant at a later time by importing the zip file.

For more information on using Change Assistant for updates and for software upgrades, see the PeopleSoft product documentation.

See Also

PeopleTools: Change Assistant and Update Manager

PeopleTools: Application Designer Lifecycle Management Guide

Task C-1: Using the Change Assistant Setup Script to Install, Upgrade, or Uninstall

This section discusses:

- Running the Change Assistant Setup Script with Command-Line Parameters
- Running the Change Assistant Setup Script with a Response File
- Running the Change Assistant Setup Script Interactively to Install
- Running the Change Assistant Setup Script Interactively to Upgrade
- Running the Change Assistant Setup Script Interactively to Uninstall
- Using Change Assistant on Linux

Task C-1-1: Running the Change Assistant Setup Script with Command-Line Parameters

You can use the following command-line parameters with the Change Assistant setup script.

Command-line Parameter	Description
`-p <installation_path>`	Supply the full path for the Change Assistant installation location. If the location includes spaces, surround it with double quotes, such as "C:\PS\Change Assistant".
`-t <action_type>`	Use one of the following value for <action_type>. • NEW or new Create a new Change Assistant instance. • UPGRADE or upgrade Upgrade an existing instance that was installed from the current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release. • UNINSTALL or uninstall Remove an existing Change Assistant instance.
`-bkp <backup or no backup>`	Use one of these values: • BACKUP or backup Create a zip file containing files with configuration information. The backup file, changeassistantcfgbak.zip, is saved in the installation location. • NOBACKUP or nobackup Do not create a backup file with the configuration information.
`-lp <log_file_location>`	Specify the full path where you want the log file to be saved.

To use the Change Assistant setup script with command-line options:

1. Open a command prompt and change directory to *PS_HOME*\setup\PsCA.
2. Enter the following command to specify the installation location for a new installation.

   For <installation_path>, supply the full path to the location where you want to install Change Assistant.

   ```
   setup.bat -p <installation_path> -t new
   ```

   For example:

   ```
   setup.bat -p "C:\PS\Change Assistant" -t new
   ```

3. If you want to specify the installation location and a location for the log file, enter the following command.

   For <installation_path>, supply the full path to the location where you want to install Change Assistant. For <log_file_location>, supply the full path to the location for the installation log file.

   ```
   setup.bat -p <installation_path> -lp <log_file_location> -t new
   ```

4. If you want to upgrade an existing installation, enter the following command:

   ```
   setup.bat -t upgrade
   ```

5. If you want to remove an existing installation, and save a backup, enter the following command:

   ```
   setup.bat -t uninstall -bkp backup
   ```

See Also

Using Change Assistant on Linux

Task C-1-2: Running the Change Assistant Setup Script with a Response File

To use the Change Assistant setup script with the installation location in a text file:

1. Open the sample response file *PS_HOME*\setup\PsCA\resp_file.txt for editing, for example in Notepad.
2. Modify the parameter `INSTALL_PATH="C:\PS\Change Assistant"` to specify the desired installation path.

   If the installation location includes spaces, enclose it in double quotes. Save the file.
3. Open a command prompt and change directory to *PS_HOME*\setup\PsCA.
4. Run this command:

   ```
   setup.bat -f resp_file.txt
   ```

Task C-1-3: Running the Change Assistant Setup Script Interactively to Install

To use the Change Assistant setup script interactively, run without supplying parameters.

1. Open a command prompt and change directory to *PS_HOME*\setup\PsCA.
2. Run the script with no parameters.

   ```
   setup.bat
   ```

   The script checks for a response file and old installations, then prompts you for the necessary information.
3. Enter *1* for New Installation:

   ```
   ------------------------------
   PeopleSoft Change Assistant
   ------------------------------
     1) New Installation
     2) Maintain or Update
     q) Quit
   Command to execute (1-2, q):1
   ```

4. Enter an installation location, or accept the default, C:\PS\Change Assistant.

   ```
   PeopleSoft will install Change Assistant to the following directory .
   Destination Folder [C:\PS\Change Assistant] :
   ```

5. Wait until the script completes.

```
PeopleSoft Change Assistant Successfully Installed in  C:\PS\Change⇒
 Assistant
```

Task C-1-4: Running the Change Assistant Setup Script Interactively to Upgrade

Run the setup script with no parameters to upgrade an existing Change Assistant installation. You can only upgrade an existing Change Assistant instance that was installed from the same, current PeopleTools release. For example, upgrade Change Assistant based on PeopleTools 8.58.09 to Change Assistant based on PeopleTools 8.58.12.

1. Open a command prompt, and change directory to *PS_HOME*\setup\PsCA.
2. Run the script with no parameters:

   ```
   setup.bat
   ```

3. Enter *2* for Maintain or Update.

   ```
   --------------------------------
   PeopleSoft Change Assistant
   --------------------------------
     1) New Installation
     2) Maintain or Update
     q) Quit
   Command to execute (1-2, q):2
   ```

4. Select the instance of Change Assistant to update.

   ```
   Please select the instance of Change Assistant :
   1) Change Assistant  1 8.58.03 C:\Program Files\Change Assistant 2
   2) Change Assistant  2 8.58.04 C:\Program Files\PeopleSoft\Change⇒
    Assistant
   3) Change Assistant  3 8.58.09 C:\PS\Change Assistant

   q)Quit
   Command to execute (1-3, q): 3
   Selected
   Change Assistant  3 8.58.09 C:\PS\Change Assistant
   ```

5. Enter *1* to update to the current PeopleTools patch release.

   ```
   Please select the activity :
   1) Upgrade Selected Instance
   2) Uninstall Selected Instance
   q)Quit
   Command to execute (1-3, q):1
   Selected
   Change Assistant  3 8.58.09 C:\PS\Change Assistant
   ```

6. Enter 1 to upgrade without saving a configuration file.

   Alternatively, if you want to retain a configuration file, enter 2 to create a zip file containing files with configuration information. The backup file, changeassistantcfgbak.zip, is saved in the installation location.

   ```
   Please select the activity :
   1)Without Retaining existing configuration
   ```

```
2)Retaining existing configuration
q)Quit
Command to execute (1-3, q):1
```

Task C-1-5: Running the Change Assistant Setup Script Interactively to Uninstall

Run the setup script with no parameters to remove an existing Change Assistant installation.

1. Open a command prompt, and change directory to *PS_HOME*\setup\PsCA.
2. Run the script with no parameters:

   ```
   setup.bat
   ```

3. Enter *2* for Maintain or Update.

   ```
   -------------------------------
   PeopleSoft Change Assistant
   -------------------------------
     1) New Installation
     2) Maintain or Update
     q) Quit
   Command to execute (1-2, q):2
   ```

4. Select the instance of Change Assistant to remove.

   ```
   Please select the instance of Change Assistant :
   1) Change Assistant  1 8.58.03 C:\Program Files\Change Assistant 2
   2) Change Assistant  2 8.58.04 C:\Program Files\PeopleSoft\Change⇒
    Assistant
   3) Change Assistant  3 8.58.12 C:\PS\Change Assistant

   q)Quit
   Command to execute (1-3, q): 2
   Selected
   Change Assistant  3 8.58.04 C:\PS\Change Assistant
   ```

5. Enter *2* to remove the selected instance.

   ```
   Please select the activity :
   1) Upgrade Selected Instance
   2) Uninstall Selected Instance
   q)Quit
   Command to execute (1-3, q):2
   Selected
   Change Assistant  3 8.58.04 C:\PS\Change Assistant
   ```

6. Enter *1* to uninstall without saving a configuration file.

   Alternatively, if you want to retain a configuration file, enter *2* to create a zip file containing files with configuration information. The backup file, changeassistantcfgbak.zip, is saved in the installation location.

   ```
   Please select the activity :
   1)Without Retaining existing configuration
   2)Retaining existing configuration
   q)Quit
   ```

```
Command to execute (1-3, q):1
```

Task C-1-6: Using Change Assistant on Linux

You can use a command-line version of Change Assistant on Linux for Update Manager mode only. Change Assistant on Linux can not be used for target databases that are below PeopleTools 8.55.16.

To install Change Assistant on Linux:

1. In a terminal window, change directory to *PS_HOME*/setup/PsCA.
2. Verify that you are running as a user with permission for the files in PsCA.

   For example, if your installation includes the default Linux users set up by the DPK, run as the psadm1 user.

   See Using the PeopleSoft Installation.
3. Run the setup script and specify the installation directory.

   ```
   $ ./setup.sh -p /ds1/changeassistant -t new
   ```
4. Go to the installation directory, and run Change Assistant in Update Manager mode using the command-line options in the Change Assistant product documentation.

   See *PeopleTools: Change Assistant and Update Manager*, "Running Change Assistant Job from the Command Line."

Task C-2: Configuring and Using PeopleSoft Change Assistant

This section discusses:

- Verifying the Path Variable
- Specifying Options
- Scanning the Workstation
- Exporting Jobs to XML, HTML, or Microsoft Excel Format

Task C-2-1: Verifying the Path Variable

After installing PeopleSoft Change Assistant, verify that the following values are the first entries in the PATH environment variable:

- *PS_HOME*\bin\client\winx86
- *PS_HOME*\jre\bin

See *PeopleTools: Change Assistant and Update Manager,* "Setting Up Change Assistant."

Task C-2-2: Specifying Options

You can configure PeopleSoft Change Assistant modes to carry out updates, upgrades, work with upgrade templates, or access PeopleSoft Update Manager. The mode selection determines which menu options you see when you use PeopleSoft Change Assistant.

See Also

PeopleTools: Change Assistant and Update Manager

PeopleSoft Update Manager Home Page, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 1641843.2

Task C-2-3: Scanning the Workstation

The first time you use PeopleSoft Change Assistant, it automatically scans your workstation for applications that it will use in order to automate the steps. For example, it automatically finds the SQL Query tool and uses it to run SQL commands or scripts.

If you add a new application or update an existing application, PeopleSoft Change Assistant must perform a scan of the system in order to discover the changes. To perform this scan, select Tools, Scan Configuration.

Task C-2-4: Exporting Jobs to XML, HTML, or Microsoft Excel Format

Change Assistant allows users to export jobs to XML, HTML, or Microsoft Excel file formats. Do this by selecting File, Export Job in Change Assistant. Then, enter the desired exported filename and select the desired file type format.

Task C-3: Validating Change Assistant Settings

After you have set up and configured PeopleSoft Change Assistant and the Environment Management components, you should validate your PeopleSoft Change Assistant and environment settings.

PeopleSoft Change Assistant validates settings by:

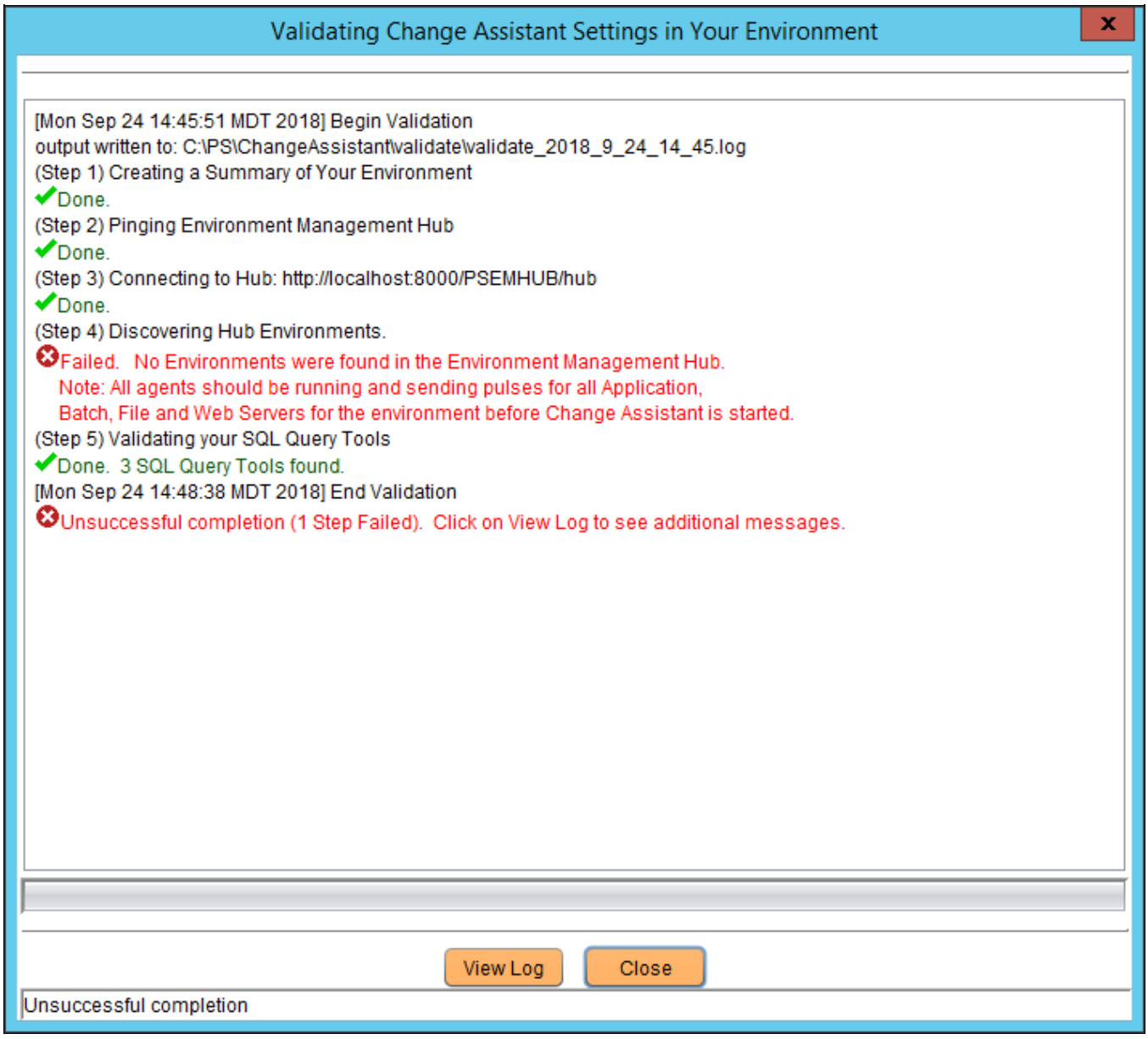
- Locating valid SQL query tools required to run SQL scripts.
- Testing the Environment Management hub and ensuring that PeopleSoft Change Assistant can communicate with it.
- Testing My Oracle Support and ensuring that PeopleSoft Change Assistant can communicate with it.

  PeopleSoft Change Assistant sends a ping to My Oracle Support and then tests the connection. In order for the validation to succeed, the machine where you have PeopleSoft Change Assistant installed must have the ping feature enabled.

You can also print a summary of your environment, which can facilitate the diagnosis of problems by Oracle Software Support.

To validate your environment, select Tools, Options, Validate. Click Start Validation.

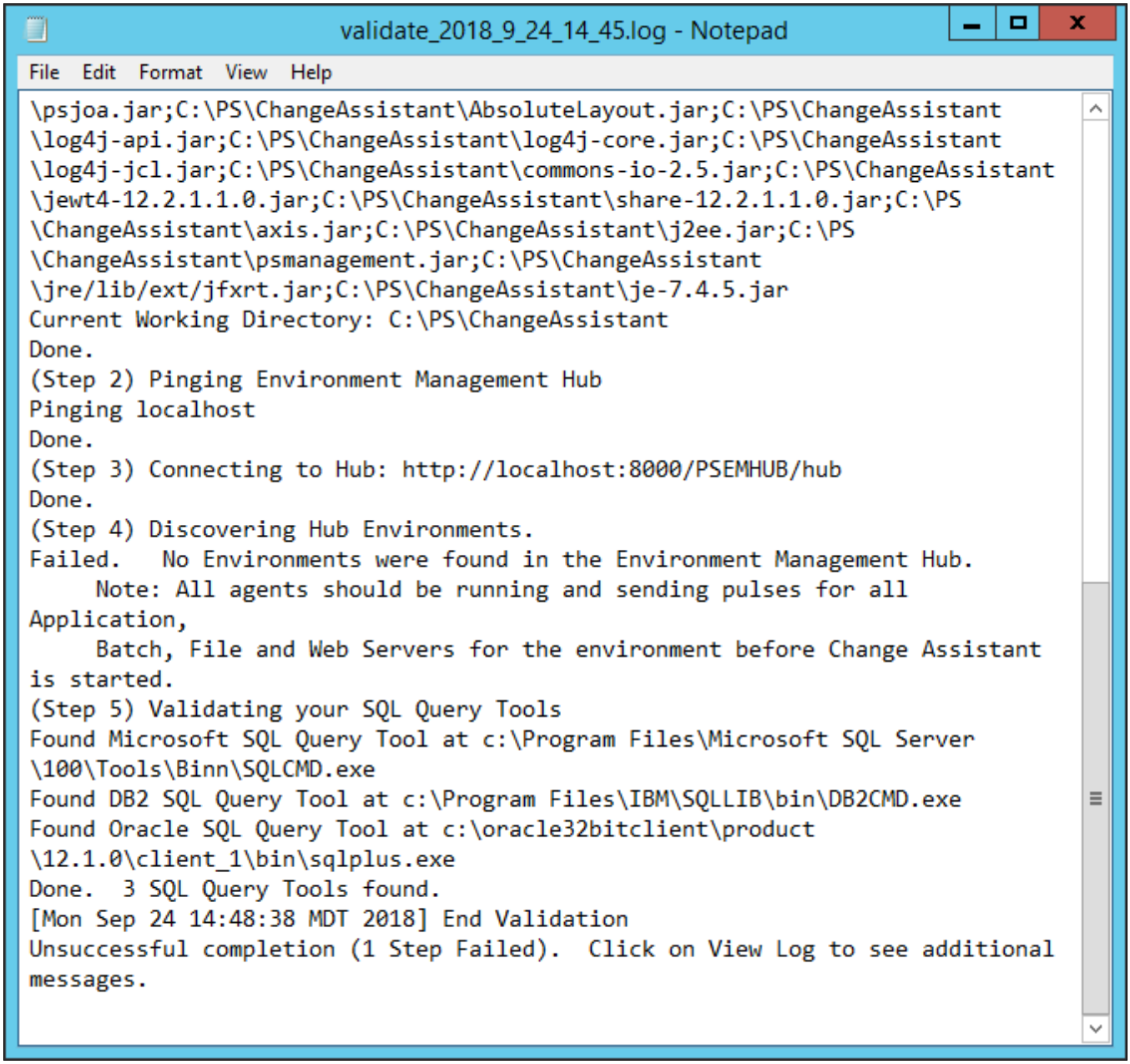
If any of the steps were unable to complete successfully, open the log file to determine the cause. This example shows a summary with both successful messages ("Done") and unsuccessful ("Failed" or "Unsuccessful completion"):



Validating Change Assistant Settings in Your Environment

Note. If you use proxy servers, the system will ping those and prompt for proxy server user ID and password. In this case, the validation step numbers would be different from the example.

To review the log file, click the View Log button at the bottom of the screen. This example shows the first several lines of a log file:



Change Assistant Validation log

Appendix D

Encrypting Passwords for Customizations on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris

Task D-1: Encrypting Passwords for Customization Files on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris

This section describes how to produce an encrypted version of a clear text password and include it in the psft_customizations.yaml file for a customized deployment for non-default users and groups on Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris. This section applies to installations with the Native OS for Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris DPKs.

Note. You can skip this section if you are creating psft_customizations.yaml files for silent mode installations. Use clear text passwords with silent mode installations.

In general, when you run the DPK setup script, you supply several user IDs and passwords, such as the Connect ID password and operator ID password. The script encrypts the passwords that you supply and includes them in the generated YAML files in *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data. When you create a psft_customizations.yaml file, you can copy these encrypted passwords from the generated YAML files and include them in the psft_customizations.yaml file. However, the passwords for the Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris users are not prompted for, and therefore the encrypted passwords are not available in any of the generated YAML files.

Note that the successful use of the encrypted password depends on the presence of the public and private keys in the *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet directory referred to in the eyaml encrypt command. You cannot save an encrypted password and use it with a deployment with an installation with a different *BASE_DIR*

This procedure assumes that you have carried out the first portion of a customized deployment, and stopped at the question "Do you want to continue with the default initialization?"

See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations," Preparing the Customization Files for Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris Users and Groups.

To encrypt a password:

1. Open the *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/hiera.yaml file and note the full path to the public and private keys:

   ```
   :pkcs7_private_key: BASE_DIR/dpk/puppet/secure/keys/private_⇒
   key.pkcs7.pem
   :pkcs7_public_key:  BASE_DIR/dpk/puppet/secure/keys/public_key.pkcs7.pem
   ```

2. Run the following command in a terminal window, supplying the paths from the previous step:

   ```
   eyaml encrypt -s "<clear_password>" --pkcs7-private-key=<private_key_⇒
   location> --pkcs7-public-key=<public_key_location> --output=string
   ```

Note. The double-quotes around the password are required. Be sure to use the correct punctuation for the command. Note that the command uses different punctuation for the keys than the hiera.yaml file.

Note. If your password includes an exclamation mark (!) you must enclose the entire password in double quotes surrounded by single quotes. For example, `'"passw!ord"'`.

Example for Linux:

```
/opt/puppetlabs/puppet/bin/eyaml encrypt -s "password" --pkcs7-private-⇒
key=/cs1/psft/dpk/puppet/secure/keys/private_key.pkcs7.pem --pkcs7-⇒
public-key=/cs1/psft/dpk/puppet/secure/keys/public_key.pkcs7.pem --⇒
output=string
```

Example for AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris:

```
/opt/oracle/puppetlabs/bin/eyaml encrypt -s "password" --pkcs7-private-⇒
key=/cs1/psft/dpk/puppet/secure/keys/private_key.pkcs7.pem --pkcs7-⇒
public-key=/cs1/psft/dpk/puppet/secure/keys/public_key.pkcs7.pem --⇒
output=string
```

3. Copy the encrypted password from the output in the terminal window.

   The encrypted text will be a long single line of letters and numbers. Be sure to copy the text in one unbroken line, with no spaces or line feeds. Here is a truncated representation of an encrypted password:

   ```
   ENC[PKCS7,MIIBeQYJKoZIhvc...................]
   ```

4. Paste the encrypted password in the psft_customizations.yaml file, replacing the text password.

   Again, the encrypted text must be a single line. Also, be sure to retain the indentation in the psft_customizations.yaml file. This is a sample psft_customizations.yaml for a new single user and existing single group:

   ```
   ---
   psft_runtime_user_name: newusr3

   users:
     psft_user:
       name: newusr3
       gid: 35000
       home_dir: /dpk_base/home/userhome
       password: ENC[PKCS7,MIIBeQYJKoZIhvc...................]
       remove: false
   ```

5. Use the psft_customizations.yaml file for deployment with the psft_puppet_apply script.

   The DPK deployment will automatically decrypt the password from the psft_customizations.yaml and use it for deployment.

Appendix E

Learning About the PeopleSoft Deployment Process

This appendix discusses:

- Understanding the PeopleSoft Deployment Framework
- Understanding PeopleSoft Components
- Understanding Puppet and the PeopleSoft Puppet Modules
- Understanding the Deployment Packages Uses and Contents
- Reviewing the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Patch DPKs
- Reviewing the PeopleTools Client DPK

Understanding the PeopleSoft Deployment Framework

Oracle recommends that you use the PeopleSoft Deployment Packages (DPKs) to install and configure your PeopleSoft environment. DPKs offer out-of-the-box functionality that greatly enhances the installation and configuration of your PeopleSoft environment, which is not available with the standard VCD installation.

DPKs allow fast deployment of a PeopleSoft environment on any hardware platform — physical hardware ("bare metal") or virtual. The DPKs allow you to skip the manual steps associated with the following:

- Gathering the necessary installation programs
- Installing third-party products such as Oracle Tuxedo and WebLogic and the latest patches (CPUs)
- Installing Application Home (PS_APP_HOME) (for PI DPKs)
- Installing both PeopleTools and the PeopleTools patch binaries
- Configuring the PeopleSoft domains

The DPKs can be installed on Oracle Linux and Red Hat Enterprise Linux, and on Microsoft Windows platforms supported by Oracle for PeopleSoft systems.

The DPKs include a setup script that deploys a default instance of each of the PeopleSoft mid-tier domains—PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture (PIA), Application Server and Process Scheduler domains. These domains are fully functional out-of-the-box. However, it is assumed that you will need to make changes to these deployments. These changes will be required to reflect your organizational standards, preferences, and customizations. DPKs set up your infrastructure for you—"infrastructure as a code," which allows you to customize the environments to produce various topologies to serve different functionality, such as test environments, environments for performance testing or development environments, and so on. Notably, these customizations can be retained across maintenance application (upgrades, patches, and updates).

The best practice for environments deployed with the DPKs is to modify the environments using the methods provided by the PeopleSoft customizations. With the delivered customization method you have the ability to safely modify a wide variety of installation locations, integration definitions, and other configuration settings, while at the same time ensuring that the customizations are retained after applying software patches.

See Understanding Puppet and the PeopleSoft Modules

See the sections on customizing a PeopleSoft environment in the chapters on deploying the DPKs.

Using DPKs to create a PeopleTools middle-tier environment (Application Server, Process Scheduler, and PIA) typically takes less than 15 minutes. This allows for dynamic scaling and quick patching. With such fast creation of the middle-tier components, you can optimize hardware resources by creating middle-tier virtual machines (VMs) on demand. These VMs can be removed to release the resources when not in use, yet be quickly recreated as needed.

DPKs are integrated with PeopleSoft Automated Configuration Management (ACM) to provide PeopleSoft application configuration using plug-ins delivered by the PeopleSoft Application. For example, for all deployed environments, the Integration Broker and Gateway are set with ACM plug-ins.

DPKs allow for fast environment cloning. After creating an environment clone, you can use PeopleSoft ACM plug-ins to modify the configuration settings, such as those for Integration Broker, from those used in the original environment, to those required for the cloned environment, during the deployment of the middle-tier using PeopleTools DPK. DPKs can be used, to easily and effectively, create a fresh clone from your existing environments. Using database snap cloning, an environment clone can be achieved in less than 30 minutes.

Understanding PeopleSoft Components

Here are brief descriptions of some of the terms referenced in this documentation for components included in a PeopleSoft environment. The components included for each deployment depend upon the types of DPKs downloaded and method used to deploy them. PeopleSoft components, including PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture (PIA), application server and Process Scheduler, are described in the PeopleSoft PeopleTools product documentation.

See the PeopleTools System and Server Administration product documentation for an explanation of PeopleSoft architecture fundamentals.

- PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture (PIA)

  This is the Web Server component of the PeopleSoft system.

- Application server and Process Scheduler

  The application server acts as the business logic engine of the PeopleSoft system. The Process Scheduler is responsible for processing scheduled tasks or jobs that typically do not happen during the course of a user's browser request.

- PeopleSoft application database

  This document uses the term "PeopleSoft applications" to refer to Oracle PeopleSoft products such as PeopleSoft Customer Relationship Management (CRM), PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management (ELM), PeopleSoft Financials and Supply Chain Management (FSCM), PeopleSoft Human Capital Management (HCM), and PeopleSoft Interaction Hub.

- Mid-tier components

  This documentation uses the term "mid-tier" to refer to PeopleSoft Application Server, Process Scheduler, and PIA, and the software required to deploy them, including Oracle Tuxedo and Oracle WebLogic.

- AppBatch components

  This documentation uses the term "AppBatch" to refer to the Application Server and Process Scheduler server.

Understanding Puppet and the PeopleSoft Puppet Modules

This section discusses:

- Understanding Puppet
- Understanding Hiera
- Understanding Puppet Modules
- Understanding How the PeopleSoft DPKs Use Puppet
- Understanding PeopleSoft Puppet Component Modules
- Understanding PeopleSoft Puppet Profiles and Roles Modules
- Understanding Puppet Third-Party Modules

Understanding Puppet

The DPKs are delivered with the PeopleSoft Puppet modules, which are initialization and management scripts based upon the open-source Puppet software. The PeopleSoft Puppet modules can be used to customize and control the PeopleSoft environments deployed from the DPKs. This section includes a brief introduction to Puppet. For detailed information, see the documentation on the Puppet Labs Web site.

See Puppet Labs Documentation, http://docs.puppetlabs.com.

Puppet is a tool designed to manage the configuration of UNIX-like and Microsoft Windows systems declaratively. The user describes system resources and their state, either using Puppet's declarative language or a Ruby DSL (domain-specific language). This information is stored in files called "Puppet manifests." Puppet discovers the system information and compiles the Puppet manifests into a system-specific catalog containing resources and resource dependency, which are applied against the target systems. Any actions taken by Puppet are then reported. Puppet consists of a custom declarative language to describe system configuration, which can be either applied directly on the system, or compiled into a catalog and distributed to the target system with a client–server paradigm (using a REST API), and the agent uses system-specific providers to enforce the resource specified in the manifests. The resource abstraction layer enables administrators to describe the configuration in high-level terms, such as users, services, and packages without the need to specify OS specific commands (such as rpm, yum, or apt).

Puppet has been chosen by Oracle as a solution for provisioning PeopleSoft environments for the following reasons:

- Community

  Puppet has a significant presence in the configuration management marketplace and a strong user community. This community contributes to improving and testing Puppet core functionality.

- Open source and Enterprise solutions

  Puppet Open Source is sufficiently rich in features to meet the requirements of Oracle for orchestrating the provisioning of large numbers of PeopleSoft environments in a fully automated fashion.

- Lightweight

  Puppet can be run in standalone (master-less) mode and therefore does not require complex steps to get started.

- Data and code separation

  Puppet encourages clean separation of the data that describes your environment and the way in which it is provisioned.

- Component modules

  The creation of Application Component modules allows vendors such as Oracle to create lightweight, isolated modules that can be independently obtained and plugged into existing Puppet environments.

- Role isolation — separation of infrastructure instructions and application instructions

  This allows your system administrators to provision the OS independently of the Application steps. Puppet facilitates this role separation and allows the administrators to focus on the operational needs of the environments.

- OS platform support

  Puppet agent can run on all supported PeopleSoft OS platforms.

- Virtualization platform support

  Virtualization and cloud vendors are offering direct support for provisioning environments using Puppet. For example, OpenStack and Amazon EC2 both document how to use Puppet in their infrastructure.

Understanding Hiera

Hiera is a feature of Puppet that allows data to be stored and subsequently queried from any number of file formats ("back-end" structures). These structures may be in a number of different formats, the most preferable being YAML, which is a readable properties file format with hierarchical structure support. The value of Hiera to the PeopleSoft modules is that it allows separation of the data from the code that performs the actual system configuration. In the context of a PeopleSoft environment, the database connectivity information and any other custom configuration settings to be applied to the Application Server domain are placed in a Hiera data file. Any number of domains with varying configuration settings can be represented in a Hiera data file. Hiera data files can be associated with a particular environment such as Dev, Test or Production. A Production Hiera data file may contain connectivity information for a single database with a number of Application Server domains. A Dev Hiera data file on the other hand may only contain a single Application Server domain and may have specific configuration features enabled such as the Work Station Listener process for three-tier PeopleSoft connections. This ability to define all abstractions of the PeopleSoft environment in Hiera completely decouples the runtime characteristics of your environment from the code that actually creates it. This is a very powerful feature.

Understanding Puppet Modules

A Puppet module can be thought of as a self-contained bundle of code that implements a related set of functionality. Developers write custom modules and combine these with pre-built modules from the Puppet Labs repository, Puppet Forge. Modules are how Puppet finds the classes and types it can use — it automatically loads any class, defined type, or custom types stored in its modules. A module can be thought of as being somewhat like an EAR file in the sense that it is a container or archive that stores a self-contained archive of functionality. A Puppet module contains some of the following:

- Puppet source files — manifests with the .pp extension, which implement the functionality exhibited by the module
- Test manifests that allow your module to be tested in an isolated fashion
- Library of types and providers
- Template files into which custom values may be substituted
- Metadata file that describes the version and purpose of the modules

Understanding How the PeopleSoft DPKs Use Puppet

The PeopleSoft DPKs use Puppet to automate the process of deploying and configuring a PeopleSoft environment. Oracle has created custom modules and types to deploy and configure a PeopleSoft environment. These modules make use of pre-built modules from Puppet Forge. All the PeopleSoft developed modules and types along with the pre-built modules are packaged with PeopleTools server DPKs as well as PeopleSoft application DPKs. In addition, the PeopleSoft and PeopleTools DPKs package Hiera YAML files with default data values that can be used to set up a fully working PeopleSoft environment out-of-the-box.

The modules delivered with the PeopleSoft DPKs adhere to the following Puppet design patterns:

- Use Hiera as an external data store

  See Understanding Hiera.
- Do not use Hiera at any point in component modules
- Apply the Puppet Roles and Profiles pattern

  See Understanding PeopleSoft Puppet Profiles and Roles Modules.
- Ensure idempotency in component modules so that your modules create the same result regardless of the initial state of the underlying resource
- Follow the module naming and documentation guidelines from Puppet Labs.

PeopleSoft Puppet modules are broadly divided into the following three categories. These modules are described in more detail in the following sections.

- Component Modules
  - Atomic — building block modules that work on a single abstraction
  - Low-level — contain minimal dependencies on other modules
- Profiles Modules
  - Assemble data from Hiera to be used for configuring the hosts
  - Do not operate on single artifacts such as files or users
- Roles Modules

  Focus on operational responsibilities of the hosts

See Modules Fundamentals on the Puppet Labs documentation Web site, http://docs.puppetlabs.com/puppet/latest/reference/modules_fundamentals.html.

In most cases, the Puppet software will be installed by the DPKs. In case of problems, it may be necessary for you to install either Puppet or its dependencies directly. If so, use these guidelines:

- The DPK deployment requires open-source Puppet software.

  See the Puppet Labs Web site at www.puppetlabs.com to download the software.
- Customer installation of Puppet is not supported for AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris operating systems.

  If you are installing the PeopleSoft DPKs for AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris, you must use the Puppet software that is delivered with the DPKs.

Understanding PeopleSoft Puppet Component Modules

Component modules are a specific sub-category of Puppet modules. They typically deal with a specific technical abstraction. The PeopleSoft DPKs are delivered with such building-block component modules to free you from needing to create platform-specific shell scripts to automate environment provisioning (deployment and configuration). These scripts typically invoke the Oracle Universal Installer (OUI) for installing components like Oracle WebLogic, Oracle Database Server or Database Client, and Oracle Tuxedo. The scripts use PeopleSoft utilities like PSADMIN, PeopleSoft Application Engine (psae) and other low-level utilities for configuring a PeopleSoft environment.

All the PeopleSoft Puppet component modules are implemented as custom resource types using Puppet Types and Providers paradigm. This paradigm provides a powerful way to extend Puppet by separating the interface and implementation of each resource managed by Puppet.

The PeopleSoft Puppet component modules are packaged as two separate modules:

- pt_deploy **—** This component module contains PeopleSoft custom resource types for deploying various PeopleSoft components.
- pt_config **—** This component module contains PeopleSoft custom resource types for configuring various parts of a PeopleSoft environment.

Understanding PeopleSoft Puppet Profiles and Roles Modules

Roles and Profiles are considered to be Puppet modules that contain manifests that operate at a higher level of abstraction than the component modules which act directly on manageable system components. Understanding the purpose of Roles and Profiles modules is crucial when taking full advantage of Puppet in your PeopleSoft architecture. Roles and Profiles refer to an established pattern in the Puppet community for increasing the reusability of modules. This pattern encourages the separation of how Application components are configured from which components should be configured. The use of this pattern is fundamental to the way in which the PeopleSoft component modules have been created.

Note that the word "roles" and "profiles" as used in the context of Puppet development have quite different meanings than the accepted definitions.

See The Puppet Labs installation guide, https://docs.puppetlabs.com/guides/install_puppet/pre_install.html.

The primary purpose of the Roles and Profiles pattern is to isolate and abstract functionality along the separate lines of business and technical perspectives. In such cases we want to isolate the description of an environment from the way in which it is implemented while retaining a relationship between these abstractions. For example, consider a PeopleSoft deployment comprised of three distinct pillars: PeopleSoft Human Capital Management 9.1, PeopleSoft Human Capital Management 9.2 and PeopleSoft Financials 9.2, all in production. There is a Dev and Test environment for each of these PeopleSoft application pillars.

Now consider the business and technical perspectives on this system. The business managers see the systems as being independent of one another servicing different business functions. The technical team sees them as variants of the same tech stack, as all of the systems contain JEE servers, databases, firewalls and so on. In the PeopleSoft DPK implementation, the business perspectives are associated with Puppet roles, and the technical perspectives with profiles.

The Roles and Profiles pattern implemented in PeopleSoft DPKs is comprised of two separate modules:

- pt_role **—** This module contains pre-defined roles that can be assigned to an host.
- pt_profile **—** This module contains PeopleSoft classes and defined types to set up various aspects of a PeopleSoft environment. The classes and defined types in this module interact with Hiera to access the data, and call in the low-level custom types to deploy and configure the PeopleSoft environment.

Understanding Puppet Third-Party Modules

The PeopleSoft DPKs are delivered with modules made available to the Puppet community through the Puppet Forge. These external modules are required by the PeopleSoft component modules in order to efficiently implement their functionality. This helps the developer to write cleaner Puppet code and not have to rewrite code that has already been implemented elsewhere. The following are external modules that are included as dependencies by the PeopleSoft component modules:

- stdlib — provides data structure and string manipulation capabilities
- concat — allows construction of files from multiple ordered fragments of text
- easy_type — provides an easy way to build custom Puppet resource types
- sysctl — supports the modification of kernel parameters

Understanding the Deployment Packages Uses and Contents

This section discusses:

- Understanding How Deployment Packages are Used
- Defining the Types of Deployment Packages

Understanding How Deployment Packages are Used

The PeopleSoft DPKs are the delivery method for many PeopleSoft installation, upgrade, and maintenance products. Depending upon the usage, you may see a variety of terms used in connection with the DPKs. Some of the products mentioned in this documentation include:

- A DPK is a zip file which includes specific PeopleSoft functionality.

  The PeopleSoft products delivered as DPKs include one or more zip files numbered sequentially. Normally you need to extract only the first zip file to obtain documentation and scripts. The DPK setup script will extract the rest. See the appropriate documentation for details.

- PeopleTools patches are provided to update the PeopleSoft PeopleTools software.

  A PeopleTools patch is comprised of four DPKs. The PeopleTools patch DPKs are available for Linux, IBM AIX, HP-UX, Oracle Solaris, and Microsoft Windows operating systems.

  See "Applying PeopleTools Patches Using DPKs."

  See PeopleSoft PeopleTools Patches Home Page, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2062712.2.

  The DPKs delivered for the PeopleTools patches can also be used to install the PeopleSoft mid-tier components for an existing database.

- PeopleSoft Update Images (PIs) are used for applying maintenance for PeopleSoft applications (Campus Solutions, CRM, ELM, Interaction Hub, FSCM, and HCM).

  A PI is comprised of eleven or more DPKs. The PIs are available for Microsoft Windows, Linux, and for VirtualBox.

  See PeopleSoft Update Manager (PUM) Home Page, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 1641843.2.

  These images can also be used for carrying out a fresh installation, with some differences in the installation procedure. When used for fresh installation, the documentation uses the term PeopleSoft Application Images.

See PeopleSoft PeopleTools on the Oracle Help Center, Install and Upgrade, https://docs.oracle.com/en/applications/peoplesoft/peopletools/index.html.

- PeopleSoft Upgrade Source Images can be used during a PeopleSoft application upgrade as a demo database.

  The Upgrade Source Images are typically comprised of nine or more DPKs, and are available for Microsoft Windows, Linux, and VirtualBox. Note that the Upgrade Source Images and the PIs are delivered on different schedules, and are not interchangeable.

  See Understanding the PeopleSoft Upgrade Source Images.

Defining the Types of Deployment Packages

Here are some of the DPKs that are available to use in installing PeopleSoft software, with references for further information.

- DPK Setup Zip file

  The first zip file that you download will include a setup folder with the scripts needed to automate the deployment process and documentation. You follow the instructions in this documentation to extract the first zip file to obtain the setup script to begin the installation. The subsequent zip files are extracted during the deployment. Each zip file includes a manifest that lists the software versions included in the DPK.

- PeopleSoft PeopleTools server DPKs

  Two PeopleSoft PeopleTools server DPKs are included with both the PeopleSoft PeopleTools patches, and with the PeopleSoft application images.

- PeopleSoft PeopleTools Client DPK

  The PeopleSoft PeopleTools Client DPK for the current release is included with the PeopleTools patches. The PeopleSoft application images include PeopleTools Client DPK for the last three releases.

- PeopleSoft application DPKs

  Three PeopleSoft application DPKs are included with the PeopleSoft application images. They include the following features:

  - PeopleSoft application installation directory *(PS_APP_HOME)*
  - PeopleSoft Update Manager data files *(PI_HOME)*
  - Application database (Oracle pluggable database)

- Oracle Database Client DPK

  The Oracle Database Client (ODC) DPK is included with the PeopleSoft application images.

- Oracle Database Server DPK

  The Oracle Database Server (ODS) DPK is included with the PeopleSoft application images. It is used for full-tier deployments.

- Elasticsearch DPK

  The Elasticsearch DPK deploys open-source software used for the PeopleSoft Search Framework. The Elasticsearch DPKs for Linux and Microsoft Windows are posted on My Oracle Support. You can also obtain the Elasticsearch DPKs in the PeopleSoft PeopleTools for PSFT Application products installation files from Oracle Software Delivery Cloud.

  Elasticsearch is included in the VirtualBox version of the PeopleSoft Update Images.

  See PeopleTools Elasticsearch Home Page, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2205540.2.

- PT-INFRA DPK

  The PT-INFRA DPK contains supporting (third-party) software that is required for a PeopleSoft installation.

A separate PT-INFRA DPK for Microsoft Windows, Linux, AIX, HP-UX, or Solaris is delivered as needed to provide security updates or other patches for one or more of the components. You can use this separate PT-INFRA DPK in a new installation to take advantage of up-to-date patches and security updates (CPUs).

See PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58 Home Page, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2602329.2.

Task E-1: Reviewing the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Patch DPKs

To apply a PeopleTools patch, including the PeopleSoft PeopleTools server and client, on Microsoft Windows and Linux physical hardware and virtual operating systems, use the PeopleSoft PeopleTools patch DPKs. The DPKs replace the patch delivery mechanism used in previous releases for Microsoft Windows and Linux operating systems. For patch application on other operating systems, download the patch and follow the instructions included in the Readme file, as in previous releases.

For more information, review the various scenarios for using the PeopleTools Patch DPKs later in this documentation.

See "Applying PeopleTools Patches Using DPKs."

The PeopleSoft PeopleTools patch DPKs set up a mid-tier environment to connect to an existing PeopleSoft database. You should be prepared to supply information about the existing database before applying the patch.

This table describes the usage, requirements, and results associated with using the PeopleTools Patch DPKs:

Usage

- Install PeopleSoft PeopleTools Server using the mid-tier option on Microsoft Windows or Linux, and connect to an existing database to apply a PeopleTools patch.
- Install the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Client on a Microsoft Windows host.

  Note. This usage can be part of the patch application or carried out separately.

  As with a traditional installation, you may not need to perform a separate installation of the PeopleTools Client if your environment is installed on a Microsoft Windows host. If your environment is installed on Linux, you need to install the PeopleTools Client on a Microsoft Windows host to set up Change Assistant.
- Install the new release for PeopleTools-only upgrade.

  If you are upgrading to PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.58 on Microsoft Windows or Linux, you can use the PeopleTools 8.58.01 or higher patch DPK to install the new release. The PeopleTools patch DPKs contain the upgrade documentation, upgrade template for Change Assistant, and files. Follow the instructions in the upgrade getting started guide, included in the DPK.

  See *Getting Started on Your PeopleTools Upgrade*
- Install selected PeopleSoft components

  You can choose to deploy only mid-tier components, or only the *PS_HOME* installation directory, for example, using the PeopleTools DPKs.

  See Reviewing the Options for Selective Deployment.

Requirements

- The latest PeopleTools DPKs (4 zip files)
- Database specifications for the customer target database
- Microsoft Windows or Linux hosts that are supported for PeopleTools servers, such as database, application server, Process Scheduler.

PeopleTools Server installation

- *PS_HOME*
- *PS_CFG_HOME*

Note. The PIA installation is found under *PS_CFG_HOME.*

- Oracle Tuxedo
- Oracle WebLogic
- Oracle database Client, if required
- Microsoft Windows DPKs include Microsoft Visual C++ Redistributable Packages for Visual Studio, which include required Microsoft C++ runtime libraries.
- PeopleTools utilities and scripts including:
  - *PS_HOME*/appserv/PSADMIN.exe
  - *PS_HOME*/bin/client/winx86/pscfg.exe (Configuration Manager)
  - *PS_HOME*/bin/client/winx86/psdmt.exe (Data Mover)
  - *PS_HOME*/bin/client/winx86/pside.exe (Application Designer)
  - *PS_HOME*/scripts
  - Other PeopleTools utilities
- Setup utilities including:
  - *PS_HOME*/setup/PsMpPIAInstall (PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture installer)
  - *PS_HOME*/setup/PsMpDbInstall (Database installer)
  - *PS_HOME*/setup/PsCA (Change Assistant installer)
  - *PS_HOME*/setup/PsCIA (Change Impact Analyzer installer)
  - *PS_HOME*/setup/PsMpWebAppDeployInstall (Web Application Deployment installer)

PeopleTools Client installation

See the next section, Reviewing the PeopleTools Client DPK.

Task E-2: Reviewing the PeopleTools Client DPK

One of the DPKs provided with PeopleSoft PeopleTools patches is a PeopleSoft PeopleTools Client DPK. Deploy the PeopleTools Client DPK, for example, to use with a PeopleTools-only upgrade, or to install utilities such as Application Designer to connect to an existing environment.

Usage

- Install the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Client on a Microsoft Windows host.

  Note. As with a traditional installation, you may not need to perform a separate installation of the PeopleTools Client if your environment is installed on a Microsoft Windows host. If your environment is installed on Linux, you need to install the PeopleTools Client on a Microsoft Windows host to set up Change Assistant.

- Install Change Assistant and Change Impact Analyzer.
- Install and configure PeopleSoft Test Framework (PTF).

Requirements

The last zip file of the 4 PeopleTools DPKs.

Microsoft Windows host that is supported for the PeopleTools client.

PeopleTools Client installation

- *PS_CLIENT_HOME*
- Oracle database client, if not already installed
- Microsoft Windows DPKs include Microsoft Visual C++ Redistributable Packages for Visual Studio, which include required Microsoft C++ runtime libraries.
- PeopleTools utilities including:
  - *PS_CLIENT_HOME*/bin/client/winx86/pscfg.exe (Configuration Manager)
  - *PS_CLIENT_HOME*/bin/client/winx86/psdmt.exe (Data Mover)
  - *PS_CLIENT_HOME*/bin/client/winx86/pside.exe (Application Designer)
  - *PS_CLIENT_HOME*/bin/sqr
- Setup utilities including:
  - *PS_CLIENT_HOME*/setup/PsCA (Change Assistant installer)
  - *PS_CLIENT_HOME*/setup/PsCIA (Change Impact Analyzer installer)
  - *PS_CLIENT_HOME*/setup/PsTestFramework (PeopleSoft Test Framework installer)
- Upgrade deployment mode files

  If you select the People Tools Full Upgrade deployment type, the client setup script installs the directories needed for a PeopleSoft PeopleTools-only upgrade, such as data, projects, and scripts directories.
- Patch deployment mode files

  If you select the People Tools Patch deployment type, the client setup script installs the directories needed for a PeopleSoft PeopleTools patch application, such as the data, PTP, and scripts directories.
- None of the above deployment mode files

  If you select the None of the above deployment type, the client setup script installs the basic client directories.